

VIVIANE G. NASR AND JAMES A. DINARDO

# THE PEDIATRIC CARDIAC ANESTHESIA HANDBOOK



WILEY Blackwell

## The Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesia Handbook

# The Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesia Handbook

Viviane G. Nasr, MD

*Assistant Professor in Anaesthesia  
Harvard Medical School  
Associate in Cardiac Anesthesia  
Boston Children's Hospital  
Boston, MA, USA*

James A. DiNardo, MD, FAAP

*Professor of Anaesthesia  
Harvard Medical School  
Chief, Division of Cardiac Anesthesia  
Francis X. McGowan, Jr., MD Chair in Cardiac Anesthesia  
Boston Children's Hospital  
Boston, MA, USA*

**WILEY** Blackwell

This edition first published 2017 © 2017 John Wiley & Sons Ltd

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, except as permitted by law. Advice on how to obtain permission to reuse material from this title is available at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

The right of Viviane G. Nasr and James A. DiNardo to be identified as the authors of this work has been asserted in accordance with law.

*Registered Offices*

John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, USA

John Wiley & Sons Ltd, The Atrium, Southern Gate, Chichester, West Sussex, PO19 8SQ, UK

*Editorial Office*

111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, USA

For details of our global editorial offices, customer services, and more information about Wiley products visit us at [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some content that appears in standard print versions of this book may not be available in other formats.

*Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty*

The contents of this work are intended to further general scientific research, understanding, and discussion only and are not intended and should not be relied upon as recommending or promoting scientific method, diagnosis, or treatment by physicians for any particular patient. The publisher and the authors make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy and completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation any implied warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. In view of ongoing research, equipment modifications, changes in governmental regulations, and the constant flow of information relating to the use of medicines, equipment, and devices, the reader is urged to review and evaluate the information provided in the package insert or instructions for each medicine, equipment, or device for, among other things, any changes in the instructions or indication of usage and for added warnings and precautions. Readers should consult with a specialist where appropriate. The fact that an organization or website is referred to in this work as a citation and/or potential source of further information does not mean that the author or the publisher endorses the information the organization or website may provide or recommendations it may make. Further, readers should be aware that websites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read. No warranty may be created or extended by any promotional statements for this work. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for any damages arising herefrom.

*Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data*

Names: Nasr, Viviane G., author. | DiNardo, James A., author.

Title: The pediatric cardiac anesthesia handbook / Viviane G. Nasr, James A. DiNardo.

Description: Hoboken, NJ : John Wiley & Sons Inc., 2017. | Includes bibliographical references and index.

Identifiers: LCCN 2016049313 | ISBN 9781119095538 (pbk.) | ISBN 9781119095552 (Adobe PDF) |

ISBN 9781119095545 (epub)

Subjects: | MESH: Heart Defects, Congenital—surgery | Infant | Cardiac Surgical Procedures—methods | Anesthesia—methods | Child

Classification: LCC RJ426.C64 | NLM WS 290 | DDC 618.92/12043—dc23

LC record available at <https://lcn.loc.gov/2016049313>

Cover image: alexey\_ds/Gettyimages

Cover design: Wiley

Set in 10/12pt Warnock by SPi Global, Pondicherry, India

## Contents

Preface *xvii*

### Part I The Basics 1

#### 1 Cardiovascular Development 3

Embryology 3

Cardiovascular Physiology 3

Fetal Circulation 3

Closure of the Ductus Arteriosus 5

Closure of the Foramen Ovale 6

Closure of the Ductus Venosus 6

Pulmonary Vascular Changes 6

Myocardial Performance in the Neonate 7

Hemodynamic Changes at Birth 7

#### 2 Important Concepts in Congenital Heart Disease 9

Pathophysiology of CHD 9

Concepts of Shunting, Single-Ventricle Physiology, and Inter-Circulatory Mixing 9

Shunting 9

Effective Blood Flow 10

Total Pulmonary Blood Flow/Total Systemic Blood Flow 10

Single-Ventricle Physiology 10

Intercirculatory Mixing 13

Classification of Anatomic Shunts 15

Simple Shunts 15

Complex Shunts 15

Pulmonary Vascular Pathophysiology 18

Causes of Pre-Capillary PH in CHD 18

Causes of Post-Capillary PH in CHD 18

Control of Pulmonary Vascular Resistance 19

PaO<sub>2</sub> 19

PaCO<sub>2</sub> 19

pH 19

Variation in Lung Volumes 19

Vasodilator Agents 20

Sympathetic Nervous System Stimulation 20

Myocardial Ischemia	21
Aortic Diastolic Pressure	21
Subendocardial Pressure	21
Heart Rate	22
Anatomic Coronary Artery Lesions	22
<b>3 Preoperative Evaluation</b>	<b>23</b>
Clinical History	23
Physical Examination	23
Associated Congenital Abnormalities	24
Laboratory Data	25
Pregnancy	26
Psychological Considerations	26
Preoperative Preparation	27
Preoperative Fluid Therapy	27
Preoperative Medications	29
<b>4 Intraoperative Management</b>	<b>31</b>
Intraoperative Monitoring	31
ECG and Blood Pressure	31
Systemic Oxygen Saturation	32
End-Tidal CO <sub>2</sub>	32
Central Venous Pressure	32
Temperature	33
Near-Infra-Red Spectroscopy	33
Transcranial Doppler	34
Transesophageal Echocardiography (TEE)	35
Airway Management	35
Anesthesia Induction and Maintenance	36
Induction of Anesthesia	36
Mask Induction	36
Intravenous Induction	36
Maintenance of Anesthesia	37
<b>5 Interpretation of Cardiac Catheterization Data</b>	<b>39</b>
Right-Heart Catheterization	39
Right Atrial Pressure (RAP) Waveform	39
Right Ventricular Pressure (RVP) Waveform	39
Pulmonary Artery Pressure (PAP) Waveform	40
Left-Heart Catheterization	40
Left Atrial Pressure (LAP) Waveform	41
Left Ventricular Pressure (LVP) Waveform	41
Aortic Pressure Waveform	41
Left Ventriculography	41
Coronary Angiography	43
Coronary Anatomy	43
Anatomic Coronary Lesions	44
Coronary Collaterals	45

Cardiac Output Determination	45
Thermodilution Technique	45
Fick Determination	45
Evaluation of Cardiac Shunts	46
Shunt Location	46
Shunt Quantification	46
Saturation Data	48
Resistances	48
Assessment of Pulmonary Vascular Anatomy	48
Evaluation of the Pulmonary Vasculature	48
Pulmonary Artery Wedge Angiogram	48
Pulmonary Vein Wedge Angiogram	49
Assessment of Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension	49
Assessment of Valve Lesions	50
Stenotic Lesions	50
Regurgitant Lesions	50
<b>6 Cardiopulmonary Bypass</b>	<b>51</b>
The Cardiopulmonary Bypass Circuit	51
Differences Between Adult and Pediatric CPB	53
CPB Flow Rates	53
Anesthesia During CPB	53
Monitoring During CPB	54
Hemodilution	54
Priming Solution	54
Ultrafiltration	55
Conventional Ultrafiltration	55
Modified Ultrafiltration	55
Blood Gas Management	55
Deep Hypothermic Circulatory Arrest and Regional Perfusion Techniques	57
Anticoagulation	57
Protamine Reversal	58
<b>7 Mechanical Support Devices</b>	<b>59</b>
Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation (ECMO)	59
Indications	59
Relative Contraindications	59
Modes of ECMO Support	59
Veno-Venous (VV)-ECMO	59
Veno-Arterial (VA)-ECMO	59
Device and Patient Complications	60
Common Terminology Used During an ECMO Run	61
Intraoperative Considerations for Patients on ECMO	61
Ventricular Assist Devices (VADs)	62
Indications	62
Relative Contraindications	62
Modes of VADs	62
Complications	62

Anesthetic Considerations for Patients Receiving VAD	62
Induction of Anesthesia and Pre-Bypass Management	64
Post-VAD Placement Management	65
BiVAD Insertion	65

## Part II Specific Lesions 67

### 8 Patent Ductus Arteriosus 69

Introduction	69
Anatomy	69
Physiology	69
Surgical Therapy	69
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention	70
Anesthetic Management	70
Induction and Maintenance	70
Non-Cardiac Surgery	71

### 9 Aortopulmonary Window 73

Introduction	73
Anatomy	73
Physiology	73
Surgical Management	73
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention	74
Anesthetic Management	75
Non-Cardiac Surgery	75

### 10 Coarctation of the Aorta 77

Introduction	77
Anatomy	77
Physiology	77
Surgical Therapy	80
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention	80
Anesthetic Management	81
Induction and Maintenance	81
Management after Cross-Clamp Removal	82
Non-Cardiac Surgery	82

### 11 Atrial Septal Defect 83

Introduction	83
Anatomy	83
Ostium Secundum ASD	83
Ostium Primum ASD	83
Sinus Venosus Defects	84
Coronary Sinus Defect	84
Physiology	85
Surgical Therapy	85
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention	85



- Anesthetic Management 86
  - Induction and Maintenance 86
- Post-CPB Management 86
- Non-Cardiac Surgery 87
  
- 12 Ventricular Septal Defect 89**
  - Introduction 89
  - Anatomy 89
    - Subpulmonary or Supracristal Defects 89
    - Membranous or Perimembranous Defects 89
    - Conoventricular Defects 89
    - Inlet or Canal-Type Defects 89
    - Muscular Defects 89
  - Physiology 89
  - Surgical Therapy 91
  - Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 91
  - Anesthetic Management 91
    - Induction and Maintenance 91
  - Post-CPB Management 91
  - Non-Cardiac Surgery 92
  
- 13 Atrioventricular Canal Defects 93**
  - Introduction 93
  - Anatomy 93
    - Partial AVC 93
    - Transitional AVC 93
    - Complete AVC (CAVC) 93
    - Unbalanced AVC 94
  - Physiology 94
  - Surgical Therapy 95
  - Anesthetic Management 95
    - Induction and Maintenance 95
  - Post-CPB Management 96
  - Non-Cardiac Surgery 96
  
- 14 Double Outlet Right Ventricle 97**
  - Introduction 97
  - Anatomy 97
  - Physiology 99
  - Surgical Therapy 100
  - Anesthetic Management 101
    - Induction and Maintenance 101
  - Post-CPB Management 101
  
- 15 Truncus Arteriosus 103**
  - Introduction 103
  - Anatomy 103
  - Physiology 104

- Surgical Therapy 104
- Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 105
- Anesthetic Management 105
  - Goals 105
  - Induction and Maintenance 105
- Post-CPB Management 105
  - Goals 106
  
- 16 Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return 107**
  - Introduction 107
  - Anatomy 107
  - Physiology 108
  - Surgical Therapy 109
  - Anesthetic Management 109
    - Goals 109
    - Induction and Maintenance 110
  - Post-CBP Management 110
    - Goals 110
  - Long-Term Outcomes 110
  
- 17 Left Ventricular Outflow Tract Obstruction 113**
  - Introduction 113
  - Anatomy 113
  - Physiology 113
  - Surgical Therapy 114
  - Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 114
  - Anesthetic Management 114
    - Goals 114
    - Induction and Maintenance 115
  - Post-CPB Management 115
  
- 18 Mitral Valve 117**
  - Mitral Valve Stenosis 117
    - Introduction 117
    - Anatomy 117
    - Physiology 118
    - Surgical Therapy 118
    - Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 118
    - Anesthetic Management 118
      - Goals 118
      - Pre-Induction 119
      - Induction and Maintenance 119
    - Post-Cardiopulmonary Bypass (CPB) Management 120
  - Mitral Valve Regurgitation 121
    - Introduction 121
    - Anatomy 121
    - Physiology 121

- Surgical Management 122
- Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 122
- Anesthetic Management in Mitral Regurgitation 122
  - Goals 122
  - Premedication 122
  - Induction and Maintenance 122
- Post-CPB Management 123
  
- 19 Pulmonary Atresia/Intact Ventricular Septum (PA/IVS) 125**
  - Introduction 125
  - Anatomy 125
  - Physiology 125
  - Surgical and Catheter-Based Therapy 126
  - Anesthetic Management 129
    - Goals 129
  - Post-CPB Management 129
  
- 20 Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) 131**
  - Introduction 131
  - Anatomy 131
  - Physiology 131
  - Hypoxic or Hypercyanotic Episodes ("Tet Spells") 132
  - Surgical Therapy 134
    - Palliative Shunts 134
    - Definitive Repair 136
  - Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 136
  - Anesthetic Management 137
    - Goals 137
    - Induction and Maintenance 137
  - Post-CPB Management 138
    - Goals 138
  - Postoperative Junctional Ectopic Tachycardia 139
  - Non-Cardiac Surgery 139
  
- 21 Tetralogy of Fallot with Pulmonary Atresia (TOF/PA) 141**
  - Anatomy 141
  - Physiology 141
  - Surgical Therapy 141
  - Anesthetic Management 143
  - Post-CPB Management 143
  
- 22 Tetralogy of Fallot with Absent Pulmonary Valve (TOF/APV) 145**
  - Anatomy 145
  - Physiology 145
  - Surgical Therapy 146
  - Anesthetic Management 146
  - Post-CPB Management 146

<b>23</b>	<b>Transposition of the Great Arteries (TGA)</b>	<b>147</b>
	Introduction	147
	Anatomy	147
	Physiology	148
	Surgical Therapy	151
	Anatomic Repair or the Arterial (Jatene) Switch Procedure	151
	Intra-Atrial Physiologic Repair: Mustard and Senning Procedures	153
	Rastelli, Lecompte, and Nikaidoh Procedures	154
	Anesthetic Management	155
	Goals	155
	Induction and Maintenance	155
	Post-CPB Management	155
	Goals	155
	Non-Cardiac Surgery	157
	Congenitally Corrected Transposition of the Great Vessels	157
	Introduction	157
	Anatomy	157
	Physiology	158
	Surgical Management	158
	Traditional Repair for C-TGV	158
	Double Switch Procedure and Atrial Switch-Rastelli Procedures	158
<b>24</b>	<b>Single-Ventricle Lesions</b>	<b>161</b>
	Introduction	161
	Physiology and Initial Procedures	161
	Initial Procedures to Optimize Pulmonary Arterial Blood Flow	161
	Initial Procedures to Optimize Pulmonary Venous Blood Flow	163
	Initial Procedures to Optimize Systemic Blood Flow	163
	Management of Single-Ventricle Physiology	164
	Anesthetic Management, Pre-Initial Repair	166
	Goals	166
	Induction and Maintenance	167
	Post-CPB Management, Post-Initial Repair	167
	Goals	167
	Single-Ventricle Pathway, Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt or Bidirectional Glenn (BDG)	169
	Anesthetic Management, Pre-Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt	171
	Goals	171
	Induction and Maintenance	171
	Post-CPB Management, Post-Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt	171
	Goals	171
	Definitive Repair: The Fontan Procedure or Total Cavopulmonary Connection (TCPC)	172
	Fontan Physiology	172
	Fenestrated Fontan	176
	Anesthetic Management, Pre-Fontan	176
	Goals	176
	Induction and Maintenance	177
	Post-CPB Management, Post-Fontan Procedure	177
	Goals	177
	Non-Cardiac Surgery	180

- 25 Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome 181**  
Introduction 181  
Anatomy 181  
Physiology 181  
Surgical Therapy 182  
Anesthetic Management 183  
    Goals 183  
Post-CPB Management 183  
Biventricular Repair 184  
    The 'Borderline' Left Heart 184  
    The Left Heart Rehabilitation 184  
    Staged Left Ventricular Recruitment 184  
    Biventricular Conversion 185  
Non-Cardiac Surgery 185
- 26 Interrupted Aortic Arch 187**  
Introduction 187  
Anatomy 187  
Physiology 187  
Surgical Management 189  
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 189  
Anesthetic Management 190  
    Goals 190  
    Induction and Maintenance 190  
Post-CPB Management 190  
    Goals 190
- 27 Vascular Rings 191**  
Introduction 191  
Anatomy 191  
Physiology 191  
Surgical Management 191  
Catheterization Laboratory Intervention 192  
Anesthetic Management 192
- 28 Tricuspid Atresia 195**  
Introduction 195  
Anatomy 195  
Physiology 195  
Surgical Therapy 197  
Anesthetic Management 197  
    Goals 197
- 29 Heart Transplantation 199**  
The Donor 199  
Anesthetic Management of the Recipient 202  
    Preoperative Evaluation 202  
    Physical Examination 202  
    Premedication 202  
    Preinduction 202  
    Induction and Maintenance 203

Operative Procedure	205
Post-CPB Management	207
Goals	207
Preparation for Termination of CPB	207
Impaired Systolic Function	207
Right Ventricular Afterload Mismatch	208
Sinus and Atrioventricular Node Dysfunction	208
Impaired Diastolic Function	208
Termination of CPB	209
Non-Cardiac Surgery in the Post-Cardiac Transplant Patient	210
Physiology of the Transplanted Heart	210
Autonomic Nervous System	210
Heart Rate	210
Left Ventricular Systolic Function	211
Right Ventricular Systolic Function	211
Atrial Function	211
Diastolic Function	211
Issues Unique to Heart Transplant Patients	211
Cardiac Allograft Vasculopathy (CAV)	212
Hypertension	212
Atrial and Ventricular Arrhythmias	212
Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis (SBE) Prophylaxis	213
Rejection	213
Response to Drugs	213
Anesthetic Considerations for Non-Cardiac Surgery in Patients Post Heart Transplantation	215
<b>30 Heart–Lung and Lung Transplantation</b>	<b>217</b>
Introduction	217
Single-Lung Transplantation	217
Double-Lung Transplantation	217
Living Donor Lobar Lung Transplant (LDLLT)	218
The Donor	218
Operative Procedure and Patient Positioning	219
Use of CPB	220
HLT and En-Bloc DLT	220
SLT and BSSLT	220
Anesthetic Management	221
Goals	221
Preoperative Evaluation	221
Premedication	221
Preinduction	221
Management of One Lung Ventilation (OLV)	222
Endobronchial Intubation	222
Single-Lumen Endotracheal Tube Plus a Bronchial Blocker	222
Single-Lumen Endotracheal Tube Plus an E-Z Bronchial Blocker	222
Univent Tube	222
Double-Lumen Endotracheal Tube	224

Induction and Maintenance	224
Special Considerations for SLT and BSSLT	225
One-Lung Ventilation	225
Clamping of the PA	226
Allograft Implantation	226
Indications for CPB	226
Post-CPB Management	227
Postoperative Care	227
Non-Cardiac Surgery in Lung Transplant Patients	227
Anesthetic Considerations for Non-Cardiac Surgery in Patients Post Lung Transplantation	229
<b>31 Anomalous Origin of the Left Coronary Artery from the Pulmonary Artery (ALCAPA)</b>	<b>231</b>
Introduction	231
Anatomy	231
Physiology	231
Surgical Treatment	231
Anesthetic Management	232
<b>32 Heterotaxy</b>	<b>233</b>
Introduction	233
Anatomy	233
Position of the Heart in the Chest	233
Atrial Anatomy	233
Venoatrial Connections	233
Ventricular Anatomy	234
Atrioventricular Junction	236
Ventriculoarterial Connections	236
Surgical Therapy	238
<b>33 Ebstein Anomaly</b>	<b>239</b>
Introduction	239
Anatomy	239
Physiology	239
Surgical Treatment	240
Anesthetic Management in Ebstein Anomaly	241
Goals	241
Post-CPB Management	242
<b>Index</b>	<b>243</b>

## Preface

*The Pediatric Cardiac Anesthesia Handbook* is intended to provide practical recommendations for the anesthetic management of patients with congenital heart disease. It is written and organized to function as a comprehensive review book and clinical manual. It can be used by both cardiac and non-cardiac anesthesiologists involved in the care of the growing population of patients with congenital heart disease. The first part provides an overview of cardiovascular

physiology, basic perioperative assessment, interpretation of hemodynamics, and the use of mechanical support devices. The second part is divided into chapters devoted to individual cardiac lesions. Each chapter provides a summary of lesion anatomy, pathophysiology, preoperative assessment, surgical/interventional management and postoperative care.

It is our hope that this book will be useful to you in the care of your patients.



## Part I

### The Basics

## 1

## Cardiovascular Development

The incidence of congenital heart disease (CHD) is approximately 7 to 10 per 1000 live births. Most congenital heart defects are the result of an interaction of genetic predisposition and environmental factors. Environmental factors such as drugs, viral infection, maternal diabetes, or maternal alcohol abuse may account for specific lesions. Knowledge of cardiac development is a must to understand congenital heart lesions. This chapter reviews the embryology and cardiovascular physiology at birth.

### Embryology

It is essential to understand the basic embryology and origin of the cardiac structures in order to appreciate the specific lesions described in the next section of the Handbook. It is beyond the scope of this Handbook to discuss the details of cardiac development, including : (i) cardiac sidedness or asymmetry; (ii) cardiac looping; (iii) formation of outflow tracts; and (iv) septation. The embryologic structures and their corresponding adult structures are listed in Table 1.1.

### Cardiovascular Physiology

Circulatory changes occur at birth and continue over the first few days and the first months of life, and are considerable. They

need to be appreciated in order to understand their profound effects on neonatal cardiovascular physiology. It is not coincidental that 50% of the neonates born with CHD will become ill enough during the first days or weeks of life to require medical or surgical intervention. Optimal perioperative and anesthetic management of the neonate with CHD must be based on a firm understanding of these developmental changes.

### Fetal Circulation

Fetal circulatory channels shunt blood away from the lung such that both ventricles, in parallel, contribute to systemic oxygen delivery by pumping blood to the systemic arterial system. This parallel circulation permits normal fetal growth and development even in fetuses with cardiac malformations.

Oxygenated blood from the placenta returns to the fetus via the umbilical vein, which enters the portal venous system. The ductus venosus connects the left portal vein to the left hepatic vein at its junction with the inferior vena cava (IVC). This allows approximately 50% of umbilical venous blood to bypass the hepatic sinuses. The remainder of the umbilical venous flow passes through the liver and enters the IVC via the hepatic veins. Fetal IVC blood is a combination of blood from the lower fetal body, umbilical vein, and hepatic veins. The stream of blood from the ductus venosus has a higher velocity in the IVC than the stream from the lower body and hepatic veins. This higher velocity facilitates delivery

**Table 1.1** Cardiovascular embryologic structure and the corresponding structures in adults.

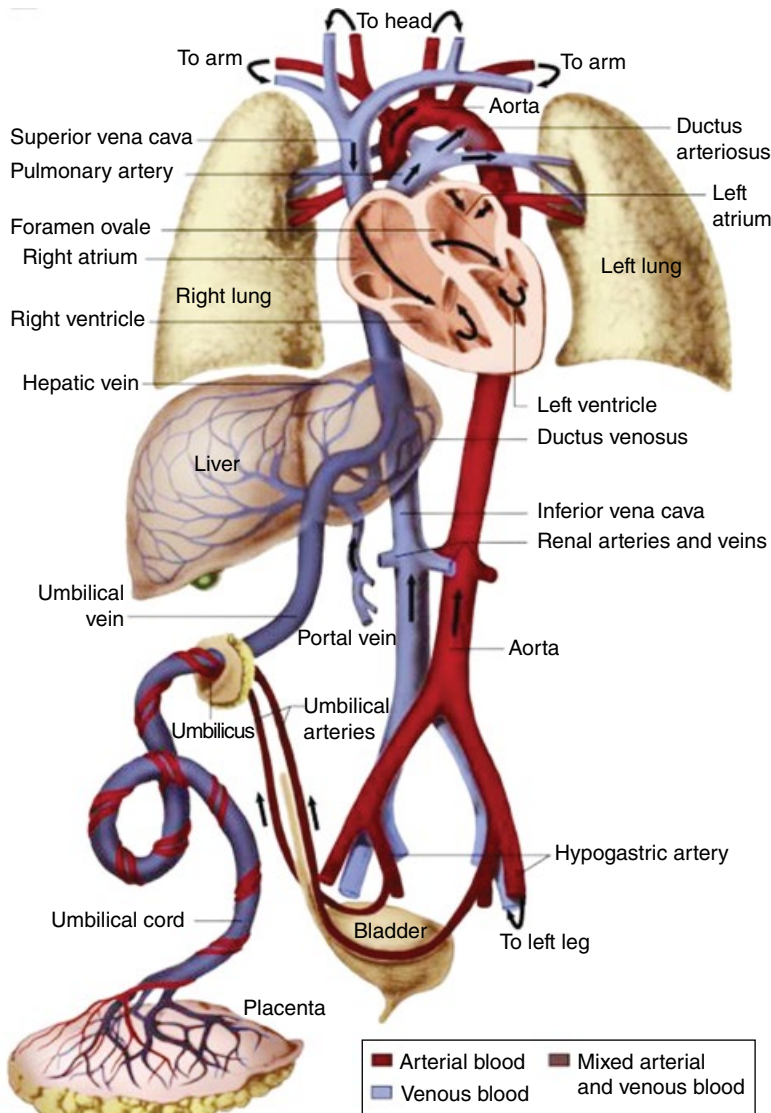
Embryologic structure	Adult structure
Truncus arteriosus	Aorta Pulmonary trunk
Bulbus cordis	Smooth part of right ventricle (conus arteriosus) Smooth part of left ventricle (aortic vestibule)
Primitive ventricle	Trabeculated part of right ventricle Trabeculated part of left ventricle
Primitive atrium	Trabeculated part of right atrium Trabeculated part of left atrium
Sinus venosus	Smooth part of right atrium (sinus venarum) Coronary sinus Oblique vein of left atrium
<b><u>Aortic arches</u></b>	
1	*
2	*
3	Common carotid arteries Internal carotid arteries (proximal part)
4	Right subclavian artery (proximal part) Part of the aortic arch
5	Regresses in the human
6	Pulmonary arteries (proximal part) Ductus arteriosus

of this higher-oxygen content blood across the foramen ovale (FO) into the left atrium (LA) (Figure 1.1).

The IVC blood enters the right atrium (RA) and, due to the position of the Eustachian valve, Chiari network and FO, enters the LA during 80% of the cardiac cycle. During the other 20% (atrial systole), IVC blood crosses the tricuspid valve and enters the right ventricle (RV). The overwhelming majority of superior vena cava (SVC) blood crosses the tricuspid valve and also enters the RV. Blood from the RV is ejected into the pulmonary artery (PA). Approximately 10–15% of blood from the PA passes through the lungs to reach the LA, and the rest is shunted to the distal aorta via the ductus arteriosus (DA). As a result, two-thirds of the total fetal cardiac output is provided by the RV, with the remaining one-third provided via the LV.

The dynamics of shunting at the level of the ductus venosus, FO, and DA result in a

preferential delivery of the most highly oxygenated blood to the coronary and cerebral circulations. Obviously, this preferential delivery of oxygenated blood may be compromised *in utero* by cardiac lesions that prevent or reduce left ventricular output. At birth, a series circulation is established in which each ventricle pumps into a specific vascular bed (RV to pulmonary artery; LV to aorta). The removal of the placenta and the initiation of alveolar ventilation at birth have the immediate effect of establishing this series circulation. To maintain the adult series circulation, the fetal channels must be closed (Table 1.2). Complex neurochemical and hormonal influences affect the closing of these fetal shunts. Acidosis, sepsis, hypothermia, hypoxia and hypercarbia may cause a re-opening of the shunts and persistence of the fetal circulation (PFC). Most neonates that are critically ill from CHD have one or more of these inciting factors at the time of



**Figure 1.1** Course of the fetal circulation in late gestation. Note the selective blood flow patterns across the foramen ovale and the ductus arteriosus. Reproduced from Greeley, W.J., Berkowitz, D.H., Nathan, A.T. (2010) *Anesthesia for pediatric cardiac surgery*, in *Anesthesia*, 7th edition (ed. R.D. Miller), Churchill Livingstone, Philadelphia.

presentation. In some instances, the persistence of fetal circulatory channels may be beneficial or even mandatory for survival.

### Closure of the Ductus Arteriosus

In the fetus, patency of the ductus arteriosus is maintained by high levels of prostaglandins ( $\text{PGI}_2$  and  $\text{PGE}_1$ ). There are two stages of

ductal closure in the newborn: functional closure, and permanent anatomic closure. Functional closure occurs by contraction of the smooth muscle of the ductal wall and usually occurs within the first day of life. An increase in  $\text{PO}_2$  and a decrease in prostaglandin levels contribute to functional closure. Oxygen is a dose-dependent ductal constrictor that acts

**Table 1.2** Fetal structures and their corresponding structure in adults.

Fetal structure	Adult structure
Foramen ovale	Fossa ovalis
Umbilical vein	Ligamentum teres
Ductus venosus	Ligamentum venosum
Umbilical arteries	Medial umbilical ligaments, superior vesicular artery
Ductus arteriosus	Ligamentum arteriosum

by increasing the rate of oxidative phosphorylation within smooth muscle cells. In addition, the response to oxygen may be age-related; full-term neonates have a more dramatic response to oxygen than an immature newborn. Norepinephrine and epinephrine, by changing pulmonary and systemic vascular resistances, may secondarily contribute to ductal closure. Acetylcholine has a direct constrictor effect on ductal tissue. Permanent anatomic closure of the duct usually is accomplished by two to three weeks of life in the normal full-term neonate. The lumen is sealed by fibrous connective tissue, leaving the vestigial structure, known as the ligamentum arteriosum.

The survival of some neonates with congenital cardiac lesions is dependent on ductal patency. Because functional closure is a reversible event, the use of PGE<sub>1</sub> infusions (0.01–0.05 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) has been one of the major medical advances in the stabilization of neonates with ductal-dependent heart lesions. Preterm neonates are at risk of delayed ductal closure. This may be due to a decreased degradation of PGE<sub>1</sub>, an increased production of PGE<sub>1</sub>, or a diminished sensitivity to the ductal-constricting effects of oxygen. In instances in which delayed ductal closure is disadvantageous, prostaglandin inhibitors such as indomethacin (0.1–0.3 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> PO or IV) have been used successfully to promote ductal closure and establish normal patterns of pulmonary blood flow.

### Closure of the Foramen Ovale

*In utero*, the right atrial pressure is higher than the left atrial pressure. IVC blood flows in such a manner as to keep the FO open. The cessation of umbilical vein flow causes a significant decrease in venous return to the right heart, leading to a decrease in right atrial pressure. In addition, ventilation causes a marked increase in pulmonary arterial and venous blood flows, resulting in an increase in left atrial pressure. This elevation of left atrial pressure relative to right atrial pressure causes the flap-like valve of the FO to functionally close. In instances in which right atrial pressure remains elevated, right-to-left shunting may persist. Functional closure usually progresses to anatomic closure. However, probe patency of the FO may persist in 30% of normal adults and in 50% of children younger than 5 years of age.

### Closure of the Ductus Venosus

The umbilical vessels constrict strongly after mechanical stimulation, and a high oxygen tension facilitates this process. The resultant decrease in umbilical venous blood flow causes passive closure of the ductus venosus. The latter does not appear to be as sensitive as the ductus arteriosus to PaO<sub>2</sub>, PaCO<sub>2</sub>, or pH. The ductus venosus is functionally closed by one week of life and is anatomically closed by three months. The remaining structure is the ligamentum venosum. In addition to the establishment of the adult series circulation, dramatic alterations in pulmonary circulation, cardiac output and distribution, myocardial performance and myocardial cell growth and hypertrophy continue to occur during the first weeks, months, and even years of life. In the presence of CHD, these changes may be pathologically affected.

### Pulmonary Vascular Changes

The fetus has a low pulmonary blood flow secondary to a high pulmonary vascular resistance. The minimal blood flow that reaches the

pulmonary bed has a very low  $\text{PaO}_2$ , which may cause hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction and contributes to the elevated pulmonary resistance seen in the fetus. Morphologic examinations of the small arteries of the fetal and newborn lung show a thick medial smooth muscle layer. The fetal pulmonary vasculature is reactive to a number of stimulants. Vasoconstriction is induced by decreases in  $\text{PaO}_2$ , pH, and leukotrienes. Acetylcholine, histamine, bradykinin,  $\text{PGE}_1$ ,  $\text{PGE}_2$ ,  $\text{PGI}_2$  (prostacyclin), and prostaglandin  $\text{D}_2$  and beta-adrenergic catecholamines are patent vasodilators of fetal pulmonary vessels.

At birth, alveolar ventilation commences. This reduces the mechanical compression of small pulmonary vessels and increases  $\text{PaO}_2$ , the result being a dramatic reduction in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). During the following weeks and months, remodeling of the pulmonary vessels occurs; the most notable change is a thinning of the medial smooth muscle layer. By six months of life this process results in a reduction of the PVR to near-normal adult levels. The normal process of postnatal pulmonary maturation may be altered significantly by pathologic conditions, such as those associated with CHD.

### Myocardial Performance in the Neonate

*In utero*, the RV has a cardiac output of approximately  $330 \text{ ml kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$  compared to the left ventricular output of  $170 \text{ ml kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ . At birth, both the RV and LV eject an output of approximately  $350 \text{ ml kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ . This requires a minimal stroke volume increase for the RV but a considerable increase in stroke volume for the LV. The high output state of the newborn effectively limits further increases in cardiac output. This high output state decreases to about  $150 \text{ ml kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$  by eight to ten weeks of life.

### Hemodynamic Changes at Birth

Myocardial morphology and performance is notably different in the neonate. These differences are summarized as follows and are listed in Table 1.3.

**Table 1.3** Neonatal myocardial performance compared to the adult.

- 
- Afterload mismatch
  - Limited preload reserve
  - Reduced contractile capacity
  - Reduced ventricular compliance
  - Increased intraventricular dependence
  - Incomplete autonomic sympathetic innervation and dominance of parasympathetic
  - Immature myocardial metabolism
- 

- *Afterload mismatch*: The neonatal heart is more susceptible to afterload mismatch, and therefore the stroke volume is poorly maintained in the face of increasing outflow resistance (see Chapter 5).
- *Limited preload reserve*: The neonatal heart has a limited preload reserve. Augmentation of stroke volume via the Frank–Starling mechanism is limited compared with an adult.
- *Reduced contractile capacity*: Neonatal cardiac cells contain more water and fewer contractile elements than mature myocardium. In addition, there are fewer mitochondria and sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) and poorly formed T tubules that make the myocardium more dependent on extracellular calcium. Development of the SR, T-tubular system and calcium-handling proteins appears to be rapid, and it has been suggested that they are relatively mature by three weeks in the neonatal heart.
- *Reduced ventricular compliance*: The compliance of the neonatal myocardium is reduced because a deficiency of elastic elements parallels the deficiency of contractile elements.
- *Increased intraventricular dependence*: Changes in ventricular pressure are transmitted to the opposite ventricle via the ventricular septum more readily in the immature myocardium. Left ventricular diastolic filling is disproportionately impaired in the neonate by a high right ventricular end-diastolic pressure. This is due to a leftward shift of the intraventricular septum and a reduction in

left ventricular distensibility. Right ventricular diastolic filling is impaired to an equal extent by high left ventricular end-diastolic pressures in neonates. This enhanced ventricular interaction is caused by reduced ventricular compliance and because, at birth, the LV and RV are of equal mass. The increased volume and pressure load experienced by the LV after birth produces relative left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH). The normal adult LV to RV mass ratio of 2:1 is not seen until several months after birth.

- *Incomplete autonomic innervations:* Sympathetic innervation, which is responsible for increasing the heart rate and contractility, is incompletely developed at birth. As a result, the local myocardial release of norepinephrine contributes less

to increases in contractility than do increases in circulating catecholamine levels. For this reason, inotropic agents such as dopamine – the effects of which are partially mediated through release of norepinephrine from myocardial nerve endings – may have to be used at higher doses to be effective in younger patients. On the other hand, the parasympathetic system, which reflexly slows the heart, is fully functional at birth.

- *Immature myocardial metabolism:* The neonatal myocardium is more dependent on anaerobic metabolism than the adult heart, which uses carbohydrates and lactate as primary energy sources. This may have a somewhat protective effect, making the neonatal myocardium more tolerant to the effects of hypoxia.

## 2

## Important Concepts in Congenital Heart Disease

The prevalence of congenital heart disease (CHD) continues to increase. In 2000, it was 11.89 per 1000 children and 4.09 per 1000 adults, whereas in 2010 it was 13.11 per 1000 children and 6.12 per 1000 adults. The anesthesiologist who cares for patients with CHD faces myriad challenges in the perioperative management of these complex individuals. In major pediatric cardiac centers, almost every lesion is amenable to surgical intervention. The pathophysiology of a wide variety of congenital heart defects can be best understood by applying certain basic principles to each patient. This chapter outlines those principles. The anesthesiologist who understands the cardiovascular physiology, the dynamics of each cardiac lesion, and the planned surgical cardiac or non-cardiac intervention will be able to conduct an appropriate anesthetic. Although younger, smaller, and sicker patients are presenting for more complex, innovative surgical and interventional treatment, it is encouraging and impressive that there has been a concomitant decrease in surgical and anesthetic morbidity and mortality.

### Pathophysiology of CHD

While some congenital heart defects involve purely obstructive or regurgitant valvular lesions, the presence of shunts (both physiologic and anatomic) is the hallmark of CHD. Anesthetic management of the patient

with CHD is dependent on a clear understanding of:

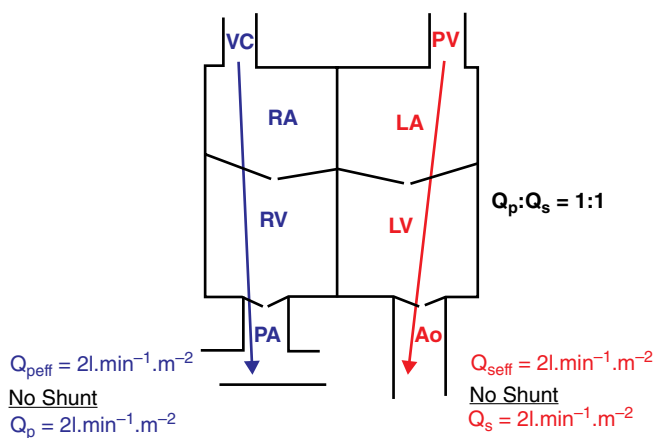
- The concepts of shunting (both physiologic and anatomic), single-ventricle physiology, and intercirculatory mixing.
- The types of anatomic shunts and the dynamics of the anatomic shunting process.
- The effects of congenital lesions on the development of the pulmonary vascular system.
- The factors that influence pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance.
- The factors responsible for producing myocardial ischemia.

### Concepts of Shunting, Single-Ventricle Physiology, and Inter-Circulatory Mixing

#### Shunting

Shunting is the process whereby venous return into one circulatory system is recirculated through the arterial outflow of the same circulatory system. Flow of blood from the systemic venous atrium or right atrium (RA) to the aorta produces a recirculation of systemic venous blood. A flow of blood from the pulmonary venous atrium or left atrium (LA) to the pulmonary artery (PA) produces a recirculation of pulmonary venous blood. Recirculation of blood produces a physiologic shunt. The recirculation of pulmonary venous blood produces a physiologic left-to-right (L-R) shunt, whereas the recirculation





**Figure 2.1** Depiction of blood flows in a normal cardiac physiology without shunting.

of systemic venous blood produces a physiologic right-to-left (R-L) shunt. A physiologic R-L or L-R shunt commonly is the result of an anatomic R-L or L-R shunt. In an anatomic shunt, blood moves from one circulatory system to the other via a communication at the level of the cardiac chambers (atrial or ventricular) or great vessels. Physiologic shunts can exist in the absence of an anatomic shunt. Transposition physiology is the primary example of this process.

### Effective Blood Flow

Effective blood flow is the quantity of venous blood from one circulatory system reaching the arterial system of the other circulatory system. Effective pulmonary blood flow is the volume of systemic venous blood reaching the pulmonary circulation, whereas effective systemic blood flow is the volume of pulmonary venous blood reaching the systemic circulation. Effective pulmonary blood flow and effective systemic blood flows are the flows necessary to maintain life. Effective pulmonary blood flow and effective systemic blood flow are always equal, no matter how complex the lesions. Effective blood flow usually is the result of a normal pathway through the heart, but it may occur as the result of an anatomic R-L or L-R shunt.

### Total Pulmonary Blood Flow/Total Systemic Blood Flow

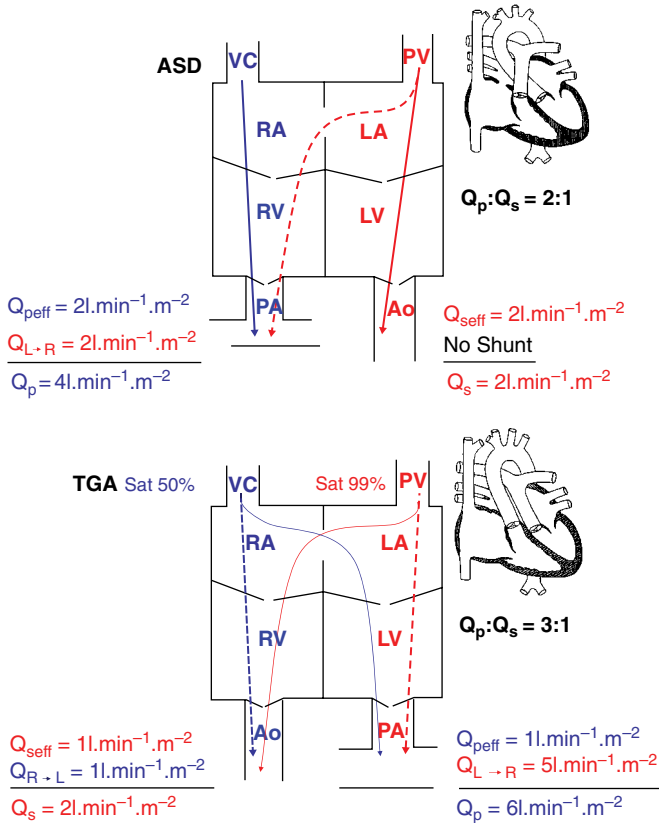
Total pulmonary blood flow ( $Q_p$ ) is the sum of effective pulmonary blood flow and

recirculated pulmonary blood flow. Total systemic blood flow ( $Q_s$ ) is the sum of effective systemic blood flow and recirculated systemic blood flow. Total pulmonary blood flow and total systemic blood flow do not have to be equal. Therefore, it is best to think of recirculated flow (physiologic shunt flow) as the extra, non-effective flow superimposed on the nutritive effective blood flow. These concepts are illustrated in Figures 2.1 and 2.2.

### Single-Ventricle Physiology

Single-ventricle physiology is used to describe the circulation wherein complete mixing of pulmonary venous and systemic venous blood occurs at the atrial or ventricular level and the ventricle(s) then distribute output to both the systemic and pulmonary beds. As a result of this physiology:

- The ventricular output is the sum of pulmonary blood flow ( $Q_p$ ) and systemic blood flow ( $Q_s$ ).
- The distribution of systemic and pulmonary blood flows is dependent on the relative resistances to flow (both intracardiac and extracardiac) into the two parallel circuits.
- Oxygen saturations are the same in the aorta and the pulmonary artery.
- This physiology can exist in patients with one well-developed ventricle and one hypoplastic ventricle, as well as in patients with two well-formed ventricles.



**Figure 2.2** Depiction of blood flows and saturations in atrial septal defect (ASD) and transposition of the great arteries (TGA). Effective systemic and effective pulmonary blood flows are equal and are shown as solid lines in both lesions. The shunted flows are shown as dotted lines.

- In the case of a single anatomic ventricle there is always obstruction to either pulmonary or systemic blood flow as the result of complete or near-complete obstruction to inflow and/or outflow from the hypoplastic ventricle. In this circumstance there must be a source of both systemic and pulmonary blood flow to assure post-natal survival. In some instances of a single anatomic ventricle, a direct connection between the aorta and the pulmonary artery via a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) is the sole source of systemic blood flow (hypoplastic left heart syndrome; HLHS) or of pulmonary blood flow (pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum; PA/IVS). This is known as ductal-dependent circulation. In other instances of a single anatomic ventricle, intracardiac pathways provide both systemic and pulmonary blood flow without the necessity of a PDA. This is the case in tricuspid atresia with normally related great vessels, a non-restrictive ventricular septal defect (VSD) and minimal or absent pulmonary stenosis.
- Single-ventricle physiology can exist in the presence of two well-formed anatomic ventricles when there is complete or near-complete obstruction to outflow from one of the ventricles:
  - Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) with pulmonary atresia (PA) where pulmonary blood flow is supplied via a PDA or multiple aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCA).
  - Truncus arteriosus.

- Severe neonatal aortic stenosis and interrupted aortic arch; in both lesions a substantial portion of systemic blood flow is supplied via a PDA.
- Heterotaxy syndrome, where there are components of systemic venous (SVC, IVC, hepatic veins, azygous veins) and pulmonary venous return to both right-sided and left-sided atria. In addition, the atrial morphology can be ambiguous.

Despite the fact that patients with totally anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR) have complete mixing of pulmonary and systemic venous blood at the atrial level, they do not manifest the other features necessary to create single-ventricle physiology. This also holds true for lesions in which a common atrial or ventricular chamber exists due to bidirectional (both L-R and R-L) anatomic

shunting across a large defect (atrial septal or ventricular septal) and where there is no obstruction to ventricular outflow. A number of single-ventricle physiology lesions are listed in Table 2.1.

All patients with single-ventricle physiology who have severe hypoplasia of one ventricle will ultimately be staged down the single ventricle pathway to Fontan physiology (this will be discussed in detail later). Patients with single-ventricle physiology and two well-formed ventricles may be able to undergo a two-ventricle (biventricular) repair.

With single-ventricle physiology, the arterial saturation ( $SaO_2$ ) will be determined by the relative volumes and saturations of pulmonary venous and systemic venous blood flows that have mixed and reached the aorta. This is summarized in the following equation:

$$Aortic\ saturation = \frac{\left[ \begin{array}{l} (systemic\ venous\ saturation)(total\ systemic\ venous\ blood\ flow) + \\ (pulmonary\ venous\ saturation)(total\ pulmonary\ venous\ blood\ flow) \end{array} \right]}{total\ systemic\ venous\ blood\ flow + total\ pulmonary\ venous\ blood\ flow}$$

This is illustrated in Figure 2.3, where:  $SaO_2 = [(65)(1) + (98)(0.85)] / (1.85) = 80\%$ .

From this equation, it is apparent that with single-ventricle physiology, three variables will determine arterial saturation:  $Q_p:Q_s$ ; systemic venous saturation; and pulmonary venous saturation.

- 1) *The ratio of total pulmonary to total systemic blood flow ( $Q_p:Q_s$ ).* A greater proportion of the mixed blood will consist of saturated blood (pulmonary venous blood) than desaturated blood (systemic venous blood) when  $Q_p:Q_s$  is high. Figure 2.4 demonstrates the increase in arterial saturation that occurs with increases in pulmonary blood flow relative to systemic blood flow.
- 2) *Systemic venous saturation.* For a given  $Q_p:Q_s$  and pulmonary venous saturation, a decrease in systemic venous saturation will result in a decreased arterial saturation. Decreases in systemic venous saturation

occur as the result of decreases in systemic oxygen delivery or increases in systemic oxygen consumption. Systemic oxygen delivery is the product of systemic blood flow and arterial oxygen content. Arterial oxygen content is dependent on the hemoglobin concentration and the arterial saturation.

- 3) *Pulmonary venous saturation.* In the absence of large intrapulmonary shunts and/or V/Q mismatch, pulmonary venous saturation should be close to 100% breathing room air. In the presence of pulmonary parenchymal disease, pulmonary venous saturation may be reduced. The V/Q mismatch component of pulmonary venous desaturation will be largely eliminated with a  $FiO_2$  of 1.0, while the intrapulmonary shunt contribution will not be eliminated. For any given systemic venous saturation and  $Q_p:Q_s$  a reduction in pulmonary venous saturation will result in a decreased arterial saturation.

**Table 2.1** Anatomic subtypes of single-ventricle physiology. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

	<b>Aortic blood flow from</b>	<b>Pulmonary artery blood flow from</b>
HLHS	PDA	RV
Severe neonate aortic stenosis	PDA	RV
IAA	LV (proximal) PDA (distal)	RV
PA/IV5	LV	PDA
Tetralogy of Fallot with pulmonary atresia	LV	PDA, MAPCAs
Tricuspid atresia, NRGAs, with pulmonary atresia (type 1A)	LV	PDA, MAPCAs
Tricuspid atresia, NRGAs, with restrictive VSD and pulmonary stenosis (type 1B)	LV	LV through VSD to RV
Tricuspid atresia, NRGAs, with non-restrictive VSD and no pulmonary stenosis (type 1C)	LV	LV through VSD to RV
Tricuspid atresia, D-TGA with non-restrictive VSD and pulmonary atresia (type 2A)	LV through VSD to RV	PDA, MAPCAs
Tricuspid atresia, D-TGA, with non-restrictive VSD and pulmonary stenosis (type 2B)	LV through VSD to RV	LV
Tricuspid atresia, D-TGA, with non-restrictive VSD and no pulmonary stenosis (type 2C)	LV through VSD to RV	LV
Tricuspid atresia, D-loop ventricles, L-TGA, subpulmonic stenosis (type 3A)	LV	LV through VSD to RV
Tricuspid atresia, L-loop ventricles, L-TGA, subaortic stenosis (type 3B)	LV through VSD to RV	LV
Truncus arteriosus	LV and RV	Aorta
DILV, NRGAs	LV	LV via BVF
DILV, L-loop ventricles, L-TGA, restrictive BVF	LV via BVF, PDA	LV

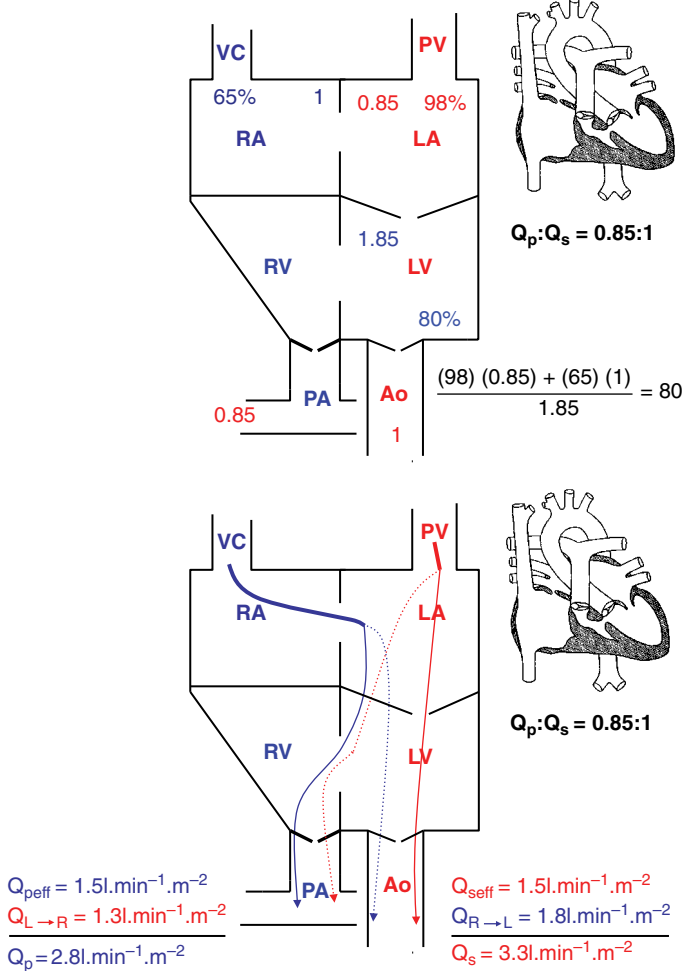
BVF, bulboventricular foramen; D, dextro; DILV, double-inlet left ventricle; HLHS, hypoplastic left heart syndrome; IAA, interrupted aortic arch; L, levo; LV, left ventricle; MAPCAs, multiple aortopulmonary collateral arteries; NRGAs, normally related great arteries; PA/IVS, pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; RV, right ventricle; TGA, transposition of the great arteries; VSD, ventricular septal defect.

### Intercirculatory Mixing

Intercirculatory mixing is the unique situation that exists in transposition of the great vessels (TGA) (see Figure 2.2). In TGA, two parallel circulations exist due to the existence of atrioventricular concordance (RA-RV, LA-LV) and ventriculoarterial discordance (RV-Ao, LV-PA). This produces a parallel rather than a normal series circulation. In this arrangement, blood flow will consist of a parallel recirculation of pulmonary venous blood in the pulmonary circuit and systemic

venous blood in the systemic circuit. Therefore, the physiologic shunt or the percentage of venous blood from one system that recirculates in the arterial outflow of the same system is 100% for both circuits. Unless there are one or more communications (atrial septal defect, ASD; patent foramen ovale, PFO; VSD; PDA) between the parallel circuits to allow intercirculatory mixing, this lesion is incompatible with life.

An anatomic R-L shunt is necessary to provide effective pulmonary blood flow, whereas an anatomic L-R shunt is necessary



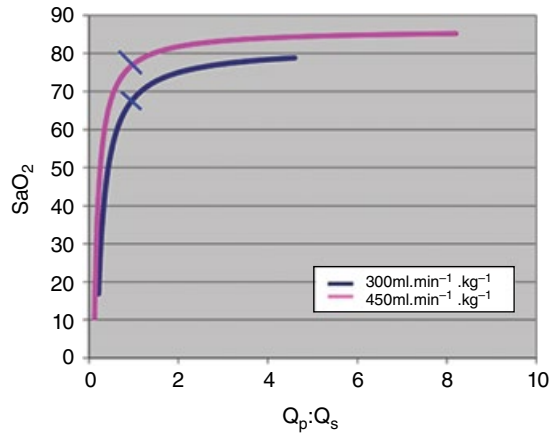
**Figure 2.3** Blood flows and saturations in tricuspid atresia (single-ventricle physiology). Effective pulmonary and systemic blood flows shown as solid lines. Shunted pulmonary and systemic blood flows shown as dotted lines.

to provide effective systemic blood flow. Effective pulmonary blood flow, effective systemic blood flow, and the volume of intercirculatory mixing must always be equal. Total systemic blood flow is the sum of recirculated systemic venous blood plus effective systemic blood flow. Likewise, total pulmonary blood flow is the sum of recirculated pulmonary venous blood plus effective pulmonary blood flow. Recirculated blood makes up the largest portion of total pulmonary and total systemic blood flows, with effective blood flows contributing only a small portion of the total flows. This is particularly true in the

pulmonary circuit where the total pulmonary blood flow ( $Q_p$ ) and the volume of the pulmonary circuit (LA-LV-PA) is two- to three-fold larger than the total systemic blood flow ( $Q_s$ ) and the volume of the systemic circuit (RA-RV-Ao). The net result is transposition physiology, wherein the pulmonary artery oxygen saturation is greater than the aortic oxygen saturation.

Arterial saturation ( $SaO_2$ ) will be determined by the relative volumes and saturations of the recirculated systemic and effective systemic venous blood flows reaching the aorta. This is summarized in the following equation:

**Figure 2.4** Graph of systemic SaO<sub>2</sub> versus Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> for two different ventricular outputs (300 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> and 450 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) in single-ventricle physiology. In this example, oxygen consumption is assumed to be 9 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> and SpvO<sub>2</sub> = 95%. It is clear that SaO<sub>2</sub> peaks at or near a Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> of 1:1. Further increases in Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> produce minimal to no increases in SaO<sub>2</sub>.



$$\text{Aortic saturation} = \frac{[(\text{systemic venous sat})(\text{recirculated systemic venous blood flow}) + (\text{pulmonary venous sat})(\text{effective pulmonary venous blood flow})]}{[\text{total systemic venous blood flow}]}$$

where sat = saturation.

This is illustrated in Figure 2.2, where SaO<sub>2</sub> = [(50)(1) + (99)(1)]/2 = 74.5%.

Obviously, the greater the effective systemic blood flow (intercirculatory mixing) relative to the recirculated systemic blood flow, the greater the aortic saturation. For a given amount of intercirculatory mixing and total systemic blood flow, a decrease in systemic venous or pulmonary venous saturation will result in a decrease in arterial saturation.

### Classification of Anatomic Shunts

Anatomic shunts can be characterized as either simple or complex.

#### Simple Shunts

In an anatomic shunt, a communication (orifice) exists between pulmonary and arterial vessels or heart chambers (Table 2.2). In a simple shunt, there is no fixed obstruction to outflow from the vessels or chambers involved in the shunt. When the shunt orifice is small (restrictive shunt) a large pressure gradient exists across the orifice, and variations in outflow resistance (pulmonary

vascular resistance, PVR; systemic vascular resistance, SVR) have little effect on shunt magnitude and direction. In this instance, the magnitude of the shunt is affected by the size of the shunt orifice. However, when the shunt orifice is large the shunt becomes non-restrictive, and the outflow resistance becomes the primary determinant of the magnitude and direction of shunting. These shunts, in which the ratio of PVR to SVR determines the magnitude of shunting, are known as *dependent* shunts. When the communication is very large, no pressure gradient exists between the vessels or chambers involved. In this instance, *bidirectional* shunting occurs, resulting in complete mixing and a functionally common chamber. Net systemic and pulmonary blood flow is then determined by the ratio of systemic to pulmonary vascular resistance (Figure 2.5).

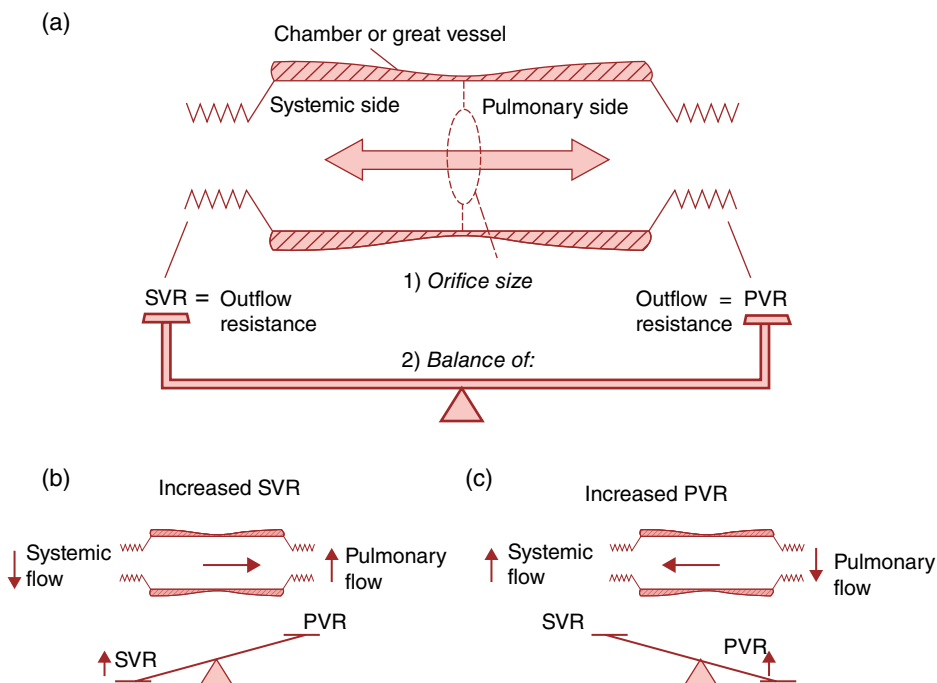
#### Complex Shunts

In complex anatomic shunt lesions there is obstruction to outflow in addition to a shunt orifice (Table 2.2). The obstruction may be at the valvular, subvalvular, or supravalvular level. The obstruction may be fixed (as with

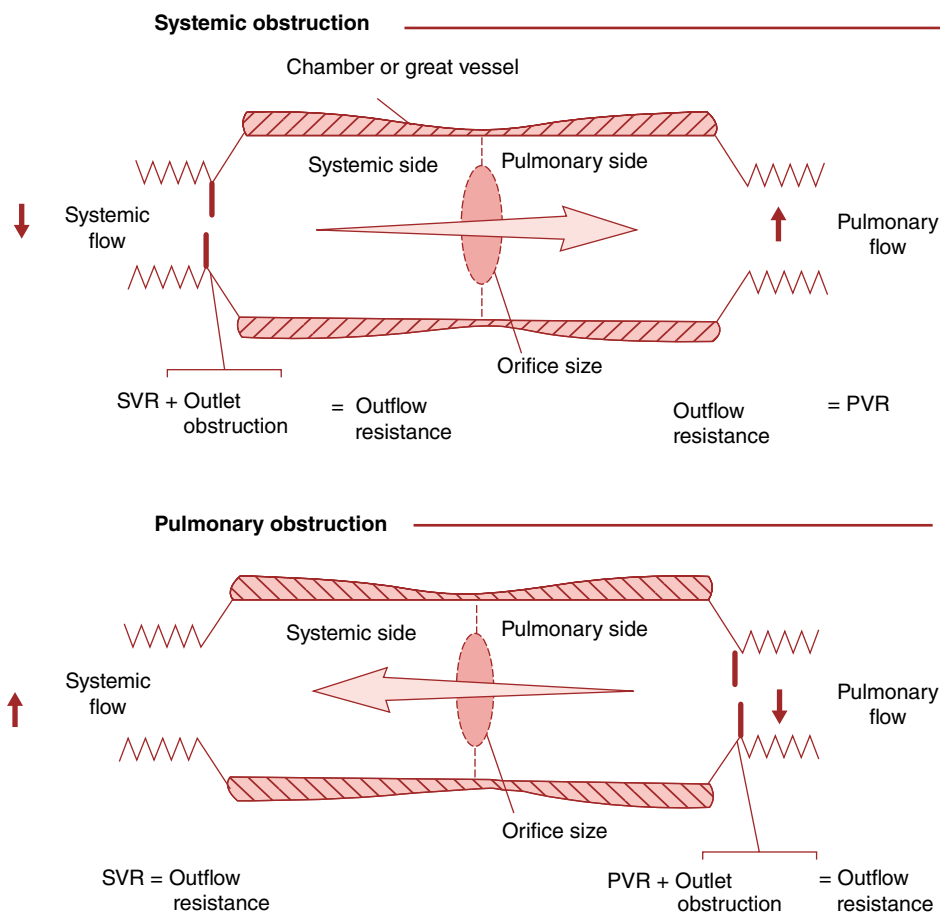
**Table 2.2** Simple and complex shunts.

Simple No fixed obstruction to outflow		Complex Obstruction to outflow	
Restrictive (small communication)	Non-restrictive (large communication)	Partial obstruction	Complete obstruction
Large pressure gradient	Small shunt gradient	Shunt magnitude and direction is largely fixed due to obstruction	Shunt magnitude and direction is totally fixed
Direction and magnitude of shunt are relatively independent of PVR:SVR.	Direction and magnitude of shunt are largely dependent on PVR:SVR.	Shunt dependence on PVR:SVR is inversely related to the severity of the obstructive lesion	Flows through the shunt is independent of PVR:SVR
Shunt is less subject to control by ventilator or pharmacologic interventions.	Shunt is subject to control by ventilator or pharmacologic interventions.	Shunt pressure gradient is determined by both the shunt orifice and the obstructive lesion	Shunt pressure gradient is determined only by the shunt orifice
Examples: small VSD, small PDA, small ASD, modified Blalock–Taussig shunt.	Examples: large VSD, large PDA, CAVC	Examples: TOF, VSD and PS, VSD with coarctation	Examples: Tricuspid atresia, mitral atresia, pulmonary atresia, aortic atresia.

ASD, atrial septal defect; VSD, ventricular septal defect; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; CAVC, common atrioventricular canal; PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; SVR, systemic vascular resistance; TOF, tetralogy of Fallot; PS, pulmonary stenosis.



**Figure 2.5** Influence of orifice size and the pulmonary vascular resistance:systemic vascular resistance (PVR:SVR) ratio on the magnitude and direction of a dependent shunt. (a) PVR and SVR are balanced, resulting in equal pulmonary and systemic blood flows. (b) PVR is reduced relative to SVR, resulting in an increase in pulmonary blood flow and a decrease in systemic blood flow. (c) PVR is elevated relative to SVR, resulting in a decrease in pulmonary blood flow and an increase in systemic blood flow.



**Figure 2.6** Influence of orifice size and total outflow resistance on the magnitude and direction of a complex shunt. Total outflow resistance will be a combination of pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) or systemic vascular resistance (SVR) and the resistance offered by the obstructive lesion.

valvular or infundibular stenosis) or variable (as with dynamic infundibular obstruction). In complex shunts, outflow resistance is a combination of the resistance across the obstructive lesions and the resistance across the pulmonary or systemic vascular bed (Figure 2.6). When an obstruction is severe, the SVR or PVR distal to the obstruction will have little effect on shunt magnitude or direction.

Tetralogy of Fallot is a good example of a complex shunt in which there is a partial obstruction to outflow. There is a fixed component of right ventricular outflow obstruction in tetralogy of Fallot secondary to infundibular, valvular and possibly supraventricular, obstruction. A dynamic component

of right ventricular obstruction is produced by changes in the caliber of the right ventricular infundibulum. These two components of right ventricular outflow obstruction can produce a R-L shunt. Because right ventricular outflow obstruction is incomplete, increases in PVR will also increase the total right ventricular outflow resistance and increase R-L shunting. Similarly, a decrease in SVR relative to PVR will increase R-L shunting without any increase in right ventricular outflow resistance.

Another form of complex shunt is present in patients who have single-ventricle physiology. In these lesions, changes in SVR or PVR play no role in determining shunt magnitude



or direction. The entire shunt flow is fixed and obligatory across the communication, and complete mixing results. In order for flow of this mixed blood to reach the obstructed circuit an additional downstream shunt, such as a VSD or PDA, must be present. The downstream shunt may be simple or complex, and is dependent on the ratio of PVR to SVR.

These concepts are critical to a clear understanding of the pathophysiology involved in patients with CHD. Describing a lesion as cyanotic or acyanotic may be misleading and simplistic. For example, in a patient with tetralogy of Fallot, there may be minimal valvular or infundibular obstruction to pulmonary blood flow at baseline, and the patient may not be cyanotic. In fact, this type of patient ('pink Tet') may have a large L-R shunt through the VSD, with increased pulmonary blood flow. During anesthesia, hypercarbia and hypoxemia may develop and result in an increase in both PVR and the dynamic component of infundibular obstruction. This will produce a net R-L shunt and cyanosis ('Tet spell'). Similarly, a cyanotic episode (a net R-L shunt) may be precipitated in the same patient by the SVR reduction that accompanies a febrile illness.

## Pulmonary Vascular Pathophysiology

Pulmonary hypertension (PH) may occur as the result of congenital heart lesions. PH is defined as a mean pulmonary artery pressure (mPAP)  $\geq 25$  mmHg at rest. The stimulus for the development of PH in CHD is exposure of the pulmonary vascular system (both *in utero* and after birth) to abnormal pressure and flow patterns. PH can be considered to have a pre-capillary cause, a post-capillary cause (pulmonary venous hypertension), or a combination of both. Pre-capillary PH is also known as pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH), and is defined as mPAP  $\geq 25$  mmHg at rest, pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP)

$\leq 15$  mmHg, and a pulmonary vascular resistance index (PVRI)  $> 3$  Wood units  $m^{-2}$  for biventricular circulations. Following cavopulmonary anastomosis (Fontan procedure) the definition is a PVRI  $> 3$  Wood units  $m^{-2}$  or a transpulmonary gradient  $> 6$  mmHg, even in the presence of mPAP  $\leq 25$  mmHg. Post-capillary PH is most commonly due to left heart disease and is defined as mPAP  $\geq 25$  mmHg at rest in conjunction with PAWP  $\geq 15$  mmHg. Post-capillary causes are characteristically associated with interstitial pulmonary edema. Children with longstanding post-capillary PH develop a component of pre-capillary PH (PAH) due to reactive pulmonary artery vasoconstriction.

### Causes of Pre-Capillary PH in CHD

- 1) Exposure of the pulmonary vascular circuit to systemic arterial pressures and high pulmonary blood flows. Patients for whom the pulmonary vasculature is exposed to high flows and systemic arterial pressures typically have very early development of PAH. This classically occurs in the presence of a large (non-restrictive) VSD.
- 2) Exposure of the pulmonary vascular circuit to high pulmonary blood flow in the absence of high pulmonary artery pressures. This type of lesion is associated with a slow progression of PAH. A large ASD or a small (restrictive) PDA are examples of this type of lesion.

### Causes of Post-Capillary PH in CHD

- 1) Obstruction of pulmonary venous drainage. Pulmonary venous obstruction may result from stenotic pulmonary veins, which can exist as a primary disease entity or in conjunction with anomalous pulmonary venous return. Cor triatriatum can cause the obstruction of pulmonary venous drainage into the left atrium.
- 2) The presence of high pressure in the atrial chamber into which there is

pulmonary venous drainage. This is generally the left atrium (congenital mitral stenosis, congenital aortic stenosis, severe coarctation of the aorta, severe left ventricular systolic or diastolic function), but may also be the right atrium (totally anomalous pulmonary venous return, heterotaxy syndrome). PH seen in adult patients with acquired heart disease is almost always related to elevated left atrial pressure from left-heart diseases.

The morphologic changes associated with PAH in CHD have three components: (i) an increased muscularity of small pulmonary arteries; (ii) small artery intimal hyperplasia; and (iii) scarring and thrombosis and reduced numbers of intra-acinar arteries. These changes produce progressive obstruction to pulmonary blood flow and result in progressive and irreversible elevations of PVR and pulmonary artery pressure. These changes may be graded morphologically using lung biopsy, or angiographically using the pulmonary artery angiogram. Ultimately, these changes elevate PVR and reduce pulmonary blood flow. In addition, the increased muscularity of the small pulmonary arteries enhances the response of the pulmonary vasculature to pulmonary vasoconstrictors.

## Control of Pulmonary Vascular Resistance

Alterations in PVR are an important determinant of shunt magnitude and direction in some shunt lesions. Furthermore, the patient with CHD is likely to have an enhanced response of the pulmonary vasculature to vasoconstricting substances. It is therefore necessary to be familiar with the interventions that will alter PVR in the CHD patient. In patients with PH due to a pre-capillary cause, the following interventions are useful. In patients with a post-capillary cause, use of these interventions

(particularly the use of inhaled pulmonary vasodilators) may result in the development of or worsening of interstitial pulmonary edema, with little or no effect on PAP due to the presence of downstream obstruction.

### PaO<sub>2</sub>

Both, alveolar hypoxia and arterial hypoxemia induce pulmonary vasoconstriction. A PaO<sub>2</sub> lower than 50 mmHg increases PVR over a wide range of arterial pH; however, this effect is enhanced when pH is lower than 7.40. Conversely, high levels of inspired O<sub>2</sub> can reduce an elevated PVR.

### PaCO<sub>2</sub>

Hypercarbia increases PVR, independent of changes in arterial pH. Hypocarbia, on the other hand, reduces PVR only through the production of an alkalosis. In fact, reliable reductions in PVR and increases in pulmonary blood flow and PaO<sub>2</sub> are seen in children with R-L shunts when hyperventilation to a PaCO<sub>2</sub> near 20 mmHg and a pH near 7.60 is obtained. Similarly, post-CPB hyperventilation to a PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 20–33 mmHg and a pH of 7.50 to 7.56 in patients with preoperative PH results in a reduction in PVR when compared with ventilation that produces normocarbia or hypercarbia.

### pH

Both, respiratory and metabolic alkalosis reduces PVR, whereas both respiratory and metabolic acidosis increases PVR.

### Variation in Lung Volumes

At small lung volumes, atelectasis results in the compression of extra-alveolar vessels, whereas at high lung volumes hyperinflation of alveoli results in the compression of intra-alveolar vessels. Therefore, PVR is normally lowest at lung volumes at or near the functional residual capacity. Positive end-expiratory

pressure (PEEP) may cause an increase in PVR by increasing alveolar pressure through hyperinflation. However, in situations in which PEEP works to recruit atelectatic alveoli and increase arterial PaO<sub>2</sub>, a decrease in PVR generally is seen.

### Vasodilator Agents

There is no intravenous drug that selectively acts as a pulmonary vasodilator. Pulmonary vasodilators (PGE<sub>1</sub>, nitroglycerin, milrinone, sodium nitroprusside, and tolazoline) also induce systemic vasodilation. A number of inhaled agents (of which nitric oxide, NO, is the prototype) capable of providing selective pulmonary vasodilatation are now available. NO generated by endothelial NO synthase (eNOS) is an endogenous vasodilator. A wide variety of substances that increase intracellular calcium stimulate the production of NO from L-arginine via eNOS. After it has been formed, NO diffuses from the endothelium to vascular smooth muscle (VSM), where it binds to and activates guanylate cyclase to produce cyclic guanosine monophosphate (cGMP). cGMP acts as a second messenger to catalyze reactions that lead to a reduction of VSM calcium by reduced calcium influx, increased calcium efflux, and a reduced release of intracellular calcium. This produces a relaxation of the VSM and vasodilation. NO is also involved in the modulation of basal VSM tone. This modulation capacity is lost in vessels in which endothelium is removed or damaged.

Inhaled NO selectively reduces pulmonary hypertension and improves ventilation/perfusion matching in a variety of disease states. Pulmonary selectivity is based on three characteristics of NO:

- Its gaseous state allows delivery to ventilated alveoli by inhalation.
- Its small size and lipophilicity allows ready diffusion into the appropriate cells.
- Its avid binding to and rapid inactivation by hemoglobin prevents systemic vasodilatation. NO binds to oxyhemoglobin (Fe<sup>2+</sup>) to form nitrosylhemoglobin, which is

rapidly converted to methemoglobin (Fe<sup>3+</sup>) and NO<sub>3</sub><sup>-</sup>.

Inhaled NO has been used to treat PH in both the pre- and post-CPB period in a variety of congenital heart lesions and in the treatment of persistent PH of the newborn. Generally, approximately 20–40 ppm inhaled NO has been used. Some caution is warranted because both NO dependency and rebound pulmonary hypertension following NO discontinuation has been reported.

An alternative to inhaled NO is aerosolized prostacyclin (PGI<sub>2</sub>) and aerosolized PGE<sub>1</sub>. PGI<sub>2</sub> and its analogs (iloprost, epoprostenol or Flolan) and PGE<sub>1</sub> act by binding to prostacyclin receptors and activating cyclic adenosine monophosphate (cAMP). This activates protein kinase A, which leads to a reduction of VSM intracellular calcium, causing vasorelaxation. PGI<sub>2</sub> also stimulates endothelial release of NO. Aerosolized PGI<sub>2</sub> (2 to 50 ng kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) is useful in selectively lowering PVR after congenital cardiac surgery. There is less experience with aerosolized PGE<sub>1</sub> but at doses of 150–300 ng kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> it has been proved useful in the treatment of neonatal respiratory failure.

Sildenafil is a cGMP-specific phosphodiesterase (PDE5) inhibitor that also works to increase cGMP levels. Oral, intravenous, and aerosolized sildenafil is effective in reducing PVR.

### Sympathetic Nervous System Stimulation

Sympathetic stimulation results in increases in both pulmonary and systemic vascular resistance. In children with pulmonary artery medial hypertrophy, this may result in a hyperactive pulmonary vasoconstrictor response. Blunting of sympathetic outflow during a stress response attenuates increases in PVR in children predisposed to PH.

In summary, the control of ventilation by manipulating PaO<sub>2</sub>, PaCO<sub>2</sub>, pH and lung volumes are the best methods for altering PVR independently of SVR. A combination of a high inspired FiO<sub>2</sub>, a PaO<sub>2</sub> higher than

60 mmHg, a  $\text{PaCO}_2$  of 30–35 mmHg, a pH of 7.50–7.60, and low inspiratory pressures without high levels of PEEP, will produce reliable reductions in PVR. Conversely, a reduced  $\text{FiO}_2$ , a  $\text{PaO}_2$  of 50–60 mmHg, a  $\text{PaCO}_2$  of 45–55 mmHg, and the application of PEEP, can be used to increase PVR. Inhaled NO and prostacyclin are valuable selective pulmonary vasodilators in some patients.

## Myocardial Ischemia

Patients with CHD are at higher risk for the development of subendocardial ischemia than is commonly appreciated. In some congenital lesions there are abnormalities in the coronary circulation predisposing to ischemia, but in many others forms of CHD, ischemia occurs in the presence of normal coronary arteries secondary to myocardial oxygen supply and demand imbalance.

Subendocardial perfusion is largely determined by coronary perfusion pressure (CPP), which is the mean aortic diastolic pressure minus the ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In addition, the time interval available for perfusion (predominately diastole) is critical. As a result, the relationship between heart rate, diastolic blood pressure and ventricular end-diastolic pressure will determine whether subendocardial ischemia occurs. These factors as they apply to patients with CHD are considered below.

### Aortic Diastolic Pressure

Subendocardial perfusion in a ventricle with systemic pressure occurs predominantly in early diastole. In normal children, some subendocardial perfusion of the pulmonary or right ventricle can occur in systole, as well as in diastole, because the pulmonary ventricular systolic pressure is low. However, in many congenital lesions systolic pressure in both ventricles is systemic and in some cases the pulmonary ventricle may have suprasystemic pressures. As a result, the perfusion of both

ventricles may be dependent on the rapid increase in early diastolic flow.

Aortic diastolic pressure, which is normally low in neonates and infants, is further compromised in single-ventricle physiology lesions because these lesions promote a diastolic run-off of aortic blood into the lower-resistance pulmonary circuit. The subgroup of patients with ductal-dependent systemic blood and patients with truncus arteriosus are particularly at risk for enhanced aortic diastolic run-off. In addition, coronary perfusion is further compromised in patients with hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) because the coronary ostia are perfused retrogradely down a segment of hypoplastic ascending aorta.

### Subendocardial Pressure

Subendocardial pressure is elevated and subendocardial perfusion is compromised in the presence of elevated ventricular end-diastolic pressure. An elevated end-diastolic pressure may be the result of impaired diastolic function (both reduced ventricular compliance and impaired ventricular relaxation), impaired systolic function, increased ventricular end-diastolic volume, or a combination of all three. For example, elevated ventricular end-diastolic pressure occurs as the result of the ventricular volume overload that accompanies single-ventricle lesions, lesions with a high  $Q_p:Q_s$ , and regurgitant atrioventricular and semilunar valve lesions. The ventricular hypertrophy that accompanies pressure overload lesions is particularly detrimental to subendocardial perfusion. Ventricular hypertrophy reduces ventricular compliance and elevates ventricular end-diastolic pressure. In addition, the extravascular compressive forces that accompany a high external pressure workload further compromise myocardial perfusion by reducing the transmural coronary vascular reserve (CVR). The CVR is the ratio of hyperemic myocardial blood flow to baseline myocardial blood flow.

### **Heart Rate**

The duration of diastole diminishes geometrically as the heart rate increases, while the duration of systole remains relatively constant. As a result, the time available for diastolic coronary artery perfusion falls as the heart rate increases. Consequently, a higher diastolic pressure is necessary to maintain subendocardial perfusion at higher heart rates. Hence, subendocardial perfusion is maintained in the presence of a low diastolic blood pressure if the heart rate is slower. In an infant with HLHS and an aortic diastolic pressure of 25 mmHg a heart rate of

130–140 bpm may well be tolerated without evidence of subendocardial ischemia, whereas it is unlikely that a heart rate of 170–180 bpm will be tolerated at the same diastolic pressure.

### **Anatomic Coronary Artery Lesions**

Anatomic coronary artery abnormalities complicate the management of patients with a number of congenital cardiac lesions such as pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS), Williams–Beuren syndrome, and anomalous left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery (ALCAPA).

## 3

# Preoperative Evaluation

## Clinical History

Clinical history should include medications, allergies, past hospitalizations and operations including prior anesthetic experiences, and a thorough review of systems. Performance of age-appropriate activities will aid in the evaluation of cardiac function and reserve. The infant in cardiac failure will manifest symptoms of low cardiac reserve during feeding. A parent might report sweating, tiring, dyspnea, and circumoral cyanosis during feeding. The observation by a parent that the patient cannot keep the same pace as siblings often is a reliable clinical sign that cyanosis or congestive heart failure is worsening. Frequent pulmonary infections may occur as a result of increased pulmonary blood flow in otherwise asymptomatic patients. However, cardiac catheterization data may be several months old by the time the patient presents for surgery, and the newly observed clinical signs may reflect the patient's current cardiac status more accurately.

## Physical Examination

An interpretation of vital signs is age-specific. The heart rate decreases and blood pressure increases with age. Growth curves also are useful. Congestive heart failure will sequentially inhibit age-appropriate gains in weight, height, and head circumference. It is not unusual for patients with severe congestive heart failure to weigh less at four months of age

than at birth. Interestingly, cyanotic children often do not manifest this failure to thrive.

Physical examination may reveal cyanosis, clubbing, or signs of congestive heart failure similar to those seen in adults (hepatomegaly, ascites, edema, or tachypnea). Rales may not be heard in infants and children with congestive heart failure, and the degree of heart failure may be determined more reliably by some of the signs and symptoms outlined above. Cyanosis is visibly detectable when the deoxyhemoglobin concentration is  $>5 \text{ g dl}^{-1}$  and anemia masks the detection of cyanosis. Differentiation between congestive heart failure and an upper respiratory tract infection can be difficult. The physical examination in both conditions may show mild tachypnea, wheezing and upper-airway congestion. Abnormal laboratory findings may help distinguish between the two. The decision to proceed to surgery may be necessary even when the differentiation between worsening congestive heart failure and a respiratory tract infection cannot be made with certainty.

Physical examination should include an evaluation of the limitations to vascular access and monitoring sites. A child may have a diminished pulse or unobtainable blood pressure in the arm in which the subclavian artery has been directly incorporated into a palliative shunt. This obviously has implications for arterial catheter placement, blood pressure monitoring, and use of pulse oximetry during surgery. More commonly, children requiring shunt procedures will

have undergone a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (tube graft from innominate artery to pulmonary artery). In this circumstance, prior to initiating blood pressure monitoring in the ipsilateral arm it is necessary to confirm that the blood pressure in that arm accurately reflects blood pressure in the contralateral arm. Finally, the child who has undergone multiple palliative procedures may have poor venous access, which will influence the mode of induction.

## Associated Congenital Abnormalities

Approximately 8% of children with congenital heart disease (CHD) have other congenital abnormalities (Table 3.1). Preoperative evaluation must define these defects. For example, conotruncal lesions (tetralogy of Fallot, interrupted aortic arch, truncus arteriosus, ventricular septal defects) are commonly associated with 22q11.2 deletion

**Table 3.1** Common syndromes and associated congenital heart diseases.

Syndrome	Associated CHD
CHARGE association (Coloboma, congenital Heart defects, choanal Atresia, Renal abnormalities, Genital hypoplasia, Ear deformities)	65% conotruncal anomalies, aortic arch anomalies
DiGeorge syndrome (chromosome 22 deletion, catch 22)	Interrupted aortic arch, truncus arteriosus, VSD, PDA, TOF
Duchenne muscular dystrophy	Cardiomyopathy
Ehlers–Danlos syndrome	Aneurysm of aorta and carotids
Ellis–van Creveld syndrome (chondro-ectodermal dysplasia)	50% common atrium
Fetal alcohol syndrome	25–30% VSD, PDA, ASD, TOF
Friedreich's ataxia	Cardiomyopathy
Glycogen storage disease II (Pompe)	Cardiomyopathy
Holt–Oram syndrome	ASD, VSD
Leopard syndrome (cardio-cutaneous syndrome)	PS, long PR interval, cardiomyopathy
Long QT syndromes: • Jervell and Lange Nielsen • Romano–Ward	Long QT interval, Ventricular tachyarrhythmia
Marfan syndrome	Aortic aneurysm, AR and/or MR
Mucopolysaccharidosis	AR and/or MR, coronary artery disease, cardiomyopathy
Noonan syndrome	PS (dystrophic valve), LVH, septal hypertrophy
Tuberous sclerosis	Myocardial rhabdomyoma
Shprintzen syndrome (Velocardiofacial, 22q deletion)	Conotruncal anomalies, TOF
VACTERL association	VSD, conotruncal anomalies (TOF, truncus arteriosus, etc.)
Williams syndrome	Supravalvular AS, PA stenosis
Zellweger syndrome (cerebrohepatorenal syndrome)	PDA, VSD, ASD

syndrome. This syndrome has previously been called DiGeorge syndrome, velocardio-facial syndrome, or conotruncal anomaly face syndrome, and is associated with hypocalcemia, immunodeficiency, facial dysmorphism, palate anomalies, velopharyngeal dysfunction, renal anomalies, and speech and feeding disorders. Atrial septal defects, ventricular septal defects and tetralogy of Fallot are seen in children with VACTERL and CHARGE association. Tracheal stenosis must be considered in patients with VATER association who have undergone tracheoesophageal fistula repair. The incidence of CHD (primarily atrioventricular canal defects) in patients with trisomy 21 is approximately 50%. As they age, these patients may present with problematic airways due to a large tongue and atlanto-occipital instability.

## Laboratory Data

A review of pertinent laboratory data and correlation with the clinical findings is necessary. A summary of preoperative evaluations is

provided in Table 3.2. The child in congestive heart failure may have mild iron deficiency because of chronically increased metabolic needs. The cyanotic child will be erythrocytotic (not polycythemic) in direct relation to the degree of arterial desaturation. Hematocrit levels higher than 65% are associated with a marked increase in blood viscosity. To avoid possible neurologic sequelae from such extreme viscosity, exchange transfusion should be considered before surgery. This is especially important if the proposed surgery is palliative and cardiopulmonary bypass with hemodilution is not employed. Patients with severe cyanosis and anemia may require transfusion. Cyanosis also affects the coagulation process, and it is not unusual to observe prolongation of prothrombin time (PT), partial thromboplastin time (PTT), and bleeding times. Thrombocytopenia or functional platelet defects also may exist. In the face of reoperation with extensive dissection, the anesthesiologist should plan adequate blood component therapy for each patient.

**Table 3.2** Preoperative evaluation. Modified from: Chan DM, Schure AY. Congenital Heart disease. In: Vacanti CA, Sikka PK, Urman RD, Derswitz M, Segal BS, eds. *Essential Clinical Anesthesia*, 1st ed., Cambridge University Press.

<b>History</b>	Signs and symptoms of congestive heart failure (e.g., failure to thrive). Palpitations or syncope. Additional congenital anomalies (e.g., airway, genitourinary). Recent and current medications (e.g., diuretics, digoxin, ACE inhibitors). Past surgical and interventional history. Last follow-up.
<b>Physical examination</b>	Heart murmur, thrill, arrhythmias. Tachypnea, increased work of breathing, rales. Poor peripheral perfusion, delayed capillary refill, bounding or diminished pulses. Cool extremities, mottled skin, sweating. Hepatomegaly. Edema.
<b>Laboratory studies</b>	CBC: erythrocytosis (secondary to cyanosis), anemia (secondary to malnutrition, iron deficiency). Electrolytes: hypokalemia, hyponatremia (secondary to diuretic therapy). Coagulation profile.
<b>Additional tests</b>	Echocardiography: function and anatomy. ECG: rhythm, signs of atrial or ventricular hypertrophy. Chest X-ray: cardiomegaly, pulmonary edema, or infiltrates.
<b>Specific studies</b>	Cardiac catheterization: anatomy, pressure gradients, saturations, shunts, resistances. Cardiac MRI: anatomy, pulmonary blood flow, RV and LV function.

CBC, complete blood count; ECG, electrocardiogram; MRI, magnetic resonance imaging; RV, right ventricle; LV, left ventricle.



Plasma electrolyte concentrations should be screened, especially in patients receiving digitalis and diuretic therapy. Hypocalcemia may be observed in patients with congestive heart failure, as well as patients with 22q11.2 deletion syndrome. Severe congestive heart failure may be accompanied by jitteriness and irritability. It is important to rule out hypoglycemia as an alternative cause of these findings.

The chest radiograph serves to confirm other clinical and diagnostic findings, such as cardiomegaly, the quantity of pulmonary blood flow, previous surgical procedures, and the presence of acute pulmonary infections. The electrocardiogram similarly confirms chamber enlargement and the presence of dysrhythmias. Review of the catheterization and echocardiographic data is critical to a clear understanding of the pathophysiology and surgical plan. The following information should be obtained routinely from a review of the catheterization data:

- Anatomic diagnosis.
- Interpretation of saturation data. Saturation step-ups or step-downs between vessels and chambers are used to detect shunts. Likewise, saturation data are used to calculate the ratio of pulmonary to systemic blood flow ( $Q_p:Q_s$ ). Saturation data also are used to differentiate intrapulmonary shunting and V/Q mismatch (atelectasis, hypoventilation, pulmonary disease) from intracardiac shunting.
- Interpretation of pressure data. Pressure data are used to compare right and left heart pressures and systemic and pulmonary arterial pressures. In addition, pressure gradients across valve and shunt orifices are measured. Pressure data can be used to assess ventricular diastolic function (distensibility and compliance).
- Interpretation of angiographic data. Cineangiograms can be used to assess ventricular wall motion (systolic function) and to assess intracardiac and great vessel blood flow patterns.
- Functional status and location of prior surgical interventions. This information will allow intelligent decisions to be made

regarding monitor placement and anesthetic management.

- Effect of interventions. Interventions made in the catheterization laboratory to palliate congenital heart lesions (balloon valvuloplasty, balloon septostomy, balloon angioplasty) are common. The effects of these interventions on the underlying lesion must be assessed. Furthermore, a trial of 100% inspired oxygen or NO may be used to assess the reversible component of pulmonary artery hypertension.

Echocardiography has revolutionized the field of pediatric cardiology over the past decade. Unlike adults, who may have limited transthoracic echocardiographic windows, images in pediatric patients are easily obtained. Most neonates proceed to surgery without catheterization studies. In rare instances catheterization is necessary to clearly delineate coronary or aortopulmonary collateral anatomy. Cardiac MRI is increasingly being utilized in the assessment of CHD. MRI provides precise quantification of ventricular volumes, valve regurgitation, and blood flow through the heart. It also provides an assessment of tissue characteristics such as scar and a better delineation of extracardiac vascular anatomy than echocardiography.

## Pregnancy

In teenagers and young females with CHD, conception is a possibility and pregnancy testing is required. The overall risk of CHD occurring in children of parents with CHD is 3–5% compared to 0.8% in the general population.

## Psychological Considerations

The anesthesiologist who evaluates the patient with CHD must be aware of the considerable effect that appropriate psychological preparation may have during the preoperative and postoperative periods. The

pediatric patient has unique psychological concerns that depend on age and previous surgical and anesthetic experience. In addition, the effect that serious heart disease has on parents and other family members cannot be minimized and must be addressed sensitively during the preoperative evaluation. Although neonates require no psychological preparation, the perioperative process can overwhelm the parents.

The preoperative psychological preparation must be appropriate to the age of the patient. Fear of separation from parents ('stranger anxiety') can manifest in the infant at 8–12 months with an intense aversion to strangers. Very few toddlers, even if playful and cooperative in the presence of the parent, will leave their parent happily to go to the operating room. Older children have fears of disfigurement or that they will 'wake up' or feel pain during and after surgery. Even the withdrawn, seemingly complacent adolescent often is in great turmoil regarding impending surgery. Previous surgery and anesthesia will influence even a young child's ability to cope with the newest operative experience. Just as excess stress is avoided in the anxious adult patient because of potential alterations in hemodynamics, the pediatric patient requires similar attention. Psychological issues influence not only the conduct of the physical examination but also how much detail is discussed with the parents in the presence of the patient. Obtaining informed consent from the parent in the presence of a school-aged child may create undue stress for the child. On the other hand, weak promises of 'no needles' or little discussion about what the child can expect is equally unpleasant and counterproductive. Most experienced pediatric anesthesiologists, aware of the spectrum and unpredictability of children's behavior, prudently plan for alternative approaches to physical examination and, most importantly, how to pleasantly and safely separate the child from the parent for the induction of anesthesia.

## Preoperative Preparation

Routine preoperative preparation of the anesthesia equipment is not noticeably different for the pediatric patient. It is important to have various-sized airway equipment so that there can be a quick selection of appropriate airways, masks, and endotracheal tubes. A pediatric circle system with humidification can be used for older children. The resistance to airflow created by the unidirectional valves is not an issue for patients receiving mechanical ventilation. Generally, pressure-limited ventilation is used to avoid inadvertent barotrauma. This mode of ventilation requires vigilance in that changes in chest wall or lung compliance will lead to instantaneous changes in tidal volumes.

Appropriate emergency medications should be available in doses consistent with the patient's weight (Tables 3.3 and 3.4). For critically ill patients and patients with marginal reserve, selected infusions should be prepared in anticipation of their use. Careful attention should be paid to dosages because the dose per kg may vary significantly from those used for adults.

Appropriate intravenous (IV) catheters are placed. While the use of air-trap filters in IV lines is commonly recommended, their practical application is limited in that they are easily clogged when blood products are administered, and in that air can be introduced downstream of the filter in many circumstances.

### Preoperative Fluid Therapy

Preoperative fluid and nil-per-os (NPO) orders are routinely geared to the age-specific needs of the pediatric patient. Generally speaking, the rule of 2, 4, 6, 8 can be used as the NPO interval for neonates, infants and children with congenital heart disease:

- 2 hours for clear liquids.
- 4 hours for breast milk.
- 6 hours for formula.
- 8 hours for solid food.

**Table 3.3** Commonly used vasoactive drugs and antidysrhythmics.

Drugs	Bolus	Infusion rate	Comments
<b>Adenosine</b> 6 mg in 2 ml (3 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	100 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> rapid IV bolus and flush (maximum 6 mg); second dose 200 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> (max. 12 mg)		Reduce by half for patients who have had a heart transplant. Give as close to IV site as much as possible, followed by a flush
<b>Atropine</b> 8 mg in 20 ml (0.4 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	20 µcg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV		Maximum dose 1 mg for child and 3 mg for adolescent
<b>Amiodarone</b> 150 mg in 3 ml (50 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	5 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV slowly over 15–30 min	5–15 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Adult max. bolus 300 mg for Vfibr and/or VTach
<b>Calcium gluconate</b> 100 mg ml <sup>-1</sup>	30–60 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV		
<b>Dopamine</b> 400 mg in 10 ml (40 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		3–10 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Epinephrine</b> 1 mg ml <sup>-1</sup>	1 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> to treat hypotension IV; 10 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV for cardiac arrest; repeat every 3–5 min as needed.	0.02–0.1 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Isoproterenol</b> 1 mg in 5 ml (0.2 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		0.01–0.1 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Tachycardia, palpitations, angina, pulmonary edema, hypertension, hypotension, ventricular arrhythmias, tachyarrhythmias
<b>Lidocaine</b> 20 mg in 2 ml (10 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	1 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV	20–50 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	
<b>Magnesium 50%</b> 1 in 2 ml (0.5 g ml <sup>-1</sup> )	25–50 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV		For Torsades de Pointes (max. 2 g)
<b>Norepinephrine</b> 4 mg in 4 ml (1 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		0.05 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Phenylephrine</b> 10 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> vial	0.5 µg kg <sup>-1</sup>	0.1 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Procainamide</b> 500 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> 100 mg ml <sup>-1</sup>	5–15 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> IV loading dose over 30–60 min	20–80 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	ECG monitoring required. Caution: hypotension and prolonged QT, widening of QRS
<b>Vasopressin</b> 20 units ml <sup>-1</sup>	In children 0.1 unit In adults 1 unit	6–30 mU kg <sup>-1</sup> h <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Ephedrine</b> 5 mg ml <sup>-1</sup>	0.05–0.1 mg kg <sup>-1</sup>		

**Table 3.4** Commonly used antihypertensive drugs and beta-blockers.

Drugs	Bolus	Infusion rate	Comments
<b>Esmolol</b> 100 mg in 10 ml (10 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	500 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> over 3–5 min	25–200 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Hydralazine</b> 20 mg ml <sup>-1</sup>	0.1 mg kg <sup>-1</sup>		
<b>Labetalol</b> 100 mg in 20 ml (5 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		0.25 mg kg <sup>-1</sup> h <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Milrinone</b> 10 mg in 10 ml (1 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )	50–100 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> loading dose	0.25–1 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	
<b>Nitroprusside</b> 50 mg in 2 ml (25 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		0.5 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect; observe for signs of cyanide toxicity
<b>Nitroglycerin</b> 50 mg in 10 ml (5 mg ml <sup>-1</sup> )		0.5 µg kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	Titrate to effect
<b>Phentolamine</b> 0.1 mg kg <sup>-1</sup>	0.1 mg kg <sup>-1</sup>		If weight above 50 kg, give 5 mg

Obviously, in the absence of IV hydration infants should remain NPO for the shortest possible interval. Because dehydration may have potentially deleterious effects on hemodynamics or on the degree of blood viscosity in the erythrocytotic patient, IV hydration with maintenance fluids before surgery should be considered for certain patients (i.e., cyanotic patients with hematocrit levels of 60% or higher).

Maintenance caloric requirements in the awake neonate and infant are 100 kcal kg<sup>-1</sup> per day or 4 kcal kg<sup>-1</sup> h<sup>-1</sup>. This caloric requirement can be met with glucose 25 g kg<sup>-1</sup> per day or 1 g kg<sup>-1</sup> h<sup>-1</sup>. From a practical point of view this glucose requirement can be met with 10% dextrose (100 mg ml<sup>-1</sup>) administered at maintenance volume replacement rate of 4 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> h<sup>-1</sup>. Dextrose (10%) administered at half this rate (2 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> h<sup>-1</sup>) is usually sufficient to meet the caloric requirements of an anesthetized infant while avoiding both the hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia that can be detrimental to neurologic outcome following deep hypothermic circulatory arrest

(DHCA). These dextrose infusions should be discontinued prior to the commencement of cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), which generally produces mild hyperglycemia. Some patients receive nutritional support as part of their medical stabilization prior to surgery. High-calorie total parenteral nutrition and intra-lipid therapy should be discontinued and replaced with a 10% dextrose infusion several hours prior to transport to the operating room. Continued administration of these high-calorie infusions makes intraoperative serum glucose management problematic. In these patients, higher dextrose infusion rates may be necessary pre-CPB to avoid rebound hypoglycemia.

### Preoperative Medications

Premedication prior to induction can be used to facilitate a number of objectives. In older children it can be used to alleviate anxiety prior to an IV or inhalation induction. In younger children, premedication can ease separation of the child from the parents.

In infants, judicious premedication alone, or in combination with inhaled NO, can greatly simplify the placement of an IV catheter. One must always consider how stressful it is for parents to see their child being taken to the operating room crying or upset.

Midazolam  $1 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  (20 mg as a maximum dose) orally in infants and younger children who have not had prior cardiac surgery is useful. In patients who have undergone previous operative procedures, midazolam alone may be insufficient. These patients are remarkably tolerant to midazolam as the result of either heightened anxiety or previous intraoperative and postoperative exposure to benzodiazepines. Oral ketamine ( $3\text{--}5 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  for infants,  $5\text{--}10 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  for children aged more than one year) can be given in conjunction with the midazolam to these patients. In circumstances in which the child will not take oral medication, the intramuscular route can be

used. Ketamine  $2\text{--}3 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  in combination with midazolam  $0.1 \text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  is appropriate. Some practitioners add glycopyrrolate ( $8\text{--}10 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) as an antisialagogue.

Premedication requires the individualization of dosage to avoid respiratory depression. Lower doses are best used for smaller children and children in congestive heart failure. Premedication should always be administered and assessed in the continuous presence of the anesthesiologist. Older children may opt for placement of an intravenous line (IV).

Digoxin, diuretics, and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors are generally withheld on the morning of surgery. ACE inhibitors can exacerbate hypotension occurring with anesthetic induction. Inotrope and prostaglandin infusions are continued into the operative period for critically ill neonates and children.

## 4

### Intraoperative Management

The intraoperative management of patients with congenital heart disease (CHD), including monitoring, invasive line placement (central and arterial), anesthesia induction and maintenance, is discussed in this chapter. The intraoperative management of each lesion will be discussed in the following chapters.

#### Intraoperative Monitoring

If the infant or child is awake or minimally sedated, the application of multiple monitors can prevent a smooth induction, even for an initially calm patient. Minimizing stimulation, including distracting discussion in the operating room, will avoid disturbing the child. Ideally, preinduction monitoring should include a non-invasive automated blood pressure cuff, electrocardiogram (ECG), pulse oximeter, and an end-tidal carbon dioxide monitor. In some cases, a pulse oximeter and an ECG may be all that is practical in the early stages of induction. Other monitors are then quickly added as induction progresses.

#### ECG and Blood Pressure

A five-lead ECG with leads II and V<sub>5</sub> displayed allows rhythm and ischemia monitoring. Intra-arterial access is obtained following induction; however, many neonates who have been medically stabilized in the intensive care unit (ICU) preoperatively will have an arterial catheter in place. Generally, percutaneous

arterial access can be accomplished in even the smallest neonates, particularly given the wide availability of ultrasound equipment to guide placement. Radial and femoral arteries are the sites most commonly utilized (Table 4.1). Posterior tibial and dorsalis pedis arteries may also be used, but these sites often do not reflect central aortic pressure during and immediately following hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) in neonates and infants. Brachial arteries are used in some institutions, but others feel strongly that this site is associated with a high risk of distal limb ischemia. Consideration is given to any previous or proposed surgical procedure which may compromise the reliability of ipsilateral upper-extremity intra-arterial pressure monitoring such as a Blalock–Taussig shunt, modified Blalock–Taussig shunt, subclavian artery patch repair of aortic coarctation, or sacrifice of an aberrant subclavian artery. Previous catheterization procedures – particularly those of an interventional nature – may result in femoral or iliac artery occlusion. On occasion, surgical access to a peripheral artery is necessary.

Umbilical artery catheters may be used intraoperatively but are generally replaced with a peripheral arterial catheter and removed postoperatively. Blood pressure monitoring consists of an intra-arterial catheter as well as upper- and lower-extremity non-invasive blood pressure cuffs. This arrangement allows the detection of residual coarctation or aortic arch/isthmus obstruction via a comparison of upper- and lower-extremity blood pressures.

**Table 4.1** Brief guideline for central and arterial line catheter sizes.

Age/size of child	Central line sizes	Arterial line sizes
Infants <5 kg	4 Fr – 5 cm	24-gauge for radial 2.5 Fr 2.5 cm for radial 2.5 Fr 5 cm for femoral
Infants/toddlers <10 kg	4 Fr – 5 cm 5 Fr – 5 cm	22- or 24-gauge for radial 2.5 Fr 2.5 cm for radial 2.5 Fr 5 cm for femoral
Preschool children <20–25 kg	5 Fr – 8 cm	20- or 22-gauge for radial 3 Fr 5 cm for arterial
Older children	7 Fr adult triple-lumen	20- or 22-gauge for radial

Fr: French size

### Systemic Oxygen Saturation

Oxygen saturation (SaO<sub>2</sub>) monitoring is accomplished with pulse oximeter probes on both an upper and a lower extremity; these can be placed in pre- and post-ductal locations if the physiology warrants.

### End-Tidal CO<sub>2</sub>

End-tidal carbon dioxide (ETCO<sub>2</sub>) monitoring is routinely employed, with the caveat that the difference between PaCO<sub>2</sub> and ETCO<sub>2</sub> will vary as physiologic dead space varies, and that in some circumstances the difference may be large (>10–15 torr). Any acute reduction in pulmonary blood flow or increase in Zone 1 of the lung (high mean airway pressure, decreased cardiac output, pulmonary embolus, increased intra-cardiac R-L shunting) will increase this gradient. In patients with single-ventricle physiology (most commonly those with HLHS or truncus arteriosus) with a high Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> prior to the initiation of CPB, the right pulmonary artery may be partially, or completely, occluded by the surgeon to mechanically limit pulmonary blood flow. This maneuver dramatically increases physiologic dead space and ETCO<sub>2</sub> will vastly underestimate PaCO<sub>2</sub>.

### Central Venous Pressure

Percutaneous central venous access offers numerous advantages and can be reliably

obtained, even in small neonates. The use of real-time ultrasound has helped to improve the successful placement rate to 90–95% in neonates. A brief guideline to central line sizes is provided in Table 4.1. The preoperative use of pulmonary artery catheters for pediatric patients is uncommon. In patients where postoperative assessment of pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) is important, the surgeon may choose to place a transthoracic pulmonary artery catheter.

Central venous access is not without risks, particularly in neonates and infants, and therefore the decision to place a percutaneous central venous catheter must involve consideration of the relative risks and benefits. In particular, the risk of internal jugular or superior vena cava (SVC) thrombosis must be considered, as this complication can be devastating in patients who are to be staged to a superior cavopulmonary connection. The relative risk and benefits of central venous cannulation are outlined in Table 4.2. The risk of thrombosis and infection can be reduced by maintaining a heparin infusion (2 units h<sup>-1</sup>) through the central line lumens postoperatively, and by removing the lines as soon as possible (typically one to two days).

In some institutions, neonates and infants are managed prior to CPB without central venous lines. Transthoracic intra-cardiac lines (RA, LA, PA) placed by the surgeon prior to the termination of CPB can be used for

**Table 4.2** Advantages and disadvantages of central venous pressure (CVP) monitoring in neonates and infants.

Advantages	Disadvantages
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Measuring CVP</li> <li>• Infusion site for vasoactive and inotropic agents</li> <li>• Infusion of blood products</li> <li>• Measurement of mixed venous oxygenation saturation to determine CO and Qp:Qs</li> <li>• CVP waveform helpful in rhythm analysis</li> <li>• Assessment of SVC drainage during CPB</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Pneumothorax</li> <li>• Hematoma with vascular or tracheal compression/displacement</li> <li>• Thoracic duct injury</li> <li>• Air embolus</li> <li>• Internal jugular or SVC thrombosis</li> <li>• Infection</li> </ul>

pressure monitoring, infusion of vasoactive and inotropic agents, and blood product and volume replacement. In older children, particularly those undergoing reoperation with adhesion of the aorta or of the RV to PA conduit to the sternum, large-bore central venous catheters are used in conjunction with a rapid infusion system. In these children, trans-thoracic intracardiac lines, though suitable for pressure monitoring and infusion of drugs, are insufficient for rapid volume replacement.

### Temperature

Rectal, esophageal or nasopharyngeal temperatures are monitored for all CPB cases. Tympanic membrane temperatures are rarely monitored in the current era. Rectal temperature is considered a peripheral temperature site and the equilibration of rectal temperature with tympanic and esophageal temperatures serves as the best index of homogeneous somatic cooling and rewarming. Rectal temperature lags behind esophageal and nasopharyngeal temperatures during both cooling and rewarming. Both, esophageal and nasopharyngeal temperatures are core temperature-monitoring sites, and temperature changes at these sites generally mirror brain temperature changes. Even so, esophageal and nasopharyngeal temperatures may either over- or underestimate brain temperature by as much as 5 °C during cooling and rewarming. This observation underscores the importance of providing an

adequately long period of core cooling prior to commencement of low-flow CPB or deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA). The likelihood that the target brain temperature (15–18 °C) will be reached is greatly increased if core cooling is utilized to bring nasopharyngeal or esophageal, and rectal temperatures to this target temperature.

### Near-Infra-Red Spectroscopy

Near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS) has emerged as a technology that enables continuous monitoring of regional tissue oxygenation. Similar to pulse oximetry, cerebral oximetry uses the fact that oxygenated and deoxygenated hemoglobin absorb near-infrared light to differing degrees. Because the skull is translucent to infra-red light, superficial brain tissue can be accessed using this technology. While initially intended to monitor cerebral oxygenation, NIRS probes placed on the abdominal wall, quadriceps muscle, or on the flank overlying the kidneys, are often used to monitor somatic oxygenation.

NIRS instruments available include the INVOS 5100 (Covidien, Boulder, CO, USA), the EQUANOX 7600 in three- and four- wavelength versions (Nonin Medical, Plymouth, MN, USA), the Masimo O3 (Masimo, Irvine, CA, USA) and the NIRO-200NX (Hamamatsu Photonics, Hamamatsu City, Japan). All use a light-emitting diode (near-infra-red light 700–1000 nm) and two light sensors placed 3 and 4 cm away from the light source. The diode



emits near-infra-red light, which passes through a superficial banana-shaped tissue volume to the detectors. The proximal detector detects light absorbed by extracranial tissues, and this is subtracted from the total signal, allowing the determination of intracranial absorption. The FORE-SIGHT instrument (CAS Medical Systems, Branford, CT, USA) uses a laser technology. The algorithms used to calculate the cerebral oxygen saturation value are based on the assumption that 25–30% of the intracranial blood is arterial and 70–75% is venous.

Some monitors display the numerical value  $rSO_2i$ , which is the ratio of oxyhemoglobin to total hemoglobin in the light path. The  $rSO_2i$  is reported as a percentage on a scale from 15% to 95%. Since this is not an absolute value for tissue oxygenation, clinicians tend to assess trends in  $rSO_2i$  relative to an established baseline value such as those obtained prior to induction or commencement of CPB. Newer devices will report an absolute value for cerebral oxygenation ( $StO_2$ ).

Many institutions utilize formal or informal algorithms incorporating the manipulation of  $FiO_2$ ,  $PaCO_2$ , acid–base status, CPB flow rate and perfusion pressure, temperature, and hemoglobin concentration to ‘optimize’ NIRS values. Because the normal range of cerebral and somatic NIRS values across the anatomically and physiologically heterogeneous CHD population has not been established, some judgment as to the value of NIRS and the trend in NIRS that requires intervention relies on judgment and experience with the specific monitor. In general, a decrease in a NIRS value of more than 20% requires investigation as to a remediable cause.

### Transcranial Doppler

The role of transcranial Doppler (TCD) monitoring in the care of pediatric cardiac surgical patients is evolving. TCD allows the measurement of cerebral blood flow velocity as well as the detection of cerebral microemboli, and is a technology ideally suited to use

in neonates and infants. The thin skull of neonates/infants, combined with a low-frequency ultrasonic transducer, allows the transmission of ultrasonic energy into brain tissue with little signal attenuation. Placement of a 2-MHz pulsed-wave (PW) Doppler probe over the temporal bone allows the ultrasonic signal to be aligned parallel to the proximal (M1) segment of the middle cerebral artery (MCA). The ability of PW Doppler to be gated to a specific depth allows the determination of blood flow velocity in the MCA just distal to the take-off of the anterior cerebral artery. This PW Doppler interrogation yields a velocity spectrum in the MCA for each cardiac cycle. Integration of the area under the velocity spectrum yields the time-velocity integral (TVI) in units of cm per cardiac cycle. The product of vessel TVI and vessel cross-sectional area (units of  $cm^2$ ) is flow (units of  $cm^3$  per cardiac cycle). If it is assumed that the MCA cross-sectional area remains constant, then there is a linear relationship between TVI and MCA blood flow. Normal TCD velocity values in various patient subgroups (cyanotic versus non-cyanotic, age, following DHCA), and under various CPB conditions (hematocrit, flow, pressure, acid–base status, temperature) have yet to be determined. The TCD determination of cerebral blood flow may prove useful as a continuous surveillance monitor for the detection of inadequate flow or of obstructed cerebral venous drainage during CPB.

Cerebral microemboli produce transient increases in reflected Doppler energy as compared to the background Doppler spectra. These high-intensity transient signals (HITS) can be counted by the TCD microprocessor and displaced as microembolic events per hour. Due to their higher reflective capacity, gaseous emboli can be detected over a greater distance than particulate emboli, and as a result have a higher sample velocity length (the product of emboli duration and velocity). At present, cerebral emboli detection with TCD requires the constant attention of a skilled observer because TCD

technology alone lacks sufficient sensitivity and specificity to distinguish between gaseous brain emboli, particulate brain emboli, and artifacts. TCD emboli detection is being investigated as a tool to refine post-CPB de-airing routines and to reduce the number of cannulation- and perfusion-related iatrogenic embolic events.

### Transesophageal Echocardiography (TEE)

Multiplane 7.5 MHz probes are available for intraoperative use in neonates and infants. These probes possess two-dimensional, continuous-wave Doppler, PW Doppler, color Doppler, and M-mode capabilities. Although intraoperative TEE can be performed safely in the smallest patients (2.5–3.5 kg), caution must be exercised as the presence of the probe in the esophagus may cause tracheal and bronchial compression with compromise of ventilation, inadvertent tracheal extubation, right main stem bronchial intubation, esophageal perforation, aortic arch compression with loss of distal perfusion, and compression of the left atrium resulting in left atrial hypertension or compromise of ventricular filling. In particular, ante- or retro-flexion of the probe must be performed with caution in small patients.

Intraoperative TEE has a major impact on post-CPB decision-making (such as return to CPB to repair residual lesions) in approximately 15% of cases when it is used non-selectively. TEE is particularly useful in cases involving the repair of a semilunar or atrioventricular valve, complex ventricular outflow tract reconstructions, and for the delineation of a complicated anatomy that cannot be completely delineated with transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) preoperatively. In the subset of patients undergoing valve repair and outflow tract reconstruction, TEE provides the best immediate assessment of adequacy of the operative procedure and, if necessary, directs its revision. TEE is not helpful in the assessment of residual arch obstruction following Stage 1 repairs as this

area is poorly visualized. While the detection of retained intra-cardiac air is certainly facilitated by the use of intraoperative TEE, it remains to be determined what role the technology will play in improving cardiac de-airing algorithms particularly in neonates and infants.

The role of TEE in the detection of residual ventricular septal defects (VSDs) following the repair of both simple and complex defects deserves some discussion. Residual defects <3 mm are detectable by TEE but generally do not require immediate reoperation as they are hemodynamically insignificant. The majority (75%) of these small defects are not present at the time of hospital discharge, as determined by TTE. Residual defects >3 mm detected by TEE require immediate reoperation only if they are associated with intraoperative hemodynamic (elevated LAP and/or PAP in the presence of good ventricular function) and oximetric ( $Q_p:Q_s > 1.5:1$  or RA to PA  $O_2$  saturation step-up with  $FiO_2 \leq 0.5$ ) evidence that they are significant.

### Airway Management

Fundamental to the anesthetic care of every patient with CHD is good airway management. The pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) is altered by changes in ventilatory pattern,  $PaO_2$ ,  $PaCO_2$ , and pH. Changes in PVR may dramatically affect shunt magnitude and direction, as well as cardiovascular function and stability. Therefore, prompt control of the airway and of ventilation will allow optimal pulmonary blood flow in each patient.

Children with a high pulmonary blood flow, particularly those with interstitial pulmonary edema, have surprisingly poor lung compliance necessitating higher than expected airway pressures. Care must be taken not to insufflate the stomach during mask ventilation. The relatively large occiput of infants and small children will cause the head to flex forward; the placement of a small roll under the neck or shoulders

will allow the head to remain in the neutral position. Placement of an oral airway in neonates and infants will greatly facilitate mask ventilation by pulling the large tongue away from the pharyngeal wall. In children aged <2–3 years, nasal endotracheal tubes are generally utilized as they provide better stability intraoperatively and postoperatively. This is particularly important in patients undergoing intraoperative TEE examinations. De-nitrogenation of the lungs is recommended prior to induction in all patients, including those in whom high inspired O<sub>2</sub> concentrations might temporarily reduce PVR and compromise systemic perfusion.

In patients with high venous pressure and cyanosis, such as those with a bidirectional Glenn shunt or Fontan, nasal endotracheal tubes must be passed cautiously as substantial nasal bleeding can be initiated. Cuffed endotracheal tubes with a leak at or near 20 cm H<sub>2</sub>O are generally used in children. The use of a cuffed endotracheal tube will allow higher airway pressures to be utilized as needed in patients where poor pulmonary compliance secondary to lung water, chest wall edema, or abdominal distention, are anticipated to compromise minute ventilation.

## Anesthesia Induction and Maintenance

### Induction of Anesthesia

A variety of induction techniques provide hemodynamic stability and improved arterial oxygen saturation in patients with cyanotic heart disease. Sevoflurane, halothane, isoflurane, and fentanyl/midazolam do not change Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> in children with atrial septal defects (ASDs) and VSDs when cautiously administered with 100% oxygen. Sevoflurane (1 MAC) and fentanyl/midazolam have no significant effect on myocardial function in patients with a single ventricle.

No one anesthetic induction technique is suitable for all patients with CHD. The patient's age, cardiopulmonary function, degree of cyanosis, and emotional state all play a role in the selection of an anesthetic technique. The intravenous administration of induction agents clearly affords the greatest flexibility in terms of drug selection and drug titration, and allows prompt control of the airway. Intravenous induction is the preferred technique in patients with severely impaired ventricular systolic function and in patients with systemic or suprasystemic pulmonary artery pressures.

### Mask Induction

Mask induction of anesthesia can be accomplished safely in the subset of children without severe cardiorespiratory compromise. However, reduced pulmonary blood flow in cyanotic patients will prolong the length of induction and the interval during which the airway is only partially controlled. In addition, in these patients even short intervals of airway obstruction or hypoventilation may result in hypoxemia. Sevoflurane is the inhalation induction agent of choice. Isoflurane, and particularly desflurane, are unsuitable agents as their pungency causes copious secretions, airway irritation, and laryngospasm.

### Intravenous Induction

Historically, high-dose synthetic opioids in combination with pancuronium (0.1 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) was used for intravenous induction in neonates and infants. The vagolytic and sympathomimetic effects of pancuronium counteract the vagotonic effect of synthetic opioids. In patients with a low aortic diastolic blood pressure and a high baseline heart rate, rocuronium (0.6 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>), vecuronium (0.1 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) and cis-atracurium (0.2 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) may be used without affecting the heart rate. In older children with mild to moderately depressed systolic function, lower doses of a synthetic opioid can be used in conjunction with etomidate (0.1–0.3 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>).

Ketamine ( $1\text{--}2\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) is a useful induction agent. For patients with both normal and elevated baseline PVR, ketamine causes minimal increases in PAP as long as the airway and ventilation are supported.

The myocardial depressive and vasodilatory effects of propofol and thiopental make them unsuitable as induction agents, except in patients with simple shunt lesions in whom cardiovascular function is preserved.

An alternative to intravenous induction in patients with difficult peripheral intravenous access is intramuscular induction with ketamine ( $3\text{--}5\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ), succinylcholine ( $2\text{--}5\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) and glycopyrrolate ( $8\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ). Glycopyrrolate is recommended to reduce the airway secretions associated with ketamine administration and to prevent the bradycardia that may accompany succinylcholine administration. The dose of succinylcholine per kilogram body weight is highest in infants. This technique provides prompt induction and immediate control of the airway with tracheal intubation. It is useful in circumstances where it is anticipated that initial intravenous access will have to be obtained via the internal or external jugular vein or the femoral vein. This technique is hampered by the fact that the short duration of action of succinylcholine limits the period of patient immobility. An alternative technique combines intramuscular ketamine ( $3\text{--}5\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ), glycopyrrolate ( $8\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) and rocuronium ( $1.0\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ). This technique is hampered by the slightly longer time interval until attainment of adequate intubating conditions and the longer duration of action of rocuronium as compared to succinylcholine.

### Maintenance of Anesthesia

Anesthesia is generally maintained using a synthetic opioid (fentanyl or sufentanil) - based technique. These opioids may be used in high doses (fentanyl  $25\text{--}100\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  or sufentanil  $2.5\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) or in low to

moderate doses (fentanyl  $5\text{--}25\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  or sufentanil  $0.5\text{--}2.5\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ). In either instance, these opioids are used in combination with an inhalation agent (generally isoflurane  $0.5\text{--}1.0\%$  or sevoflurane  $1.0\text{--}2.0\%$ ) or a benzodiazepine (generally midazolam  $0.05\text{--}0.1\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ). Caution must be exercised because the combination of opioids and benzodiazepines is synergistic in reducing systemic vascular resistance. The high-dose technique is particularly useful in neonates and infants. Patients in this age group presenting for surgery often have significant ventricular pressure and/or volume overload. In addition, many of these patients have tenuous subendocardial and systemic perfusion secondary to run-off into the pulmonary circulation and the associated low aortic diastolic blood pressure. Given the limited contractile reserve available in the immature myocardium, it is not surprising that the myocardial depressive and systemic vasodilatory effects of inhalation agents and the synergistic vasodilatory effects of benzodiazepines and opioids may be poorly tolerated in this patient group.

There are unique considerations for the maintenance of anesthesia during CPB. Light anesthesia, particularly during cooling and rewarming, may lead to an elevated SVR requiring a reduction in pump flow rate, which compromises both somatic perfusion and the efficiency of CPB cooling and rewarming. Subclinical shivering due to inadequate neuromuscular blockade and light anesthesia are avoidable causes of increased systemic oxygen consumption. Increased systemic oxygen consumption during CPB will manifest as a lower than acceptable venous saturation ( $<65\%$ ) at what should be an adequate CPB flow rate for the patient. Furthermore, for a membrane oxygenator operating at or near its maximum flow capacity, a low venous saturation may result in a lower than acceptable arterial saturation on CPB.

Lower doses of opioids in conjunction with an inhalation agent or benzodiazepine

are suitable for older patients with better cardiovascular reserve. In fact, carefully selected patients (aged >1 year, no pulmonary hypertension, benign past medical history) undergoing simple ASD or VSD closure are candidates for immediate tra-

cheal extubation in the operating room or in the ICU within 2–3 hours. Increasingly, in many institutions immediate or early tracheal extubation is being undertaken in selected infants and older children undergoing more complex repairs.

## 5

### Interpretation of Cardiac Catheterization Data

The ability to interpret cardiac catheterization data is essential to the cardiac anesthesiologist. Catheterization data provide information about the congenital lesions, the location and quantification of intracardiac shunts, assessment of systolic and diastolic function, the extent and distribution of coronary artery abnormalities, and the type and extent of valvular lesions. This information contributes to the preoperative evaluation and serves as a predictor of postoperative functional status.

#### Right-Heart Catheterization

A fluid-filled catheter capable of making high-fidelity pressure measurements in the right atrium, right ventricle and pulmonary artery is passed antegrade via a large vein under fluoroscopic guidance. In addition, the catheter may have the capability of making thermodilution cardiac output and mixed venous oxygen saturation measurements. Angiography is performed by recording several cardiac cycles on cine film while radiographic contrast material is injected into the right-heart chambers.

For infants and children, the femoral vein is the usual access site; however, right-heart catheterization via the umbilical vein may be possible in the first few days after birth. Internal jugular or subclavian access may also be used. Transhepatic access to the systemic venous circulation may be necessary

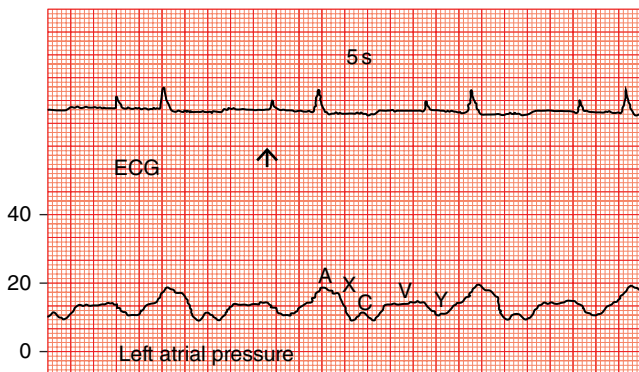
in circumstances where the presence of thrombus or stenosis precludes cannulation of femoral, subclavian, or jugular veins.

#### Right Atrial Pressure (RAP) Waveform

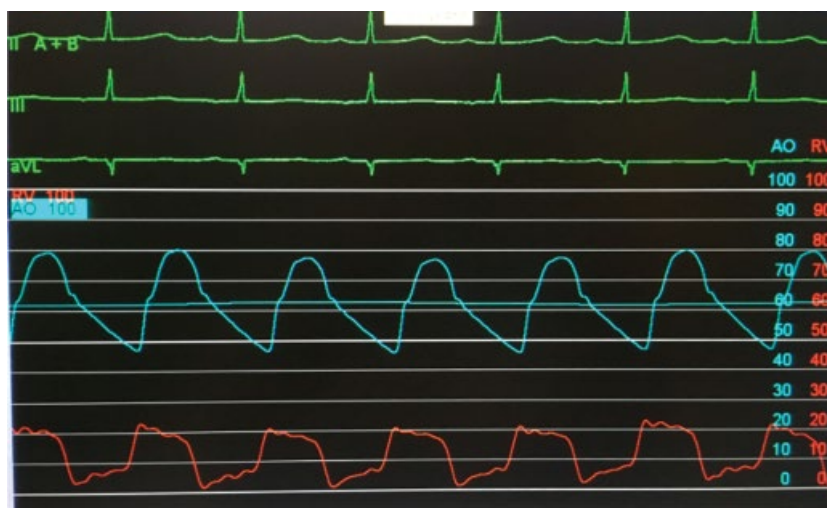
The normal mean right atrial pressure is in the range of 3 to 6 mmHg. The normal waveform consists of two to three positive waveforms (A, C, V) and three negative waveforms (X, X', Y) (Figure 5.1). The A wave reflects the atrial pressure increase seen during atrial systole, commonly called the atrial kick. The C wave reflects movement of the tricuspid or mitral valve annulus into the atrium during the isovolumic phase of ventricular systole and is often not well seen. The V wave represents passive atrial filling while the tricuspid and mitral valves are closed during ventricular systole. The X descent follows the A and C waves and reflects a combination of the downward displacement of the tricuspid and mitral with the onset of ventricular systole and atrial relaxation following atrial systole. The Y descent follows the V wave and reflects rapid atrial emptying after opening of the tricuspid and mitral valves.

#### Right Ventricular Pressure (RVP) Waveform

This consists of a rapid rise during isovolumic contraction, peak systolic pressure (typically at 20–30 mmHg), followed by a fall to a minimum diastolic pressure (Figure 5.2).



**Figure 5.1** Left atrial pressure. Arrow shows the pacer spike. The paper speed is 50 mm/s. Noted are the A, C, and V waves as well as the X and Y descent. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.



**Figure 5.2** Right ventricular pressure waveform (red) with aortic pressure waveform (blue).

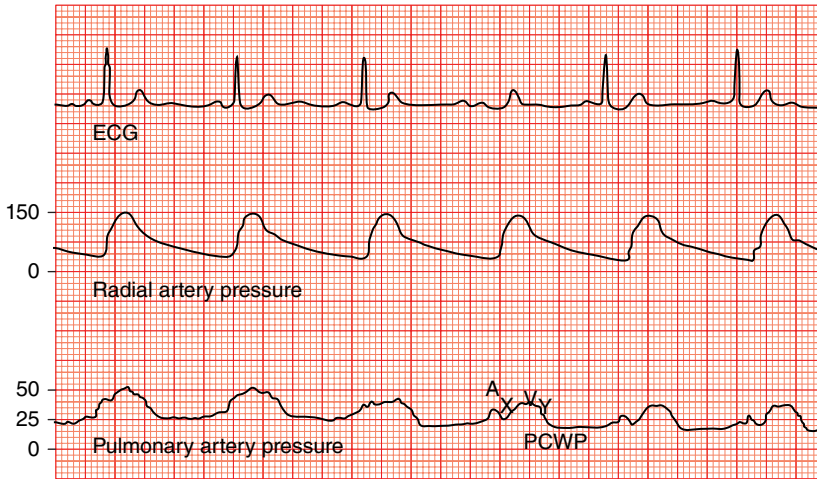
**Pulmonary Artery Pressure (PAP)  
Waveform**

The peak systolic pressure is equal or less than the RVP. The mean pressure is less than 20 mmHg (Figure 5.3).

**Left-Heart Catheterization**

A fluid-filled catheter capable of making high-fidelity systolic, diastolic, and mean pressure measurements and capable of allowing angiographic dye injection is used. The catheter may be passed retrograde via the axillary, brachial or femoral artery to the

aortic root under fluoroscopic guidance, where pressures are recorded. In infants and children the femoral artery is the preferred route. The umbilical artery is small and its course is tortuous; therefore, is not useful except for pressure monitoring and angiography of the descending aorta. Left-heart catheterization can be performed antegrade via the right atrium in patients in whom the atrial septum can be crossed via a patent foramen ovale (PFO) or an atrial septal defect (ASD). This is a common approach in infants and children. In patients in whom the retrograde approach to the left ventricle is undesirable, and where an atrial or ventricular level communication does not exist, the



**Figure 5.3** Pulmonary arterial pressure waveform.

atrial septum can be intentionally punctured to gain access to the left atrium using a Brockenbrough needle.

Pressures in the aorta, left ventricle and left atrium are recorded. Aortography may be performed by recording on cine film the injection of radiographic contrast material into the aortic root. This will allow the detection of aortic regurgitation, congenital aortic arch abnormalities such as coarctation or aortic arch interruption, and acquired aortic lesions such as aortic dissection. Left atrial and ventricular angiography allows the detection of congenital anomalies.

#### Left Atrial Pressure (LAP) Waveform

The LAP is higher than the RAP and is in the range of 6 to 9 mmHg.

#### Left Ventricular Pressure (LVP) Waveform

The normal LVP varies with age and is affected by structural and hemodynamic factors. The peak systolic pressure is equal to the ascending aortic pressure. There is a progressive increase in left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP) with age (Figure 5.4).

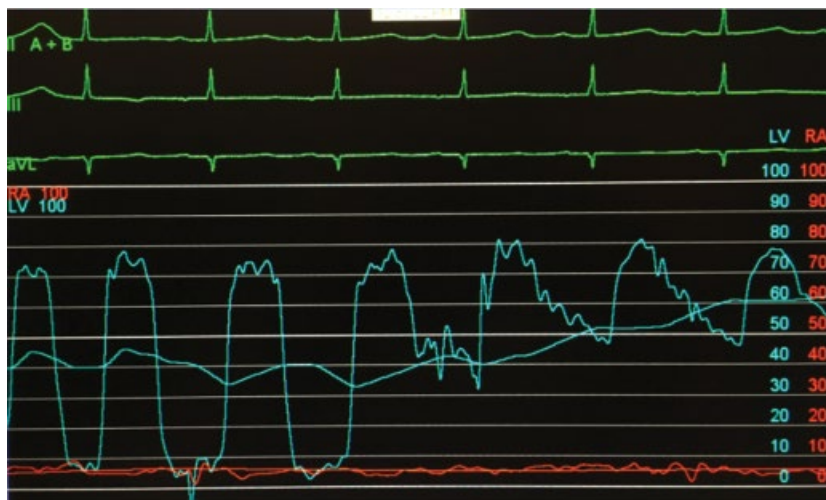
#### Aortic Pressure Waveform

The aortic pressure waveform includes a systolic rise, peak, and a dicrotic notch on the downstroke. A widened pulse pressure may result from aortic regurgitation, patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), surgical shunts, or aortopulmonary collaterals. An example of aortic pressure and left ventricular pressure waveform in a patient with aortic stenosis is shown in Figure 5.5.

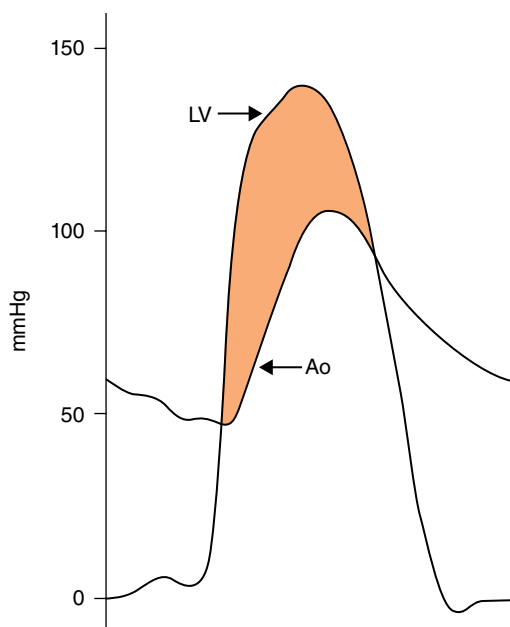
#### Left Ventriculography

Left ventriculography is performed by recording several cardiac cycles on cine film as radiographic contrast material is injected into the mid left ventricle. The left ventriculogram allows detection of mitral regurgitation as well as a comparison of both regional and global wall motion in systole and diastole. The left ventriculogram also allows calculation of the left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) and left ventricular end-systolic volume (LVESV) with computer assisted planimetry. Angiographic stroke volume (SV) is then defined as  $[LVEDV - LVESV]$ . The ejection fraction (EF) is defined as  $[LVEDV - LVESV] / LVEDV$ , which is  $[SV / LVEDV]$ .





**Figure 5.4** Left ventricular pressure waveform (blue) then moving to aortic pressure waveform.

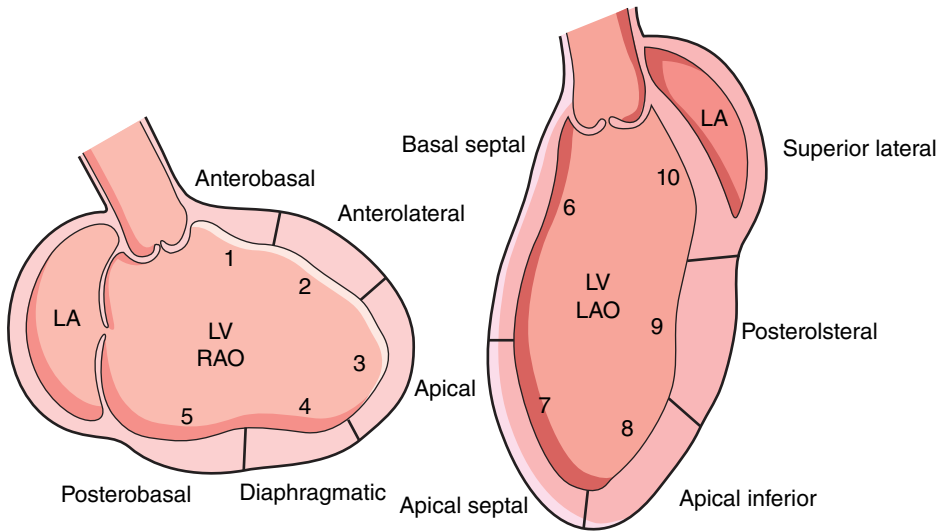


**Figure 5.5** Left ventricular and aortic waveform in a patient with aortic stenosis. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

The qualitative analysis of regional wall motion by left ventriculography is another index of systolic function. Left ventriculography is performed in the 30° right anterior oblique

(RAO) projection and 60° left anterior oblique (LAO) projection. The ventricle is divided into segments (Figure 5.6) and a visual analysis of regional wall motion is made by comparison of end-diastolic and end-systolic cineangiograms. Five segments are generally analyzed in the RAO projection: anterobasal, anterolateral, apical, diaphragmatic (inferior), and posterobasal. Five segments also may be analyzed in the LAO projection: basal septal, apical septal, apical inferior, posterolateral, and superior lateral. These areas are graded qualitatively for wall motion. Normal areas exhibit a concentric inward movement in systole, while hypokinetic areas exhibit a reduced concentric inward motion in systole. Akinetic areas exhibit no motion with systole. Dyskinetic areas exhibit a paradoxical outward bulging with systole. Aneurysmal areas exhibit characteristic dilation with either hypokinesis or akinesis.

Areas of hypokinesis generally are composed of ischemic myocardium, whereas akinetic areas are composed of infarcted or hibernating myocardium. Improvements in wall motion occur in hypokinetic and akinetic areas when ischemic tissue has been salvaged by revascularization or by pharmacologic interventions to improve perfusion. The presence of collaterals, the absence of surface ECG Q waves, and the presence of an



**Figure 5.6** Left ventricular segments. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

associated proximal coronary stenosis less than 90% improve the likelihood that medical or surgical intervention will improve the wall motion abnormalities. Dyskinetic and aneurysmal areas, respectively, represent regions with little or no viable myocardium and rarely show improvement in wall motion with surgical or pharmacologic intervention.

Regional wall motion abnormalities are a more sensitive indicator of coronary blood flow insufficiency than is a reduction in a global ejection-phase index of systolic function such as ejection fraction (EF). This is because global systolic function can be maintained in the presence of regional dyssynergy by compensatory increases in wall shortening in areas of normal wall motion, as long as large areas of myocardium are not dyssynergic.

## Coronary Angiography

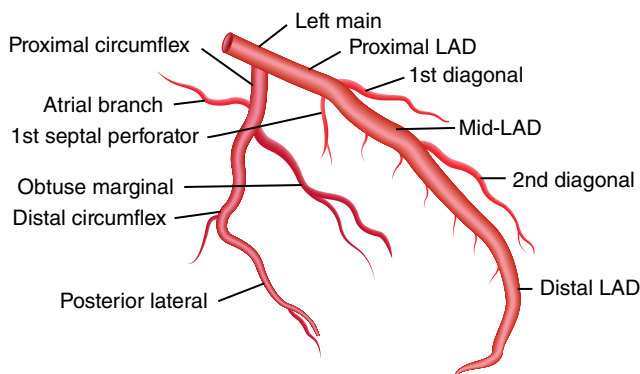
Cine recordings of radiographic contrast material selectively injected into the coronary ostia are made. Special catheters are used for the selective catheterization of the ostia and are advanced under fluoroscopic

guidance via the same artery used for left-heart catheterization.

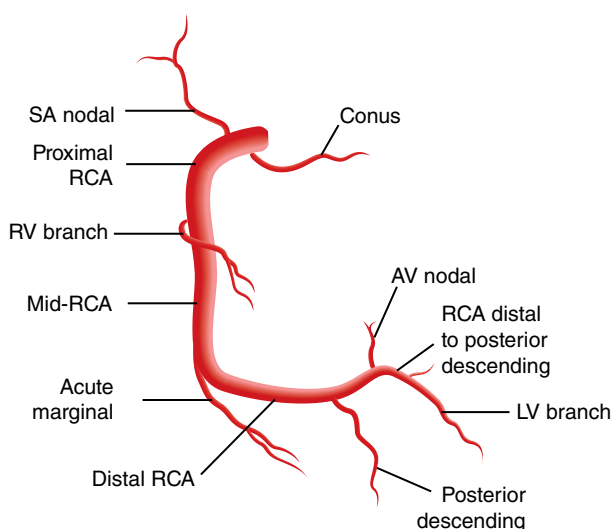
Coronary angiography delineates the normal and pathologic features of the coronary circulation. Normally, angiography is performed in the 60° LAO projection and the 30° RAO projection, with caudal or cranial angulated views if necessary.

## Coronary Anatomy

Determination of the areas of myocardium at risk with a particular stenotic or vasospastic lesion requires knowledge of the regional blood supply pattern. The right and left coronary anatomy is illustrated in Figures 5.7 and 5.8. Most patients (85%) have a right dominant system of coronary circulation, where the right coronary artery extends to the crux cordis in the atrioventricular groove and gives rise to the posterior descending branch, left atrial branch, atrioventricular (AV) nodal branch, and one or more posterior left ventricular branches. In a left dominant system (8%), these branches are supplied by the left circumflex artery and the right coronary artery supplies only the right atria and ventricle. In 7% of patients, the system is balanced, with the right



**Figure 5.7** Left coronary anatomy. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.



**Figure 5.8** Right coronary anatomy. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

coronary artery supplying the posterior descending, left atria, and AV nodal branches, whereas the left circumflex artery supplies the posterior left ventricular branches.

There is variation in the blood supply to various regions of myocardium, but some generalizations can be made (Table 5.1).

### Anatomic Coronary Lesions

Coronary stenotic lesions are quantitated visually from moving cine angiograms in several projections. Stenotic areas of the artery are compared with adjacent normal areas, and the percentage reduction in lumen diameter caused by the stenosis is quantified. Thus, a 90% lesion refers to a stenosis that causes a 90% reduction in lumen diameter. It is generally acknowledged that resting coronary blood

flow does not decrease until there is an 85% reduction in lumen diameter. This corresponds to a greater than 90% reduction in lumen cross-sectional area. By contrast, a 50% diameter reduction corresponds to a 75% reduction in cross-sectional area. Maximal coronary flow in response to a stimulus for vasodilation is blunted when there is a 30–45% reduction in lumen diameter and is absent when the lumen diameter is reduced by 90%. Inter-observer variability exists in the grading of stenotic lesions. In addition, coronary angiography typically underestimates the severity of stenotic lesions and may not accurately predict the physiologic significance of a particular lesion.

More recently, intravascular ultrasound (IVUS) has been used to assess the function, morphology, and flow of the coronary circulation.

**Table 5.1** Summary of coronary arterial supply.

- 1) Anterobasal – LMCA; proximal LAD; 1st diagonal.
- 2) Anterolateral – LMCA; proximal or mid-LAD; 1st diagonal.
- 3) Apical – LMCA; proximal, mid, or distal LAD; 2nd diagonal.
- 4) Diaphragmatic (inferior) – proximal, mid, or distal RCA; PDA.
- 5) Posterobasal – proximal, mid, or distal RCA; PDA.
- 6) Basal septal – LMCA; proximal or mid-LAD, 1st septal.
- 7) Apical septal – LMCA; proximal, mid, or distal LAD.
- 8) Apical inferior – proximal, mid, or distal RCA.
- 9) Posterolateral – LMCA; proximal or distal CIRC marginals.
- 10) Superior lateral – LMCA; proximal CIRC marginals.

LMCA = left main coronary artery; LAD = left anterior descending artery; CIRC = circumflex artery; RCA = right coronary artery; PDA = posterior descending artery.

### Coronary Collaterals

An extensive network of coronary collaterals is normally present at birth, but these collaterals are not demonstrable by angiography in normal hearts due to their small diameter. It is only when the collateral channels enlarge secondary to regional myocardial oxygen deprivation that they are visible angiographically. The development of collateral pathways in patients with comparable degrees of coronary insufficiency is variable in both extent and time course. The presence of collaterals has been identified as a determinant of reversible wall motion abnormalities. Left ventricular function in the region of an occluded coronary artery is better maintained in the presence of collaterals than in their absence.

### Cardiac Output Determination

Two complementary methods are used to determine cardiac output, namely the thermodilution technique and the Fick determination. Both methods measure forward cardiac outputs. Forward cardiac output and total cardiac output are equal only if there are no regurgitant lesions or shunt fractions.

#### Thermodilution Technique

Thermodilution cardiac output is a modification of the indicator dilution method, in

which flow is determined from the following relationship:

$$\frac{\text{Known amount of indicator injected}}{\text{Measured concentration of indicator}} \times \text{time}$$

In the thermodilution method, cold water is the indicator.

#### Fick Determination

The Fick determination is based on the relationship:

$$O_2 \text{ consumption (ml } O_2 / \text{min)} / (\text{arterial} - \text{venous } O_2 \text{ content}) (\% \text{ml } O_2 / \text{dl}) \times 10$$

The factor 10 allows conversion of dl to liters since the Hb is measured in g dl<sup>-1</sup>.

An estimate of VO<sub>2</sub> is commonly obtained from LaFarge tables that relate VO<sub>2</sub> to body surface area or to heart rate and age. Arterial-venous O<sub>2</sub> content difference (A-VO<sub>2</sub> difference) is calculated from the difference between the arterial and mixed venous O<sub>2</sub> contents where:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Content} = & (O_2 \text{ saturation of arterial or mixed} \\ & \text{venous blood} \times \text{Hb concentration} \times (1.38)) \\ & + (0.003 \times PO_2 \text{ of arterial or mixed venous} \\ & \text{blood}) \end{aligned}$$

This method measures systemic blood flow; which equals forward left heart output. It also can be used to measure pulmonary blood flow or forward right heart output, when  $O_2$  consumption is divided by pulmonary arterial content subtracted from pulmonary venous

content. The method is most accurate at low cardiac outputs, where the arterial to venous  $O_2$  difference is great. It is accurate in the presence of intracardiac shunts when the mixed venous  $O_2$  content and pulmonary venous  $O_2$  content are properly determined.

$$\text{Indexed systemic flow (} Q_s \text{)} = \frac{O_2 \text{ consumption}}{\text{systemic arterial } O_2 \text{ content} - \text{mixed venous } O_2 \text{ content}}$$

$$\text{Indexed pulmonary flow (} Q_p \text{)} = \frac{O_2 \text{ consumption}}{\text{pulmonary venous } O_2 \text{ content} - \text{pulmonary arterial } O_2 \text{ content}}$$

It is customary to obtain blood samples for baseline calculations while the patient is receiving either room air or minimal supplemental oxygen. This is done both to simplify the calculations and to avoid complicating measurement of PVR in patients who have PVR that may be responsive to supplemental oxygen. The use of room air or minimal supplemental oxygen allows the dissolved oxygen component ( $0.003 \times PO_2$  of arterial or mixed venous blood) of the content equation to be ignored. In pediatric patients,  $O_2$  consumption is normally indexed to body surface area (BSA) measured in square meters ( $m^2$ ).

## Evaluation of Cardiac Shunts

A comprehensive discussion of the physiology of shunts is provided in Chapter 2. Oxygen saturation measurements in multiple cardiac chambers and the great vessels are used to localize and quantify cardiac shunts. Additionally, angiography during cardiac catheterization may be used to locate cardiac shunts.

### Shunt Location

Shunt localization is usually accomplished using a combination of angiography and measurement of  $O_2$  saturations in the pulmonary veins, superior vena cava (SVC)

and inferior vena cava (IVC), right-heart chambers, left-heart chambers, aorta, and pulmonary artery. Oxygen saturation sampling is used to detect  $O_2$  saturation step-up in the right heart in the case of a left-to-right (L-R) shunt or  $O_2$  saturation step-down in the left heart in the case of a right-to-left (R-L) shunt. A step-up is defined as an increase in the  $O_2$  saturation of blood in a particular location that exceeds the normal variability in that location, whereas a step-down is a greater-than-expected decrease in saturation for a given location.

### Shunt Quantification

Shunt quantification is based on comparison of systemic and pulmonary blood flows. Systemic ( $Q_s$ ) and pulmonary ( $Q_p$ ) blood flows are calculated by the Fick method previously described:

$$Q_p = VO_2 / (PV O_2 \text{ content} - PA O_2 \text{ content})$$

where PA  $O_2$  content is the pulmonary arterial  $O_2$  content and PV  $O_2$  content is the pulmonary venous  $O_2$  content. Sampling blood from the left atrium (when the pulmonary veins return to the left atrium) will provide a weighted average of the four pulmonary veins'  $O_2$  content. If a R-L atrial level shunt is present this sampling site will not provide an accurate assessment of pulmonary vein  $O_2$  content. Each of the four pulmonary veins can

be entered and sampled separately. When this is done, segmental areas of intra-pulmonary shunt and V/Q mismatch can be detected. The PaO<sub>2</sub> or saturation of pulmonary venous blood from a lung segment with V/Q mismatch will improve with an increase in FiO<sub>2</sub>, while there will be little or no improvement if an intra-pulmonary shunt is present.

$$Q_S = VO_2 / (SAO_2 \text{ content} - MVO_2 \text{ content})$$

where SA O<sub>2</sub> is the systemic arterial O<sub>2</sub> content and MV O<sub>2</sub> content is the mixed venous O<sub>2</sub> content. True mixed venous blood is a mixture of desaturated blood from the IVC, SVC and coronary sinus. In a normal heart, a mixed sample of venous blood from these three locations can be obtained from the pulmonary artery. In the presence of an intracardiac L-R shunt, PAO<sub>2</sub> saturation will overestimate true MV O<sub>2</sub> saturation because the pulmonary arterial blood will be a mixture of mixed venous blood and oxygenated pulmonary venous blood from the left heart. In this setting, true mixed venous saturation must be determined from samples taken from the SVC and IVC. If the very low-O<sub>2</sub> content, low-volume blood from the coronary sinus is ignored, then a weighted average of O<sub>2</sub> content of SVC and IVC blood can be used to determine MV O<sub>2</sub> content:

$$(3/4 \times \text{superior vena cava } O_2 \text{ content}) \\ + (1/4 \times \text{inferior vena cava } O_2 \text{ content})$$

This formula may be used to determine MV O<sub>2</sub> in the catheterization laboratory when L-R shunts exist. More commonly, and particularly in children, the SVC O<sub>2</sub> content

is commonly used as a surrogate for MV O<sub>2</sub> content. SVC blood has a lower O<sub>2</sub> content than IVC blood and a higher content than coronary sinus blood; thus, SVC blood provides a very close estimate of the mixture of the three samples. In addition, streaming of blood of varying O<sub>2</sub> contents in the IVC hampers accurate IVC O<sub>2</sub> content sampling.

After Q<sub>p</sub> and Q<sub>s</sub> have been calculated, shunts can be quantified. For an isolated L-R shunt the magnitude of the shunt is [Q<sub>p</sub> - Q<sub>s</sub>]. For an isolated R-L shunt the magnitude of the shunt is [Q<sub>s</sub> - Q<sub>p</sub>]. The ratio Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> is also useful, and can be calculated from content data alone because the VO<sub>2</sub> terms cancel out:

$$Q_P:Q_S = \frac{(SAO_2 \text{ content} - MVO_2 \text{ content})}{(PVO_2 \text{ content} - PAO_2 \text{ content})}$$

Furthermore, if the blood is sampled while the patient is receiving either room air or a low FiO<sub>2</sub>, the dissolved O<sub>2</sub> portion of the content equation (PO<sub>2</sub> × 0.003) can be ignored. The hemoglobin × 1.34 term cancels out and the equation can be simplified to one using just saturation data from the four sites, as listed above.

A Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> > 2.0 constitutes a large shunt, whereas a Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> < 1.25–1.5 constitutes a small shunt. Obviously, a Q<sub>p</sub>:Q<sub>s</sub> < 1.0 indicates a net R-L shunt.

For bidirectional shunts, it is necessary to calculate effective pulmonary blood flow (Q<sub>peff</sub>) and effective systemic blood flow (Q<sub>seff</sub>). Q<sub>peff</sub> is the quantity of desaturated systemic venous blood that traverses the pulmonary capillaries to be oxygenated. Q<sub>seff</sub> is the quantity of oxygenated pulmonary venous blood that traverses the systemic capillaries

#### Some important points to remember:

- 1) If no shunts, mixed venous is equal to the PA saturation.
- 2) If intracardiac shunt, mixed venous saturation is the SVC saturation.
- 3) In the absence of lung disease, pulmonary venous saturation is 97–100%.
- 4) The dissolved O<sub>2</sub> is neglected at room air with FiO<sub>2</sub> = 21% but should be taken into account when supplemental O<sub>2</sub> is provided.

to deliver oxygen to tissue.  $Q_{Seff}$  and  $Q_{Peff}$  are always equal.

$$Q_{Seff} = Q_{Peff} = VO_2 / (PVO_2 \text{ content} - MVO_2 \text{ content})$$

The L-R shunt is defined as  $[Q_P - Q_{Peff}]$ , while the R-L shunt is defined as  $[Q_S - Q_{Seff}]$ . The net shunt is the difference between these two calculated shunts.

## Saturation Data

The oxygen saturation (%) of blood in the low SVC, the main pulmonary artery, and the aorta are obtained to screen for intracardiac shunts. If an intracardiac shunt is suspected, multiple samples from locations in the great vessels and cardiac chambers are necessary to localize the shunt and determine its magnitude and direction.

## Resistances

Systemic and pulmonary vascular resistances are made using hemodynamic, cardiac output and cardiac index data. Data and formulas are summarized in Table 5.2:

- Systemic vascular resistance (SVR).
- Systemic vascular resistance index (SVRI).
- Pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR)

- Pulmonary vascular resistance index (PVRI)
- Transpulmonary gradient (TPG).
- Mean arterial blood pressure (MAP).
- Mean pulmonary artery pressure (mPAP).
- Pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP).
- Central venous pressure (CVP).
- Cardiac output (CO).
- Cardiac index (CI).

## Assessment of Pulmonary Vascular Anatomy

For infants and children with CHD, special procedures may be necessary to assess the pulmonary vasculature and the extent of pulmonary vascular disease (e.g., oxygen and NO administration).

### Evaluation of the Pulmonary Vasculature

Marked increases or decreases in pulmonary blood flow routinely occur in patients with CHD. Pulmonary vascular disease may occur as a consequence of increased pulmonary blood flow in patients with CHD and will influence the type of corrective or palliative operative procedure performed.

### Pulmonary Artery Wedge Angiogram

The pulmonary artery wedge angiogram is recorded on cine film while radiocontrast material is injected into a catheter that is in

**Table 5.2** Formulas and normal values.

$SVR = \frac{(MAP - CVP) 80}{CO}$	700–1600 dynes·s·cm <sup>-5</sup> 9–20 Wood units
$PVR = \frac{(mPAP - PAOP) 80}{CO}$	20–130 dynes·s·cm <sup>-5</sup> 0.25–1.6 Wood units
$TPG = mPAP - PAOP$	5–10 mmHg
$CI = CO/BSA$	2.5–4 L·min <sup>-1</sup> ·m <sup>-2</sup>
$SVRI = \frac{(MAP - CVP) 80}{CI}$	2000–2400 dynes·s·cm <sup>-5</sup> ·m <sup>2</sup> 25–30 Wood units
$PVRI = \frac{(mPAP - PAOP) 80}{CI}$	250–280 dynes·s·cm <sup>-5</sup> ·m <sup>2</sup> 3.1–9.5 Wood units

the pulmonary artery wedge position. Generally, the artery to the posterior basal segment of the right lower lobe is studied. As obstructive pulmonary vascular disease progresses, the wedge angiogram demonstrates progressive increases in the diameter and tortuosity of the pulmonary arteries, a diminution in the blush seen as capillaries fill, and the abrupt termination of dilated, tortuous arteries with a marked decrease in the number of supernumerary arterial branches.

The pulmonary capillary wedge pressure is similar to a left atrial pressure waveform, with a time delay unless there is pulmonary vein stenosis or collaterals.

### Pulmonary Vein Wedge Angiogram

In many congenital cardiac lesions with reduced pulmonary blood flow, the pulmonary vasculature may be well visualized with the injection of contrast into collaterals that arise off the aorta. For patients with pulmonary atresia, pulmonary blood flow is markedly diminished and the pulmonary arteries may not be well visualized with contrast injections into collateral vessels. In this instance, the pulmonary vein wedge angiogram may be used to delineate the pulmonary vasculature. Retrograde filling of the parenchymal pulmonary vessels can be seen on cine recordings when contrast is hand-injected into a catheter wedged in a pulmonary vein. When antegrade pulmonary blood flow is severely diminished, retrograde filling of even the main pulmonary artery can occur.

### Assessment of Pulmonary Arterial Hypertension

Pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) is defined as a PA systolic pressure  $>35$  mmHg or mean PAP  $>25$  mmHg at rest, or a mean PAP  $>30$  mmHg with exercise. While the causes of PAH are myriad, the etiology of pulmonary hypertension related to cardiac disease can be divided into four general categories:

- *Left atrial hypertension:* An elevated LAP can result from a number of causes (mitral

valve disease, LV diastolic dysfunction, LV systolic dysfunction, loss of AV synchrony). This is the by far the most common cause of elevated PAP in adults with acquired heart disease.

- *Pulmonary venous obstruction:* This may be the result of obstruction to pulmonary vein entry into the venous circulation, such as total anomalous pulmonary venous return, cor triatriatum, or the result of obstructive disease inherent to the veins themselves.
- *Pulmonary vascular disease:* Chronic exposure of the pulmonary arterial bed to high flow and/or pressure leads to extensive structural changes. There is progressive muscularization of peripheral arteries, medial hypertrophy of muscular arteries, and a gradually reduced arterial number due to occlusive neointimal formation with fibrosis. Chronic left atrial hypertension can lead to the development of a similar process through the chronic elevation of PAP.
- *High  $Q_p:Q_s$ :* When a large non-restrictive intracardiac communication exists, particularly at the ventricular level, the PAP may be systemic or just sub-systemic. The question that must be answered is whether the elevated PAP is due to high flow into a low-resistance pulmonary bed (high  $Q_p:Q_s$ , normal PVR, large L-R shunt) or normal/low flow into a high-resistance pulmonary bed (normal/low  $Q_p:Q_s$ , high PVR, pulmonary vascular disease).

Determination of the etiology of pulmonary hypertension requires measurement of the PAP, LAP, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP), transpulmonary gradient (TPG), and pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR), as summarized in Table 5.3.

Nitric oxide (NO) and oxygen trials are conducted after baseline cardiac index,  $Q_p:Q_s$  and PVR determinations are obtained. After 100% oxygen administration, all measurements are repeated and PVR is calculated. After 10 min of 100% oxygen and NO (20–80 ppm), all measurements are repeated and PVR is recalculated.



**Table 5.3** Characteristic findings in pulmonary hypertension from different etiologies.

Etiology	Pressures	LAP	TPG	PVR	Q <sub>p</sub>
LA hypertension	PAD ≈ PAOP ≈ LAP (acute)	↑↑	↔	↔	↔
	PAD > PAOP ≈ LAP (chronic)	↑↑	↑	↑	↔
Pulmonary vein obstruction	PAD ≈ PAOP » LAP	↔	↑↑	↑↑	↔ sl ↓
Pulmonary vascular disease	PAD » PAOP ≈ LAP	↔	↑↑	↑↑	↔ sl ↓
Large L-R shunt	PAD ≈ PAOP ≈ LAP	sl ↑	↔ sl ↑	↔ sl ↑	↑↑

LAP = left atrial pressure; PAD = pulmonary artery diastolic pressure; TPG = transpulmonary gradient (mPAP-LAP; normal 5–10 mmHg); PVR = pulmonary vascular resistance (TPG/cardiac output; normal <2 Wood units); PAOP = pulmonary artery occlusion pressure; Q<sub>p</sub> = pulmonary blood flow.

## Assessment of Valve Lesions

The impressive technological advances in Doppler echocardiography and magnetic resonance cardiac imaging now allow the non-invasive assessment of valvular pathology. Evaluation via cardiac catheterization, however, provides important information. Analysis of the pressure data from right- and left-heart catheterization, combined with an analysis of ventriculography and aortography data, will delineate the extent and nature of valvular lesions.

### Stenotic Lesions

The analysis of stenotic valve lesions is based on obtaining a valve orifice area from flow and pressure-gradient data. Valve areas commonly are normalized for body surface area in infants and children.

### Regurgitant Lesions

The quantification of regurgitant lesions with catheterization techniques is more difficult and less accurate than for stenotic lesions. Two

approaches are available: one method is qualitative and the other is quantitative. Qualitative analysis is based on assessing the amount of contrast material regurgitated into the left atrium during left ventriculography for mitral regurgitation, or into the left ventricle during aortography for aortic regurgitation. The degree of regurgitation is graded from mild to severe (1+ to 4+). In mild aortic regurgitation, a small amount of contrast enters the left ventricle during diastole but clears with each systole. In mild mitral regurgitation, a small amount of contrast enters the left atrium during systole but clears in diastole. In severe aortic regurgitation, the left ventricle is filled with contrast after the first diastole and it remains opacified for several systoles. In severe mitral regurgitation, the left atrium is filled with contrast after the first systole and becomes progressively opacified with each beat. In addition, contrast is seen refluxing into the pulmonary veins. Similar qualitative analysis is used to grade tricuspid regurgitation.

The quantitative method of assessing regurgitation is based on calculation of the regurgitant fraction:

$$\text{Regurgitant fraction} = \frac{\text{regurgitant stroke volume}}{\text{total stroke volume}}$$

$$\text{Regurgitant stroke volume} = \text{total stroke volume} - \text{forward stroke volume}$$

## 6

### Cardiopulmonary Bypass

#### The Cardiopulmonary Bypass Circuit

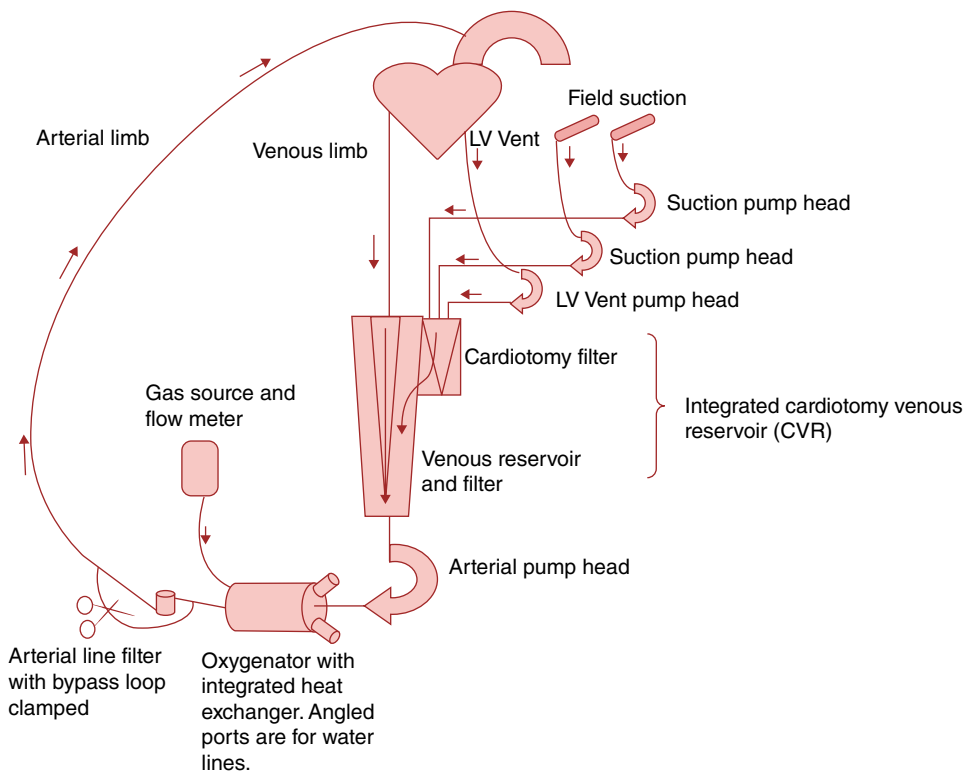
The cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) circuit (Figure 6.1) is intended to isolate the cardiopulmonary system so that optimal surgical exposure can be obtained for operations on the heart and great vessels. In order for this isolation to be effective, the CPB circuit must:

- Perform the functions of the intact cardiopulmonary system.
- Be capable of adding oxygen and removing carbon dioxide from blood.
- Provide adequate perfusion of all organs with this blood.
- Fulfill all of these requirements without causing permanent damage to the cardiopulmonary system, the blood, or any of the patient's end organs.

During CPB, blood is drained from the patient via one or more venous cannulas, primarily by gravity. The effectiveness of gravity drainage is dependent on venous cannula size, the relative height of the patient above the venous reservoir, the length and diameters of the venous tubing, the maintenance of a continuous fluid column, the characteristics of the venous reservoir, and patient volume status. Venous cannulas are typically placed in the superior vena cava (SVC) and inferior vena cava (IVC) (two cannulas) or in the right atrium (single cannula).

An active process (vacuum-assisted venous drainage or kinetic-assisted venous drainage) can be used but this is associated with red cell lysis and an increased risk of air entrainment in the venous line.

Despite adequate venous drainage on CPB, blood return to the left ventricle may occur from a number of sources. Thebesian vein blood (veins in the walls of all four heart chambers that drain the myocardium) drain to the left atrium/ventricle. This flow will cease when the aortic cross-clamp terminates coronary blood flow. Bronchial vein blood drains to the pulmonary veins. The bronchial circulation may be very large in patients with cyanotic heart disease. With extra-cardiac left-to-right (L-R) shunts a large portion of pulmonary blood flow may be supplied by anatomic (patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), aortopulmonary collaterals) or surgical systemic-to-pulmonary artery communications (Blalock–Taussig, Waterston, Potts, central shunts). If these communications are not ligated or controlled before the institution of CPB, the blood return to the pulmonary artery – and subsequently to the left atrium and left ventricle – may be very large. Flow return to the left ventricle may also result from an incompetent aortic valve. In this instance, retrograde filling of the left ventricle with blood from the aortic cannula will occur until the aortic cross-clamp is applied. To prevent left ventricular distention, which causes myocardial damage and compromises



**Figure 6.1** A simplified diagram of the CPB circuit. Reproduced from Matte, G.S. (2015) *Perfusion for Congenital Heart Surgery*. Wiley Blackwell.

subendocardial blood flow, the left atrium must be opened or a left ventricular vent catheter placed. The junction of the left atrium and the right superior pulmonary vein provides relatively easy access to the left atrium. The vent can then be easily placed across the mitral valve into the left ventricle.

Cardiotomy suction is used to scavenge blood from the surgical field and improve exposure. Most systems utilize a roller head pump to provide the suction. This is an important source of blood conservation because such blood is returned to the venous reservoir after passing through a screen filter to remove particulate contaminants from the surgical field. In order to avoid clotting the CPB circuit the patient must be heparinized prior to using cardiotomy suction during cannula placement, prior to the initiation of CPB.

From the venous reservoir, blood is transported via a pump to the oxygenator and heat-exchanger unit. The pump can either be a roller pump or a centrifugal pump. Most pediatric perfusion practices use roller heads for their arterial pumps, since in modern heart-lung machines such pumps have the advantage of very low primes, as it is common for the arterial head to be positioned close to the venous reservoir and oxygenator. The oxygenator serves as the artificial lung and allows gas exchange (oxygen, carbon dioxide) via either a solid or microporous membrane. Only membrane oxygenators, which can be classified as either microporous or true membrane, are currently used in the care of pediatric cardiac surgical patients. Integral to the oxygenator is the heat-exchanger, which employs countercurrent heat-exchange to cool or warm the blood.

The temperature-adjusted, oxygenated blood is then transported through an arterial line filter, the role of which is to reduce the delivery of microemboli into the arterial circulation. From the arterial filter, the blood reaches the patient's circulation via the arterial cannula. The arterial cannula is typically placed into the ascending aortic arch, but alternative placement sites include the femoral artery and the subclavian artery.

## Differences Between Adult and Pediatric CPB

Differences between adult and pediatric CPB systems are outlined in Table 6.1. It is not uncommon for a pediatric perfusion group to utilize three to five different-sized oxygenators, along with four or five different custom tubing packs. This array of equipment is required in order to appropriately size major circuit components to a wide range of patients.

### CPB Flow Rates

Once proper arterial inflow and venous drainage are assured, the CPB parameters are adjusted to achieve target flow rates, temperature, and acid–base status.

Flow rates during CPB are chosen to provide systemic oxygen delivery. Systemic hypothermia is routinely employed during pediatric CPB, with many operations performed at temperatures of 28–32 °C. Systemic hypothermia reduces whole-body and cerebral oxygen consumption by 5–6% for each 1 °C decrease in body temperature. Flows of 1.8 to 2.5 l min<sup>-1</sup> m<sup>-2</sup> are commonly used for infants, children, and adults during mild to moderate systemic hypothermia. Due to age-related differences in the relationship of weight to body surface area, when these flow rates are expressed in ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> they will be substantially higher in the neonate than in the adult (Table 6.2). Low-flow CPB in neonates and infants is conducted at temperatures of 18–22 °C and flow rates of 50–75 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> or approximately 0.7–1.2 l min m<sup>-2</sup> (Table 6.3).

### Anesthesia During CPB

The perfusionist is provided with doses of sedatives, analgesics, and muscle relaxants by the anesthesiologist. Some centers deliver volatile anesthetics to the patient during CPB via fresh gas flow to the membrane oxygenator.

**Table 6.1** Differences between adult and pediatric cardiopulmonary bypass systems.

	Adult	Pediatric
Estimated blood volume	65 ml kg <sup>-1</sup>	<10 kg: 85 ml kg <sup>-1</sup>
Dilution effects on blood volume	25–33%	Up to 100–200%
Addition of whole blood or packed red blood cells to prime	Rarely	Usually
Oxygen consumption	2–3 ml kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	6–8 ml kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>
Full CPB flow at 37 °C	50–75 ml kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>	150–200 ml kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup>
Minimum CPB temperature	Rarely <30 °C	Commonly <30 °C
Use of total circulatory arrest or regional cerebral perfusion	Rare	Common for some defects; HLHS, Hypoplastic aortic arch
Perfusion pressure	50–80 mmHg	30–50 mmHg
Acid–base management	Primarily alpha-stat	Primarily pH-stat ≤30 °C
Measured PaCO <sub>2</sub> differences	30–45 mmHg	20–80 mmHg

**Table 6.2** Full cardiopulmonary bypass flow rates relative to patient weight.

Patient weight (kg)	Full CPB flow rates (ml kg <sup>-1</sup> min <sup>-1</sup> )
<3	150–200
3–10	125–175
10–15	120–150
15–30	100–120
30–50	75–100
>50	50–75

### Monitoring During CPB

Standard monitors during CPB include:

- Standard ASA monitors (ECG, temperature, blood pressure, pulse oximetry, capnography):
  - 12-lead ECG
  - Two temperature sites: nasopharyngeal/oropharyngeal or esophageal AND rectal.
- Arterial line (mean arterial pressure; MAP).
- Central venous pressure (CVP); an increase in CVP should raise concern for venous cannula malposition.
- Urine output.

Near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS) and/or transcranial Doppler are utilized by many, but not all, centers.

### Hemodilution

Due to their small blood volumes and the need for the CPB circuit to be primed, pediatric patients potentially experience more hemodilution than their adult counterparts. For example, a 70-kg adult has an estimated blood volume of 5250 ml (70 kg × 75 ml kg<sup>-1</sup>). Using a CPB circuit with a 1-liter prime volume results in 20% hemodilution.

In contrast, a 3-kg neonate has an estimated blood volume of 255 ml (85 kg × 3 ml kg<sup>-1</sup>). Consequently, using a CPB circuit with a

**Table 6.3** Cardiopulmonary bypass flow rate relative to patient temperature. Reproduced from Matte, G.S., DiNardo, J.A. (2015) Pediatric cardiopulmonary bypass, in: *Cardiopulmonary Bypass and Mechanical Support. Principles and Practice*, 4th edition. Wolters Kluwer.

Patient temperature (°C)	Flow rate (l min <sup>-1</sup> m <sup>-2</sup> )
≥35	≥2.5
32	2.2
30	2.0
28	1.8
26	1.6
24	1.4
22	1.2
20	1.0
18	0.7

400-ml prime volume will result in 160% hemodilution.

### Priming Solution

For adults, a crystalloid prime is typically used. In pediatrics, in order to mitigate the anemia caused by hemodilution, red cell mass in the form of packed red blood cells or whole blood is often added to the prime solution. Priming volumes vary significantly and depend on the specific equipment (oxygenator, tubing, etc.) used.

To determine the patient's hematocrit (Hct) on CPB when a clear prime (crystalloid/colloid) is employed, the following equation is utilized:

Hct on bypass

$$= \frac{[\text{Estimated blood volume}(\text{EBV} \times \text{Hct}) / (\text{EBV} + \text{circuit prime volume})]}{}$$

If the calculated Hct is deemed acceptable, the prime can be buffered and the patient can be placed on bypass with a clear prime. If the calculated Hct is deemed too low, red cell mass may be added to the circuit to reach the

desired dilutional Hct once the patient is placed on bypass. The amount of blood required in the circuit prime can be calculated using the equation:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Prime blood needed [ml]} \\ = (\text{EBV} + \text{circuit volume}) \\ \times (\text{desired Hct on bypass}) - (\text{EBV} \times \text{Hct}) / \\ (\text{Hct of prime blood}) \end{aligned}$$

where EBV = patient weight [kg]  $\times$  blood volume [ml kg<sup>-1</sup>];  
circuit prime volume = calculated from components used; and  
Hct of prime blood = whole blood (35–40%) versus packed red blood cells (PRBC) (65–75%).

Institutional practice varies with regard to the blood used for priming the circuit [red blood cell (RBC) versus whole-blood units] and the lowest acceptable calculated Hct. While most centers use RBC units when required to prime the bypass circuit, the use of whole blood or RBCs reconstituted with plasma prevents the dilution of clotting factors at the onset of bypass when the prime volume is large relative to the patient's blood volume.

## Ultrafiltration

### Conventional Ultrafiltration

Conventional ultrafiltration (CUF) is utilized in nearly all pediatric bypass cases, and involves the removal of excess volume in the venous reservoir *during* bypass. An excess venous reservoir volume can be caused by the crystalloid component of cardioplegia, valve testing solution, or simply when a patient has an elevated circulating blood volume. CUF removes excess volume by passing blood, either passively or actively with a roller head, through the ultrafilter.

### Modified Ultrafiltration

Modified ultrafiltration (MUF) allows ultrafiltration to continue *after* weaning from CPB. MUF allows the bypass circuit to

remain primed while both the patient's blood volume and the bypass circuit volumes are hemoconcentrated. MUF may be performed utilizing either an arteriovenous or venoarterial system. In the arteriovenous system, inflow to the ultrafilter is drawn with a roller pump directly from the aortic cannula. Outflow from the ultrafilter is directed to the right atrium. In the venoarterial system, the right atrium provides inflow to the ultrafilter with the aid of a roller pump, while outflow from the ultrafilter is returned to the aortic cannula. With both systems, blood volume is kept constant as ultrafiltrate is lost by replacing the ultrafiltrate with blood from the CPB circuit. The end-point for termination of MUF following CPB varies from institution to institution, and may depend on a set time interval (10–15 min), a set target Hct (40%), or a set volume removed (750 ml m<sup>-2</sup>).

The major advantage of MUF over CUF is that, by allowing hemoconcentration to continue after CPB, MUF normally allows for a greater degree of hemoconcentration than can be obtained with CUF alone, especially in small children. Some institutions utilize both CUF and MUF, as the techniques are not mutually exclusive. However, when a standardized volume of fluid is removed there is no difference in clinical outcome or hemoconcentration between CUF and MUF.

## Blood Gas Management

Electrochemical neutrality is important in the preservation of cellular protein and enzyme structure and maintenance of the constant transcellular hydrogen (H<sup>+</sup>) ion gradient necessary for many cellular processes. In addition, optimal functioning of the imidazole buffering system is dependent on maintenance of cellular electrochemical neutrality. The imidazole group of the amino acid histidine is present on many blood and cellular proteins, and is an important buffer. Electrochemical neutrality occurs when

there are equal concentrations of hydroxyl ( $\text{OH}^-$ ) and hydrogen ( $\text{H}^+$ ) ions. As the temperature decreases, the dissociation constant ( $pK$ ) of aqueous systems such as those found in cells increases. This process results in a reduction in the concentrations of  $\text{OH}^-$  and  $\text{H}^+$  ions as the temperature decreases. If there are equal concentrations of  $\text{OH}^-$  and  $\text{H}^+$ , then electrochemical neutrality will be maintained. Thus, in order for electrochemical neutrality to be maintained the pH must increase as temperature decreases. In an electrochemically neutral cell at 37 °C, the measured pH will be 7.40, whereas in an electrochemically neutral cell at 20 °C the measured pH will be 7.80. Changes in cellular pH during hypothermia are mediated through  $\text{PaCO}_2$  homeostasis. As the temperature decreases, the solubility of  $\text{CO}_2$  in blood increases. If the total  $\text{CO}_2$  content of blood is held constant, this increase in  $\text{CO}_2$  solubility will result in a reduction in  $\text{PaCO}_2$ . For example, if the total  $\text{CO}_2$  content is held constant and the measured  $\text{PaCO}_2$  at 37 °C is 40 mmHg, then the measured  $\text{PaCO}_2$  at 20 °C will be 16 mmHg. This situation causes the pH to increase as the temperature decreases for electrochemical neutrality to be maintained.

pH-stat and alpha-stat regulation are acid–base management methods that directly influence blood flow to the brain and other organs. Although pH-stat and alpha-stat acid–base management are frequently mentioned in association with temperature-corrected and temperature-uncorrected blood gases, it must be emphasized that these are entirely different concepts. The method of blood gas interpretation (corrected or uncorrected) does not dictate the method of acid–base management (pH-stat or alpha-stat). It is important to point out that at a patient temperature of 37 °C there is no difference between pH-stat and alpha-stat management. However, the difference between the two strategies becomes more marked as patient temperature progressively falls below 37 °C, and is not clinically relevant until the patient temperature is below 30 °C.

When a blood gas sample is drawn from a hypothermic patient and sent to the blood gas laboratory, the sample is warmed to 37 °C before measurement. The values obtained at 37 °C are termed ‘temperature-uncorrected’ values, and they are converted to temperature-corrected values using a nomogram. The nomogram accounts for temperature-induced changes in pH,  $\text{O}_2$  solubility and  $\text{CO}_2$  solubility in a closed-blood system. When pH and  $\text{PaCO}_2$  are measured at 37 °C and then corrected to a lower temperature, the electrochemically neutral pH will be higher and the corrected  $\text{PaCO}_2$  will be lower than the normal values at 37 °C. Therefore, electrochemical neutrality is maintained by keeping pH alkalotic in temperature-corrected blood gases and normal in temperature-uncorrected gases; this is known as alpha-stat regulation. For practical purposes it is easier to use uncorrected values and keep pH and  $\text{PaCO}_2$  in the range considered normal at 37 °C. Cerebral blood flow and oxygen consumption are appropriately coupled when alpha-stat regulation is used. An exception to this is that during deep hypothermia there is loss of cerebral autoregulation such that cerebral blood flow varies directly with arterial pressure.

pH-stat regulation refers to maintaining pH and  $\text{PaCO}_2$  at normal values when temperature-corrected gases are used, and at acidotic values when temperature-uncorrected gases are used. pH stat is achieved by adding  $\text{CO}_2$  to the ventilating gas during hypothermic CPB to increase  $\text{PaCO}_2$  and decrease the pH. In contrast to alpha-stat regulation, in which the total  $\text{CO}_2$  content is kept constant, pH stat regulation results in an increase in total  $\text{CO}_2$  content. The cerebral vasculature maintains vasomotor responses to varying  $\text{PaCO}_2$  during hypothermic CPB. This response is maintained during moderate hypothermia and is attenuated during deep hypothermia, despite the fact that deep hypothermia induces a loss of cerebral blood flow autoregulation. When pH-stat regulation is used with moderate hypothermic CPB, there is an uncoupling of cerebral blood

flow and metabolism and a loss of cerebral autoregulation. As a result, cerebral blood flow varies linearly with arterial blood pressure and cerebral hyperperfusion exists, with the cerebral blood flow far in excess of that dictated by the cerebral metabolic rate. This hyperperfusion state is the result of reduced cerebral oxygen consumption induced by hypothermia and cerebral vasodilation resulting from a disproportionately high PaCO<sub>2</sub> for the degree of hypothermia present. Additionally, pH-stat management suppresses the cerebral metabolic rate, which may prolong oxygen availability during periods of circulatory arrest. pH-stat also decreases pulmonary blood flow which can exist even during total bypass due to collateral circulations. This has obvious benefits for preventing the steal of blood from the cerebral circulation, while at the same time improving heat transfer for the cooling and warming phases of bypass. The potential danger of the hyperperfused state is an increased delivery of microemboli into the cerebral circulation.

Alpha-stat management is common in adult cardiac surgery, where patients are more likely to have a particulate embolic load due to calcified plaques in arterial vessels. Children are less likely than adults to suffer from particulate embolic events on bypass due to vascular disease. However, they are more likely to require hypothermic bypass and to suffer from inadequate brain cooling due to collateral circulations stealing from the effective cerebral blood flow. For this reason, pH-stat blood gas management is frequently utilized during pediatric CPB.

### Deep Hypothermic Circulatory Arrest and Regional Perfusion Techniques

Deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA) involves cooling a patient on bypass to <20 °C, ceasing the arterial pump flow, and

exsanguinating the patient's blood volume into the bypass venous reservoir. This technique provides an ideal visualization for the surgeon during complex aortic arch repairs, the correction of anomalous pulmonary venous drainage, or when the patient's size and/or anatomy would prevent adequate venous drainage during surgical repair.

Regional cerebral perfusion (RCP) is a bypass strategy that can often limit, or even eliminate, the need for DHCA. RCP refers to the technique of diverting pump arterial blood flow, commonly through the innominate artery, solely to the right subclavian and right common carotid arteries. The flow rate, acid-base strategy and temperature utilized during RCP vary among institutions. RCP flow rates of 20–40 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> are commonly utilized and have been shown to adequately perfuse the cerebral circulation, although some centers utilize higher flow rates (60–70 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>). Transcranial Doppler and NIRS are used by some centers to fine-tune flow rates.

### Anticoagulation

Unfractionated heparin (UFH) in conjunction with activated clotting time (ACT) measurement is used to achieve and monitor anticoagulation during CPB. Most institutions use an age- or weight-based protocol to administer the initial pre-CPB dose of UFH, and add heparin to the CPB prime as the prime volume would be expected to decrease plasma heparin levels with the initiation of CPB. Typical doses are 300–400 units kg<sup>-1</sup> to achieve an ACT >480 s pre-CPB. The CPB circuit commonly contains 3 units of heparin for each milliliter of prime volume. Some centers utilize the Hepcon heparin management system (HMS), wherein the heparin dose-response test (HDR) determines a patient's ACT responsiveness to heparin. An estimate of the patient's blood volume can then be used to determine the heparin dose necessary to reach the target heparin concentration (THC) that will result in an ACT ≥480 s.



Heparin should always be given via a central venous line from which blood return can be easily demonstrated or, as is common in infants/neonates, directly into the heart (usually the right atrium) by the surgeon. This is necessary to ensure that the heparin dose has reached the central circulation. An ACT can be drawn within minutes of heparin administration as peak arterial ACT prolongation occurs within 30s and peak venous ACT prolongation within 60s.

### Protamine Reversal

Protamine is normally given after bypass once stable hemodynamics are exhibited and the surgeon is satisfied with the repair. Protamine should not be administered until the likelihood that having to reinstitute CPB is minimal. After protamine neutralization of heparin begins, cardiotomy suction should not be used. This practice ensures the usefulness of the bypass circuit should the reinstitution of bypass be required. The venous cannulae are usually removed before protamine administration. The arterial cannula is left in place until adequate hemostasis is achieved and circuit blood is no longer required.

There are several approaches to the neutralization of heparin with protamine, all

with reportedly good clinical results. Some centers use a ratio of 1.0–1.3 mg of protamine for each 100 units of heparin determined to exist at the termination of CPB. This ratio is based on the *in vitro* protamine-to-heparin neutralization ratio of 1.3:1.0. The amount of heparin present is determined by obtaining an ACT when CPB terminates, and using a reverse extrapolation of the patient's heparin dose–response curve to correlate ACT and heparin level. Some centers simply administer a fixed dose of protamine based on the patient's weight (3–4 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) regardless of the heparin dose administered, whereas others administer 1.0–1.3 mg of protamine for each 100 units of heparin administered. Some centers use heparin assays and then calculate the protamine dose based on the patient's blood volume and a protamine-to-heparin neutralization ratio ranging from 1:1 to 1.3:1.

Regardless of the method utilized, the ACT should be checked after administration of the selected protamine dose, bearing in mind that, particularly in infants, ACT prolongation may be due to factors other than the presence of residual UFH, such as thrombocytopenia and the dilution of coagulation factors.

## 7

## Mechanical Support Devices

### Extracorporeal Membrane Oxygenation (ECMO)

Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), also known as extracorporeal life support (ECLS), is a technology used to provide cardiopulmonary (veno-arterial ECMO) or pulmonary (veno-venous ECMO) support for patients with cardiac, pulmonary, and cardiopulmonary failure that is unresponsive to medical therapies. Barlett *et al.*, in 1972, were the first to report ECMO support in a child with congenital heart disease (CHD). Subsequently, ECMO use has expanded to neonates, children, and adults.

#### Indications

In pediatrics, ECMO is used to provide support in a wide variety of circumstances, including respiratory failure, circulatory failure (viral myocarditis, cardiomyopathy, post-cardiac surgery [post-cardiotomy support]), persistent pulmonary hypertension of the newborn, meconium aspiration syndrome, respiratory distress syndrome, group B streptococcal sepsis, asphyxia, congenital diaphragmatic hernia, and sepsis. ECMO is also used to assist cardiopulmonary resuscitation (E-CPR), and as a bridge to organ transplantation and ventricular assist device placement.

#### Relative Contraindications

Relative contraindications to ECMO include end-stage primary disease, severe neurologic injury, intracranial bleeding, prematurity

(<34th week), uncontrolled visceral bleeding, low birth weight (<2 kg), and patient or family wishes.

### Modes of ECMO Support

A typical ECMO circuit consists of a mechanical pump (centrifugal or roller), a membrane oxygenator, venous and arterial cannulas, a reservoir, heat exchanger, tubing, and pressure, flow and oxygen saturation monitors (Figure 7.1).

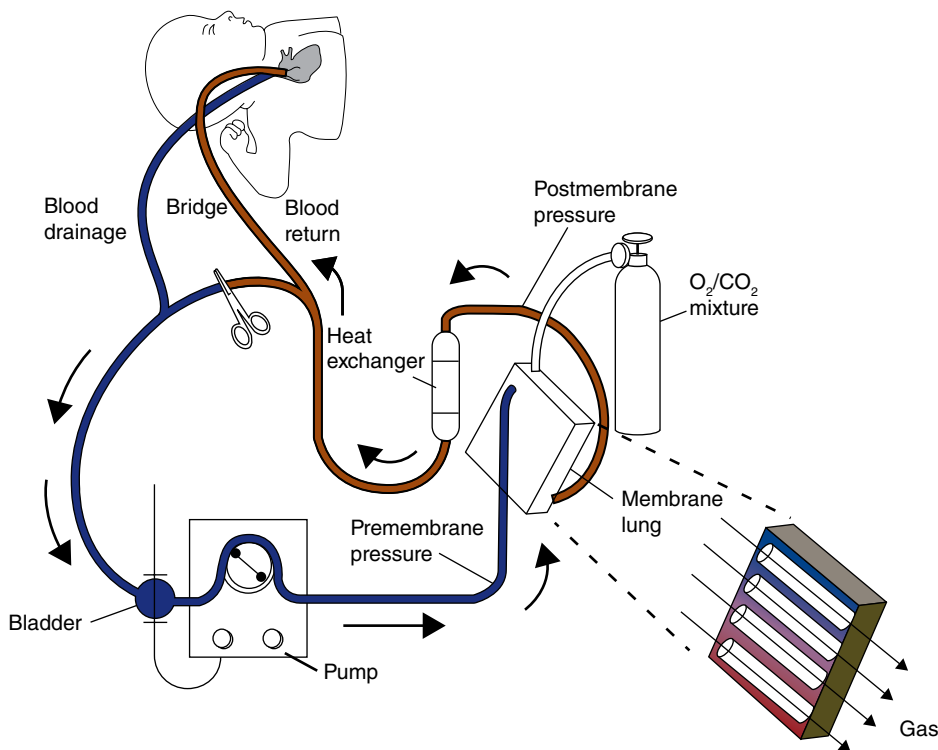
Two distinct modes of ECMO are available, namely veno-arterial (VA) and veno-venous (VV).

#### Veno-Venous (VV)-ECMO

- Access is generally percutaneous via the internal jugular vein.
- Used for prolonged pulmonary support in patients with respiratory failure with preserved cardiac function.
- Blood is drained from the venous circulation and returned to the venous circulation after exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the membrane.

#### Veno-Arterial (VA)-ECMO

- Access can be percutaneous via the internal jugular vein and the carotid artery, but generally direct surgical exposure of the vessels is required. In the post-cardiotomy setting access is commonly obtained directly via the right atrium and aorta.



**Figure 7.1** ECMO circuit in veno-arterial support mode. Reproduced from Thiagarajan, R.R. (2015) Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation in infants and children, in: *Cardiopulmonary Bypass and Mechanical Support. Principles and Practice*, 4th edition (eds G.P. Gravlee, R.F. Davis, J. W. Hammond, B.D. Kussman), Wolters Kluwer.

- Used for prolonged cardiac and pulmonary support.
- Blood is drained from the venous circulation and pumped into the arterial circulation after heat exchange and exchange of oxygen and carbon dioxide.
- Cardiac output is a combination of the native cardiac ejection and ECMO flow. Consequently, an appropriate quantity of alveolar ventilation is necessary when venous blood transits the pulmonary circulation. When all venous drainage is captured, VA-ECMO closely resembles total CPB. When only a portion of venous return is captured, VA-ECMO resembles partial CPB.

The operational differences between VA-ECMO and VV-ECMO are summarized in

Table 7.1, while functional differences in the physiologic parameters monitored are summarized in Table 7.2.

### Device and Patient Complications

Device and patient complications are not uncommon occurrences with ECMO.

Device complications include:

- Embolism
- Tube rupture
- Oxygenator failure
- Circuit thrombosis.

Patient complications include:

- Thromboembolism.
- Bleeding
- Hemolysis

**Table 7.1** Operational differences between VA-ECMO and VV-ECMO.

	VA-ECMO	VV-ECMO
Support type	Cardiac and pulmonary	Pulmonary
Cardiac support	Partial or complete	None
Cannulation sites	Venous and arterial	Venous

**Table 7.2** Functional differences in physiologic parameters between VA-ECMO and VV-ECMO.

	VA-ECMO	VV-ECMO
Cardiac preload	Decreased	Unchanged
Cardiac afterload	Increased	Unchanged
Pulmonary blood flow	Decreased	Unchanged
Pulse pressure	May decrease	Unchanged
Coronary blood flow	LV ejection or ECMO flow	LV ejection

- Infection
- Cerebral infarction and hemorrhage.

#### Common Terminology Used During an ECMO Run

- Adjust pump speed → changes flow rate.
- Adjust sweep (fresh gas flow) → changes PaCO<sub>2</sub>.
- Adjust FiO<sub>2</sub> → changes PaO<sub>2</sub>.
- Adjust temperature.

#### Intraoperative Considerations for Patients on ECMO

- 1) Particular attention during transport to and from the operating room is a must to avoid decannulation and kinking of the cannula.
- 2) Expect significant blood loss due to heparinization, thrombocytopenia and coagulation factor deficits (ensure adequate vascular access and blood product availability).
- 3) Volatile agents have altered kinetics in patients on ECMO, and reduced alveolar ventilation may reduce volatile anesthetic delivery.
- 4) Hemodynamics of patients on VV-ECMO are dependent on their native heart function; it may become necessary to support the circulation with vasopressors and/or inotropes.
- 5) Patients on VA-ECMO have often been on vasopressors/inotropes before ECMO institution, and are likely to continue the infusions during the ECMO run.
- 6) In contrast to CPB, ECMO shows a pulsatile flow on the arterial line from cardiac ejection. In VA-ECMO, the pulsations become flatter as more blood is routed through the ECMO circuit. Flow may become non-pulsatile if the left ventricle is completely bypassed.
- 7) During VV-ECMO and VA-ECMO runs, the lungs should be ventilated at low settings to minimize barotrauma and volutrauma (RR <10, I:E ratio 2:1, FiO<sub>2</sub> <40%, PIP <25, PEEP 5–15).
- 8) Patients are anticoagulated with intravenous unfractionated heparin. Monitoring of anticoagulation is institution-dependent, with either heparin assay (anti-FXa assay) or activated clotting time (ACT) utilized.

When dosing medications, consideration should be given to the increased volume of distribution associated with the ECMO circuit and the possibility of drug adsorption to the ECMO tubing and oxygenator.

## Ventricular Assist Devices (VADs)

In 1967, DeBakey and colleagues used a left-atrial–axillary artery VAD to provide post-cardiotomy ventricular support to a 16-year-old girl. This was the earliest report of VAD use in a pediatric patient. Since then, major advances in technology have occurred, accompanied by improved outcomes. During the past decade, as device technology has matured, devices specifically designed for smaller pediatric patients have been developed for clinical use.

### Indications

In pediatric practice, the size of the child, the indication for support, and the presumed duration of support are the important considerations when choosing a VAD.

VAD use can be summarized as follows:

- A bridge-to-recovery: In this setting, devices suitable for short-term support are utilized with the intent to wean the patient off device support and to remove the device after recovery of cardiopulmonary function. Myocarditis and post-cardiotomy patients are suitable candidates for this type of support.
- A bridge-to-decision: In this setting, devices suitable for short-term support are utilized with the intent of determining over time whether patients with suspected severe end-organ dysfunction (particularly neurological) are suitable candidates for recovery, longer-term support, or cardiac transplantation.
- A bridge-to-transplantation: In this setting, devices suitable for long-term support are utilized with the intent of providing

cardiopulmonary support until cardiac transplantation. Converting from a short-term device to a long-term device to await transplantation is known as ‘bridge-to-bridge.’

- Destination therapy: In this setting, devices suitable for long-term support are utilized with the intent of providing permanent support for patients who are not deemed suitable candidates for cardiac transplantation.

### Relative Contraindications

In complex situations such as concomitant respiratory failure, pulmonary hypertension and residual intra-cardiac shunts, VAD support may be contraindicated.

### Modes of VADs (Table 7.3)

- 1) Short-term VAD support can be accomplished via either central (CentriMag, PediMag, Rotaflow) or peripheral cannulation (TandemHeart, Impella).
- 2) The short-term VADs include a pump, console, circuit tubing, and inflow and outflow cannulas.
- 3) Long-term VAD support can be accomplished with either a pulsatile (Berlin Heart EXCOR) or continuous-flow (HeartMate II, HeartWare HVAD) device (Table 7.4).
- 4) Both right ventricular (RVAD) and left ventricular (LVAD) support can be provided. The vast majority of devices implanted are LVAD (systemic ventricular support). RVAD are normally placed only in the setting of intractable right ventricular dysfunction after placement of an LVAD (BiVAD).

### Complications

The most common complications include bleeding, thrombosis, embolic events such as stroke, and infection.

### Anesthetic Considerations for Patients Receiving VAD

End-organ dysfunction in addition to cardiac dysfunction occurs in patients supported with VAD. In particular, renal and hepatic dysfunction should be evaluated.

**Table 7.3** Currently available ventricular assist devices.

<b>Paracorporeal</b>	<b>Intracorporeal</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Thoratec PVAD (pneumatic).</li> <li>• Thoratec HeartMate XVE LVAD (electromechanical) (Thoratec Laboratories, Pleasanton, CA, USA).</li> <li>• Toyobo (pneumatic) (National Cardiovascular Center, Tokyo, Japan).</li> <li>• Abiomed BVS 5000 (pneumatic) (Abiomed, Danvers, MA, USA).</li> <li>• Abiomed AB5000 (pneumatic) (Abiomed, Danvers, MA, USA).</li> <li>• Berlin Heart EXCOR VAD (pneumatic) (Berlin Heart AG, Berlin, Germany).</li> <li>• MEDOS HIA VAD (pneumatic) (MEDOS Medizintechnik AG).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• MicroMed DeBakey VAD (axial) (MicroMed Technologies).</li> <li>• Jarvik 2000 Flowmaker (axial) (Jarvik Heart, New York, NY, USA).</li> <li>• Berlin Heart Incor. (axial) (Berlin Heart AG).</li> <li>• Thoratec HeartMate II LVAD (axial) (Thoratec Laboratories, Pleasanton, CA, USA).</li> </ul>

**Table 7.4** Summary of the advantages and disadvantages of pulsatile versus axial VAD devices. Reproduced from Yuki, K., Sharma, R., DiNardo, J.A. (2012) Ventricular-assist device therapy in children, in: *Best Practice and Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*, Vol. 26, pp. 247–264.

<b>Parameter</b>	<b>Pulsatile</b>	<b>Axial</b>
Pulsatile flow	Yes	Possible
Design	Complicated	Simple
Noise	Yes	No
Size	Large	Small
Valves	Yes	No
Moving parts	Several	One
Compliance chamber	Yes	No
Blood-to-device interface	Large	Small
Infection	Low	Lower
Mobility	Limited	Less limited

The preoperative evaluation includes:

- Children with a glomerular filtration rate (GFR)  $<60 \text{ ml min}^{-1} 1.72 \text{ m}^{-2}$  should be assumed to have occult renal dysfunction and are at risk for acute renal injury or failure, even if blood urea nitrogen (BUN) and creatinine levels were normal.
- A full panel of liver function tests and a full coagulation profile should be performed to rule out hepatic dysfunction.
- Levels of B-natriuretic peptide (BNP), a specific marker of elevated ventricular end-diastolic pressure, are likely to be elevated. Lethargy and anorexia in children strongly suggest the presence of a low cardiac output state.
- Particular attention during the physical examination should be paid to the assessment of arterial and venous access sites.
- A review of recent echocardiographic and cardiac catheterization data is essential.
- Pacemaker and/or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should be reprogrammed prior to surgery.
- The blood bank should be alerted to the possibility that a massive transfusion

will be required. It is prudent to use leukocyte-reduced blood to minimize further antibody formation, as well as cytomegalovirus-free blood products.

### Induction of Anesthesia and Pre-Bypass Management

These patients have limited contractile reserve, limited preload recruitable stroke work, a

limited ability to respond to acute increases or decreases in afterload, and a low cardiac output state. Thus, they require an induction that will blunt the hemodynamic response to laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation without undue myocardial depression, vasodilation and subsequent hypotension. A summary of management of hemodynamic instability in patients with 2 common types of ventricular assist devices is presented in Table 7.5.

**Table 7.5** Proposed management of hemodynamic instability in ventricular assist devices. Modified from Yuki, K., Sharma, R., DiNardo, J.A. (2012) Ventricular-assist device therapy in children, in: *Best Practice and Research Clinical Anaesthesiology*, Vol. 26, pp. 247–264.

Hemodynamic change	Possible etiology	Device inspection	Possible intervention
<b>Berlin Heart EXCOR (pulsatile ventricular assist device)</b>			
BP ↓	Hypovolemia/venodilation	Inspect chamber for incomplete filling (wrinkling in diastole)	Fluid bolus/ venoconstrictor
	RV dysfunction/elevated PVR Low systemic vascular resistance	Chamber filling fully or nearly fully	Promptly treat RV failure or increased PVR Alpha-agonists, consider vasopressin
BP ↑	Pain, anxiety, light anesthesia	Inspect chamber for incomplete emptying (wrinkling during systole)	Sedation, analgesia
			Avoid increasing systolic driving pressure Titrate vasodilators
<b>HeartMate II left ventricular assist device (axial ventricular assist device)</b>			
BP ↓	Hypovolemia/venodilation	Device flow will decrease and r.p.m. will slow, beyond which device will shut down until volume status corrected	Fluid bolus/ venoconstrictor
	RV dysfunction/elevated PVR Extremely low systemic vascular resistance		Promptly treat RV failure or increased PVR Alpha agonists, consider vasopressin
BP ↑	Pain, anxiety, light anesthesia	Increased dP (aortic-LV pressure) as occurs with increased BP will decrease device flow at a given r.p.m.	Sedatives, analgesics
			Titrate vasodilators

LV, left ventricle; RV, right ventricle; PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; BP, blood pressure.

- **Monitoring:** American Society of Anesthesiologists monitoring, arterial, central venous pressure catheters and transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) probe to be used. Preoperative inotropes should be continued.
- **Mechanical ventilation:** Initiation of positive-pressure ventilation is likely to induce significant pulse pressure variation, and needs to be initiated carefully with appropriate minute ventilation provided at the lowest possible mean airway pressure. Hypoventilation and atelectasis will increase pulmonary vascular resistance.
- **Testing:** Serum lactate and mixed venous oxygen saturations are monitored as indirect indicators of cardiac output. The use of the lysine analog antifibrinolytics tranexamic acid or epsilon-aminocaproic acid should be considered.

### Post-LVAD Placement Management

LVAD generally functions well as long as there is sufficient intravascular volume and right ventricular function to fill the pump. LVAD insertion results in a global impairment of right ventricular systolic function due to loss of the left ventricular contribution to right ventricular function. In addition, LVAD implantation generally acutely decreases mitral regurgitation while worsening tricuspid regurgitation, both acutely and chronically. Poor apposition of the tricuspid valve leaflets after left ventricular decompression with a LVAD occurs as the result of a leftward shift of the intraventricular septum and the increased RV volume load. There is generally dilation of the tricuspid annulus and a leftward deviation of the septal components of the tricuspid subvalvular (chordae and papillary muscles) apparatus. Normally, this is offset by an increased right ventricular preload and a reduced right ventricular afterload [due to a reduction in LA

pressure and pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR)] such that right ventricular output is maintained or increased.

Treatment of right ventricular dysfunction and tricuspid regurgitation with pulmonary vasodilators (milrinone and NO) and inotropes will be necessary for patients who manifest severe right ventricular dysfunction after LVAD implantation. Severe right ventricular dysfunction will produce a low LVAD output in conjunction with a high CVP and tricuspid regurgitation. Right ventricular distension and hypokinesis seen with TEE is valuable in guiding therapy to reduce tricuspid regurgitation and improve right ventricular function. In some circumstances, a tricuspid annuloplasty may be warranted at the time of LVAD implantation. If all these maneuvers fail to support the right heart, the patient should be converted to biventricular assist, or ECMO.

The following causes should be considered in decreased preload conditions:

- Hypovolemia.
- Poor positioning/obstruction of the inflow cannula.
- Impaired right ventricular function with delivery of inadequate volumes of blood across the pulmonary circulation to an LVAD.

It is important to realize that in patients with non-pulsatile devices, the arterial waveform will be largely a non-pulsatile representation of the mean arterial blood pressure.

### BiVAD Insertion

During BiVAD placement, the possibility of pulmonary endothelial injury, pulmonary edema and hemorrhage exists. Patients with elevated pulmonary arterial pressure due to inadequate left atrial decompression or elevated PVR, are particularly at risk for this problem.



## Part II

### Specific Lesions

## 8

# Patent Ductus Arteriosus

## Introduction

Dr Robert Gross's first successful ligation of a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) on 8th August 1938, at the Children's Hospital in Boston, marked the beginning of pediatric cardiac surgery. Currently, PDAs represent about 10% of congenital heart defects, and in preterm infants the overall incidence is 20–30%.

## Anatomy

A PDA connects the main pulmonary trunk near the origin of the left pulmonary artery with the proximal descending aorta just distal to the origin of the left subclavian artery (Figure 8.1).

## Physiology

A PDA is a simple shunt. When the PDA is large, there is little or no pressure gradient across the duct and shunting becomes dependent on the ratio of pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) to systemic vascular resistance (SVR). Initially, the high PVR present after birth tends to limit the shunt magnitude of even the largest PDAs until the PVR begins to decrease. As the PVR decreases a left-to-right (L-R) shunt with increased pulmonary blood flow develops.

In order for systemic blood flow to be maintained, the left ventricular output must increase and a volume load must be imposed on the left ventricle. The increased pulmonary blood flow increases the pulmonary venous return and left atrial pressure. These factors may, in turn, increase the PVR and the work of breathing, and ultimately lead to the development of pulmonary artery hypertension. Diastolic run-off of blood from the proximal aorta into the pulmonary artery can result in a holodiastolic flow reversal in the descending aorta that compromises both proximal and distal organ perfusion, and may be associated with necrotizing enterocolitis, renal failure, and intraventricular hemorrhage (IVH). The reduction in aortic diastolic blood pressure also compromises coronary perfusion pressure.

## Surgical Therapy

The surgical approach to PDA closure is via a left thoracotomy or via video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS). Cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) is not used. The ductus is either ligated or ligated and transected. The left pulmonary artery, left main stem bronchus, or descending aorta are at risk of being inadvertently ligated if the PDA is misidentified. Injury to the recurrent laryngeal nerve is also a recognized complication.

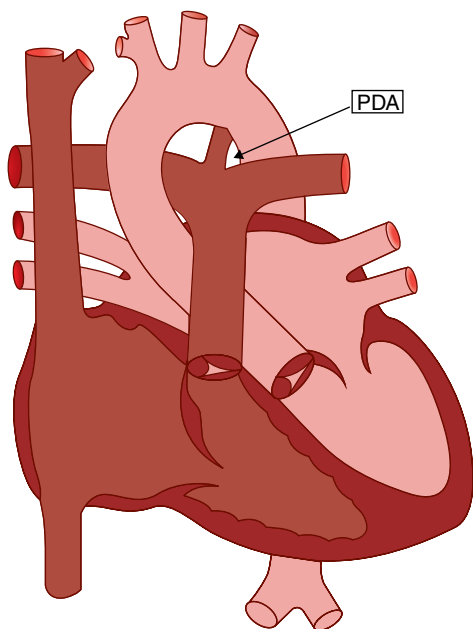


Figure 8.1 Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA).

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

The closure of a PDA in the cardiac catheterization laboratories was introduced by Portsmann in 1967, using a conical Ivalon plug, and in 1979 Rashkind and Cuaso used an umbrella-type device. In 1992, Cambier and Moore introduced the use of coils for the occlusion of small PDAs. In 2003, the Amplatzer became the first device to be approved by the Food and Drug Administration for PDA closure. Because patient immobility greatly facilitates the deployment of PDA occlusion devices, a general anesthesia is commonly utilized in children incapable of cooperation. Embolization of the device downstream into the pulmonary artery or aorta requires catheter-based or surgical retrieval.

## Anesthetic Management

The anesthetic management goals are summarized in Table 8.1. There are a few additional considerations. Surgical retraction

Table 8.1 Anesthetic management goals for a patent ductus arteriosus.

- 1) Maintain HR, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output.
- 2) Avoid decreases in PVR:SVR to maintain systemic blood flow.
- 3) Avoid increases in PVR:SVR. An increase in PVR increases the right-to-left shunting.
- 4) Bubble precautions.

of the left lung may necessitate high-inspired oxygen concentrations to prevent hypoxemia. Blood pressure should be monitored in both an upper and lower extremity; the right arm is preferable to the left arm because the surgeon may have to place a clamp on the aorta if control of the aortic end of the PDA is lost during dissection or ligation. In patients with a large left-to-right shunt there will be an increase in aortic diastolic blood pressure following ligation, due to the cessation of run-off of blood into the pulmonary circulation. An upper- and lower-extremity blood pressure should be compared following ligation to assure that a coarctation has not been created.

### Induction and Maintenance

Most patients presenting for PDA ligation are premature infants with respiratory distress syndrome. Age and the likelihood that congestive heart failure exists make these patients poor candidates for inhalational anesthesia. A technique using fentanyl in combination with a benzodiazepine or low inspired concentration of inhalation agent is well tolerated.

For older children with an isolated PDA and no pulmonary veno-occlusive disease, early extubation or extubation in the operating room after ligation is possible. In this age group, thoracotomy can be avoided using VATS. An inhalational induction with sevoflurane, followed by placement of an IV and administration of rocuronium and fentanyl  $10\text{--}15\mu\text{gkg}^{-1}$  is commonly performed. Alternatively, a remifentanyl

infusion ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) can be utilized. Anesthesia is supplemented with isoflurane (0.5–1.0%) or sevoflurane (1.0–2.0%). Regional anesthesia (paravertebral block, intercostal block) can be used to treat postoperative pain.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patient with a repaired PDA can present with laryngeal nerve injury. They may also present with pulmonary hypertension and ventricular dysfunction if the repair was delayed.

## 9

## Aortopulmonary Window

### Introduction

Aortopulmonary window (AP) is a rare disorder comprising <0.1% of congenital heart lesions. It results from a failure of fusion of the two opposing conotruncal ridges that are responsible for separating the truncus arteriosus into the aorta and pulmonary artery.

### Anatomy

AP is associated with other cardiac abnormalities in one-third to one-half of cases, but may occur as an isolated lesion. The most common associated lesions are arch abnormalities, specifically interrupted aortic arch, and coarctation of the aorta. Other associated cardiac anomalies include abnormal origin of the coronary arteries, ventricular septal defects, tetralogy of Fallot, and transposition of the great arteries. Non-cardiac-associated anomalies include VATER, CHARGE, and DiGeorge.

AP windows are classified into four types (Figure 9.1):

- Type I: Proximal defect: occurs between the ascending aorta and main pulmonary artery, above the sinus of Valsalva.
- Type II: Distal defect: the distal ascending aorta opens into the origin of the right pulmonary artery.
- Type III: Total defect: the largest defect involving most of the ascending aorta with

complete absence of the aortopulmonary septum.

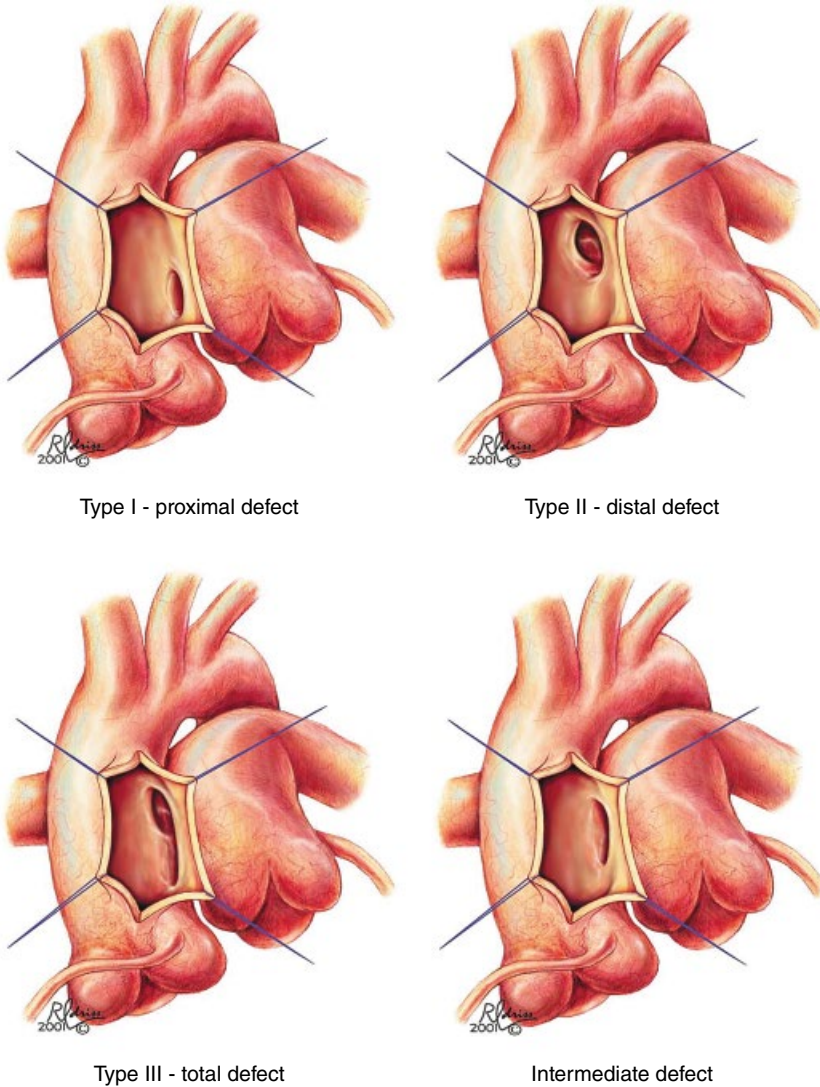
- Type IV: Intermediate defect: This defect has adequate superior and inferior rims and is the most suitable for possible device closure.

### Physiology

As pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) decreases after birth, these patients present in the neonatal period with a large non-restrictive left-to-right (L-R) physiologic shunt with high pulmonary blood flow and congestive heart failure. Tachypnea and diaphoresis are common. A systolic murmur can be heard along the left sternal border; however, unlike patients with a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), a diastolic component to the murmur is rare. Diagnosis is routinely made with echocardiography.

### Surgical Management

The presence of an AP is an indication for early surgical repair to prevent the development of pulmonary artery hypertension (PAH). A median sternotomy is performed and the procedure is carried out using cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). The area of the AP window is exposed and a patch is used to close the defect and separate both circulations.



**Figure 9.1** Classification of aortopulmonary window by the Society of Thoracic Surgeons Congenital Heart Surgery Database Committee. Reproduced from Backer, C.L., Mavroudis, C. (2002) Surgical management of aortopulmonary window: a 40-year experience. *Eur. J. Cardiothorac. Surg.*, **21**, 773–779.

Early mortality following the repair of simple AP approaches zero, and long-term outcomes are excellent. Follow-up is indicated to detect residual aortopulmonary septal defects and the development of branch pulmonary artery stenosis.

### Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Device closure of the AP window may be possible for very small defects not associated with anomalous coronary artery origin.

## Anesthetic Management

The anesthetic management is similar to the management of the large L-R physiologic shunt lesion truncus arteriosus. Monitoring includes intra-arterial and central venous catheters. High-dose opioids and muscle relaxant with low-dose inhalation is an adequate technique for the induction and maintenance of anesthesia. Maintenance of a balanced PVR:systemic vascular resistance

(SVR) ratio to avoid excessive pulmonary blood flow and systemic hypoperfusion is a must.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patients with AP window may have residual pulmonary stenosis and/or pulmonary vascular disease that need to be evaluated prior to non-cardiac surgery.

## 10

## Coarctation of the Aorta

### Introduction

Coarctation of the aorta is present in 5–10% of patients with congenital heart disease (CHD). It is more commonly found in males and is the most common lesion in patients with Turner syndrome. Almost half of all cases have associated cardiac and non-cardiac anomalies.

### Anatomy

Coarctation of the aorta is a focal narrowing of the aorta. The anatomic pathology is remarkably consistent, with a discrete posterior shelf or invagination in the aortic wall just opposite the insertion of the ductus arteriosus (juxta-ductal) and distal to the left subclavian artery. In some instances this shelf may be circumferential. Longer segment coarctation and coarctation of the abdominal aorta are also seen.

It has been postulated that coarctation develops as the result of fetal blood flow patterns which reduce antegrade aortic blood flow, with a proportionate increase in pulmonary artery and ductus arteriosus blood flow. Coarctation can be associated with aortic valve stenosis (most commonly bicuspid aortic valve), with hypoplasia of other left-heart structures such as the mitral valve and left ventricle, and with hypoplasia of the aortic arch. Hypoplasia of the aortic isthmus (the region of the aortic arch from the left subclavian to the ductus arteriosus) is the isolated

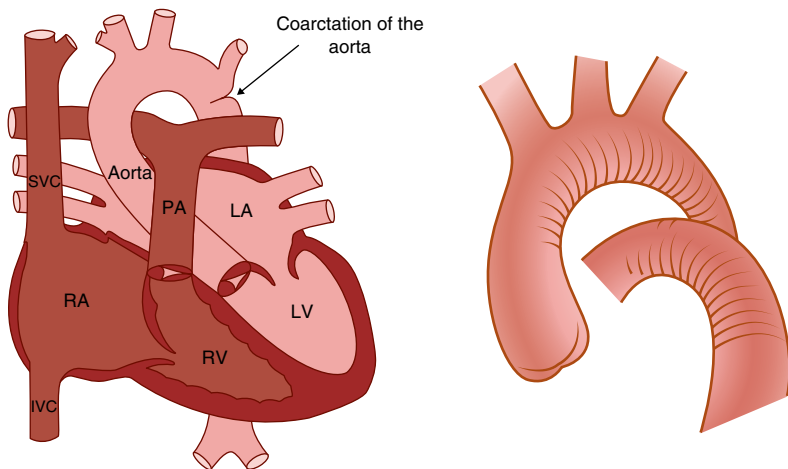
aortic arch lesion most commonly associated with coarctation. Ventricular septal defects (VSDs), particularly posterior malalignment VSDs that cause left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction and divert flow from the ascending aorta into the pulmonary artery, are also associated with coarctation. In contrast, coarctation is virtually never found in association with obstructive right-heart lesions.

### Physiology

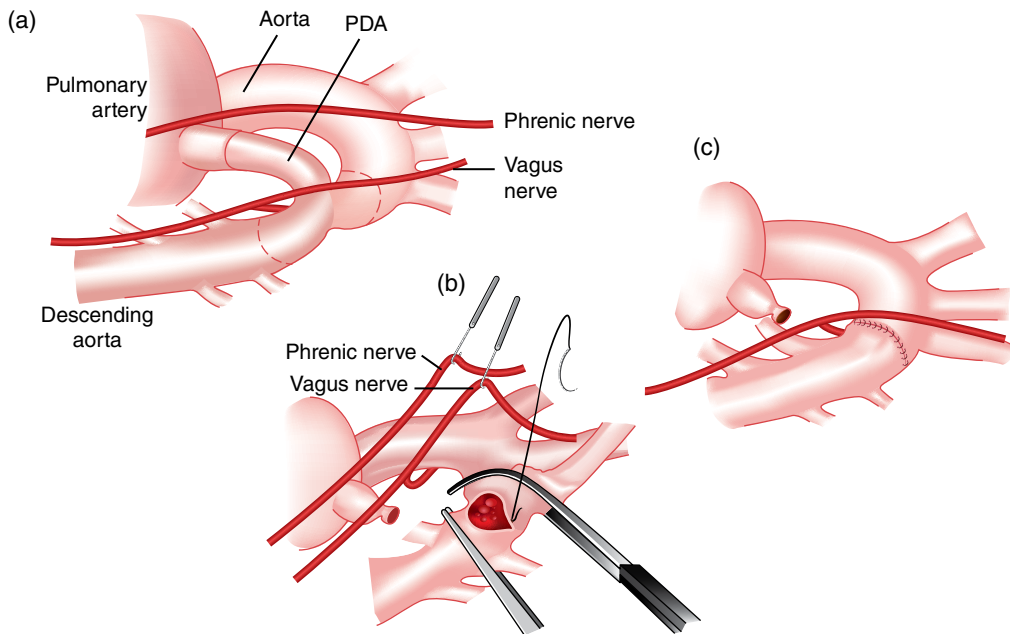
Despite remarkably consistent anatomic pathology, the pathophysiology of coarctation is varied and depends on the severity of the coarctation and the location of associated lesions (Figure 10.1). These variations in pathophysiology have led to the use of confusing terms such as ‘infantile’ and ‘adult’ coarctation or pre- and post-ductal coarctation, which are of little practical significance. Coarctation of the aorta produces left ventricular pressure overload and a reduction in lower-body perfusion. The physiologic consequences of a coarctation will depend on several factors:

- The severity of the coarctation.
- The extent of antegrade aortic blood flow afforded by a patent or partially patent ductus arteriosus (PDA).
- The extent of collateralization to the distal aorta.
- The type and severity of associated heart lesions.





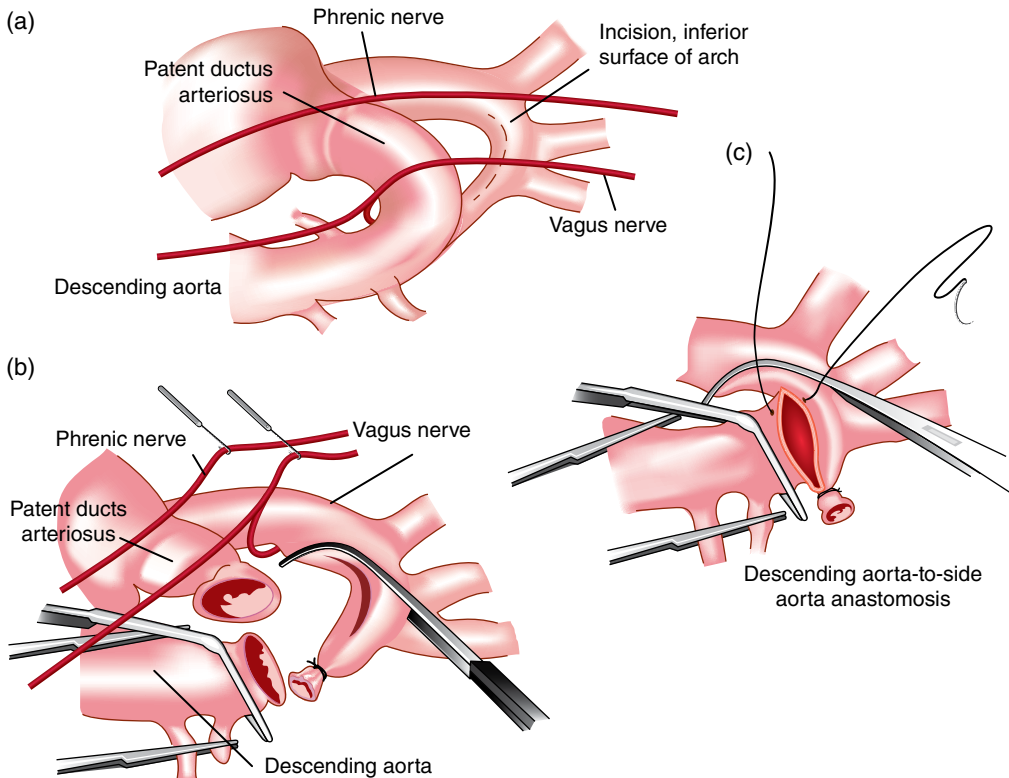
**Figure 10.1** Typical appearance of coarctation of the aorta.



**Figure 10.2** Anatomy of a coarctation of the aorta involving a small patent ductus arteriosus (PDA). The repair shown is resection of the coarcted segment, ligation of the PDA, and primary end-to-end re-anastomosis of the aorta. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

The ductus arteriosus plays a critical role in pathophysiology. Closure of the ductus arteriosus after birth initially occurs at the pulmonary end, with constriction of the aortic orifice normally delayed for several weeks or months. Closure of the aortic end of the ductus arterio-

sus may abruptly impede blood flow around the aortic shelf lesion and increase the severity of the lesion (Figure 10.2). Ductal closure may also be associated with constriction of the aorta at the level of the ductus arteriosus, presumably due to the presence of ductal tissue in



**Figure 10.3** Anatomy of the coarctation of the aorta involving a large patent ductus arteriosus and hypoplasia of the aortic isthmus. The repair is a resection of ductal tissue and mobilization of the descending aorta and aortic arch to perform a primary re-anastomosis. During this procedure, clamp placement may compromise left carotid artery flow. Cerebral blood will be dependent on right carotid flow and an intact circle of Willis. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

this area. When coarctation is severe, distal aortic perfusion will, in part, be supplied with blood from the pulmonary artery via a PDA (Figure 10.3). This will result in differential cyanosis with a higher arterial saturation proximal to the coarctation as compared to distal to the coarctation. When the development of aortic obstruction is gradual, collateral flow to the distal aorta will be established via the intercostal, internal thoracic, subclavian, and scapular arteries.

Presentation will be in infancy for all patients except those capable of tolerating ductal closure without overt hemodynamic compromise. In general, presentation beyond infancy is limited to patients with an isolated coarctation of mild to moderate severity, or to

those with rapid compensatory collateral formation. In these patients there is a secondary phase of fibrosis that occurs during the first two to three months of life. As the child grows, the ligamentum arteriosum develops a thick fibrous shelf within the lumen of the aorta.

In the presence of severe coarctation, and particularly in association with left-heart and aortic arch hypoplasia, patency of the ductus arteriosus is necessary to provide blood flow to the aorta distal to the coarctation (right-to-left physiologic shunt). In this ductal dependent physiology, right ventricular pressures are systemic.

Ductal closure in patients with a severe coarctation will result in a near loss of distal perfusion. Left ventricular dilation from the

acute afterload increase, left atrial hypertension, and pulmonary edema may ensue. The reduction in left ventricular output may be so severe that proximal hypertension will not be present. The infant may present in a profound low-cardiac output state or following cardiopulmonary arrest. In the case of a less severe coarctation, ductal closure will result in a diminution of distal perfusion and evidence of left atrial hypertension.

If an anatomic intracardiac shunt lesion, such as an atrial septal defect (ASD) or VSD, is also present the increased impedance to aortic ejection induced by the coarctation will enhance physiologic left-to-right (L-R) shunting. Reductions in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) will increase pulmonary blood flow, thereby diverting flow from the distal aorta. Left atrial hypertension will be exacerbated by the increase in pulmonary blood flow.

In all these instances, the institution of prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> (PGE<sub>1</sub>; 0.01–0.05 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) to re-establish ductal and aortic patency can be lifesaving. Mechanical ventilatory support, inotropic support, and diuretic therapy are usually necessary to stabilize the sickest infants following the administration of PGE<sub>1</sub>. These patients often present with a profound metabolic acidosis and suffer transient renal and hepatic dysfunction following initial resuscitation.

Patients presenting in childhood with coarctation will not be ductus-dependent and will have well-developed collaterals. In addition, they will have developed the concentric left ventricular hypertrophy that accompanies chronic left ventricular pressure overload lesions. These patients will have proximal aortic hypertension.

## Surgical Therapy

Three basic types of repair are used for correction of coarctation of the aorta: (i) reverse subclavian patch angioplasty; (ii) synthetic patch angioplasty; and (iii) end-to-end anastomosis of the aorta after resection of the

coarctation segment (Figures 10.2 and 10.3). These procedures are performed via a left thoracotomy. It is necessary to cross-clamp the aorta to perform these procedures. For older children, partial cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) or a shunt from proximal to distal aorta may be used if the adequacy of the collateral circulation is in question.

Presentation as an infant generally leads to medical stabilization followed by surgical intervention. Complete excision of the area of coarctation and surrounding ductal tissue with end-to-end anastomosis is indicated. In the case of coarctation associated with a hypoplastic aortic isthmus, complete excision in conjunction with an extended end-to-end or end-to-side anastomosis is recommended. The descending aorta is anastomosed to the underside of the aortic arch in an end-to-end or end-to-side fashion.

Dacron patch aortoplasty following resection of the posterior coarctation ridge is associated with the late development of hypertension and aneurysm formation, as compared to end-to-end anastomosis. Reverse subclavian patch angioplasty is rarely utilized, as the rate of re-coarctation is high. In adult patients, placement of an interposition graft is usually necessary as there is insufficient mobility of the aorta to allow resection and the creation of an end-to-end anastomosis.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Balloon intervention to the coarctation was initially described during the early 1980s. Endovascular stent placement is an alternative therapy for treatment of coarctation in older children and adults, with results superior to balloon dilation alone. This technique allows for subsequent percutaneous stent dilations over time as needed. Uncommon but devastating complications include neurologic injury, uncontrolled aortic tear/rupture, aortic aneurysms and dissections.

The incidence of paraplegia secondary to spinal cord ischemia is quite low (0.14–0.4%). Several factors are associated with an increased risk of developing paraplegia, including hyperthermia, prolonged aortic cross-clamp time, elevated cerebral spinal fluid (CSF) pressures, low proximal and distal aortic blood pressures, and poorly developed collaterals to the descending aorta.

## Anesthetic Management

The goals of anesthetic management are as follows:

- To maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. The high afterload faced by the left ventricle makes it particularly vulnerable to reductions in contractility.
- For neonates and infants with coarctation, continuation of prostaglandin  $E_1$  ( $0.01\text{--}0.05\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) to maintain ductal patency may be necessary to prevent cardiovascular collapse.
- If there is an associated ASD or VSD, reduction in the PVR:SVR ratio should be avoided. Such reductions will increase pulmonary blood flow and will necessitate an increase in cardiac output to maintain systemic blood flow.
- Avoid increases in SVR. An increased SVR will worsen left ventricular pressure overload, which may cause large reductions in left ventricular output.
- Cross-clamping of the aorta may produce impressive proximal hypertension or left ventricular dysfunction. This is less likely in the presence of well-developed collaterals.

The arterial line should be in the right arm. The left arm is an unreliable blood pressure source during clamping because the proximal clamp may occlude or compromise the origin of the left subclavian artery. This is particularly true if the left subclavian patch

technique is utilized. The surgeon may also request that a femoral arterial catheter be placed to assess the adequacy of the repair by way of comparison of proximal and distal blood pressures. In circumstances where the adequacy of distal collateralization is in question, measurement of femoral arterial pressure after test occlusion of the descending aortic may be helpful. At a minimum, a pulse oximeter probe and a non-invasive blood pressure (NIBP) cuff should be applied to a lower extremity. A pulse oximeter probe should also be placed on the right hand. During aortic cross-clamping this site will yield the only reliable plethysmographic waveform and oxygen saturation data. The use of cerebral near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS) may be helpful in assessing the adequacy of cerebral blood flow, and flank NIRS may be used to indirectly assess somatic blood flow.

Permissive hypothermia, with rectal and nasopharyngeal temperatures allowed to drift down to  $34\text{--}35^\circ\text{C}$ , is used by many centers to afford some degree of spinal cord protection during aortic cross-clamping. Careful attention to patient temperature is necessary to avoid excessive hypothermia during the cross-clamp period. Sufficient rewarming of the patient after cross-clamp removal to allow extubation in the operating room can be a challenge.

## Induction and Maintenance

Neonates and infants presenting for coarctation repair generally are  $\text{PGE}_1$ -dependent, with compromised distal perfusion and pulmonary congestion. A technique using high-dose fentanyl in combination with a benzodiazepine or low inspired concentration of an inhalation agent is well tolerated by these patients. In older children with only proximal systemic hypertension, intravenous or inhalational techniques are well tolerated. Regardless of the technique chosen, it should be appreciated that proximal blood pressure response to stimulation will be exaggerated.

### **Management after Cross-Clamp Removal**

Cross-clamping of the thoracic aorta has been shown to produce increases in both proximal aortic blood pressure and CSF pressure, and decreases in distal aortic blood pressure. The use of sodium nitroprusside to normalize proximal aortic blood pressure results in further increases in CSF pressure and further decreases in distal aortic blood pressure. This combination of increased CSF pressure and reduced aortic blood pressure reduces spinal cord blood perfusion pressure and may place the spinal cord at greater risk for ischemia. Therefore, vasodilators should be used cautiously to control extreme proximal hypertension and left ventricular dysfunction.

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is useful during cross-clamping, particularly for infants with coexisting cardiac lesions. Left ventricular function and the extent of intracardiac shunting can be monitored. In some instances of severe coarctation in infants – particularly those with proximal tubular hypoplasia – vasodilator therapy may be insufficient to prevent left ventricular dilatation, and inotropic support may be necessary. Ventilatory control of the PVR will be complicated by the fact that the left lung must be retracted for exposure. It is important to know which arch vessels are clamped during the surgical procedure. At least one

of the carotid arteries must be patent for cerebral perfusion (Figures 10.2 and 10.3).

Removal of the cross-clamp will result in reactive hyperemia in distal tissues, with subsequent vasodilation and transient hypotension. Release of lactic acid will cause the PaCO<sub>2</sub> to rise, but volume expansion and an increase in minute ventilation just before clamp removal diminishes these effects. The cross-clamp times for these repairs are relatively short (<15 min), which reduces the hemodynamic consequences of clamp removal.

Postoperatively, rebound hypertension may occur and persist for up to one week. Initially this is likely due to an altered baroreceptor response that results in very high circulating levels of catecholamines. Later, there may be involvement of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system. Beta-blockers and vasodilators are used to control this hypertension.

Older children without coexisting diseases are candidates for early extubation using the technique described for PDA ligation.

### **Non-Cardiac Surgery**

Patients with repaired coarctation may present for non-cardiac surgery with residual or re-coarctation, persistent hypertension and myocardial hypertrophy, or associated berry aneurysms.

## 11

# Atrial Septal Defect

## Introduction

Atrial septal defects (ASDs) are the second most common congenital heart disease in children, with an incidence 0.07% to 0.2%, and have a female-to-male ratio of about 2:1. Approximately 15% of ASDs close spontaneously by the age of 4 years, whereas others decrease in size and are of no major clinical significance. However, about 1% of infants with moderate to large isolated ASDs experience symptoms which usually do not occur until late childhood, or older.

## Anatomy

An ASD is a communication between the left and right atrium due to a defect in the intra-atrial septum (IAS). The IAS consists of a central membranous portion and a thicker inferior and superior fatty limbus. The central membranous portion is formed by tissue of the septum primum ultimately forming the fossa ovalis. This membrane lies posterior to the superior aspect of the fatty limbus.

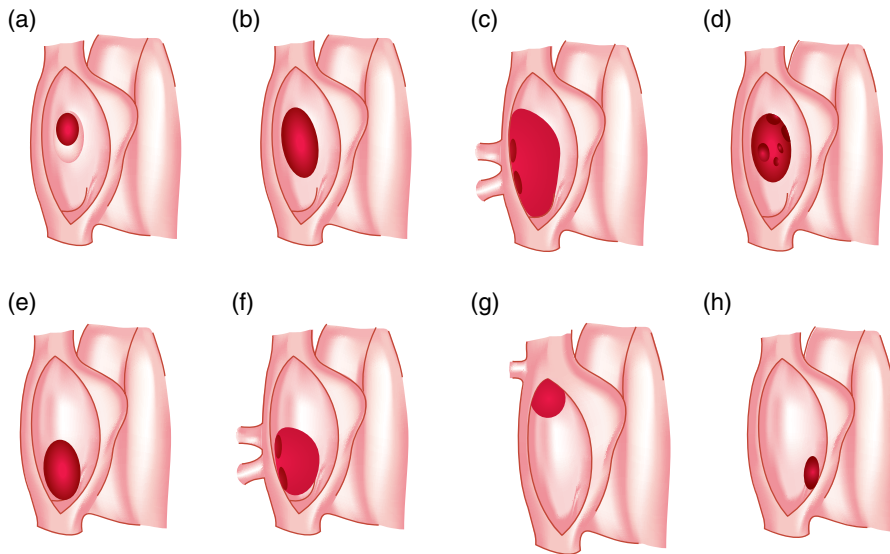
ASDs, like ventricular septal defects (VSDs), are classified by their location. There are four morphological types of ASD: (i) ostium secundum defects; (ii) ostium primum defects; (iii) inferior and superior sinus venosus defects; and (iv) coronary sinus (CS) defects (Figure 11.1). Although they are classified as ASDs, sinus venosus and CS defects are not truly defects in the IAS.

## Ostium Secundum ASD

These defects comprise 80% of ASDs. While a patent foramen ovale (PFO) results from incomplete fusion of an intact fossa ovalis membrane with the superior aspect of the fatty limbus, an ostium secundum ASD is the result of actual deficiencies in the membrane (septum primum) of the fossa ovalis.

## Ostium Primum ASD

Isolated ostium primum ASDs, also known as partial atrioventricular (AV) canal defects, develop when a partial fusion of the endocardial cushions separates the two AV valves and closes the ventricular septal communication, but fails to close the ostium primum. This defect occurs inferiorly at the level of the AV valves outside the fossa ovalis. The isolated ostium primum defect extends from the inferior IAS fatty limbus, to the crest of the interventricular septum (IVS). A characteristic finding of this lesion is insertion of the septal portions of both AV valves on the IVS at the same level. Normally, insertion of the tricuspid valve to the IVS is inferior to the insertion of the mitral valve, producing the ventriculoatrial septum (VAS) that separates the right atrium from the left ventricle. Isolated ostium primum defects are commonly associated with a cleft anterior mitral valve leaflet and mitral regurgitation (MR) resulting from a partial fusion of the leftward portions of the antero-superior and infero-posterior bridging leaflets that normally fuse to form the anterior mitral valve leaflet.



**Figure 11.1** Various types of ASD seen from the right atrium. (a) Patent foramen ovale; (b) Complete septal rim; (c) Missing septal rim; (d) Multiple fenestrations of the fossa ovalis; (e) Large fossa ovalis extending to the orifice of the inferior vena cava; (f) Posterior ASD; (g) Sinus venosus defect; (h) Coronary sinus ASD. Reproduced from Stark, M., Tsang, V.T. (2006) *Surgery for Congenital Heart Defects*, 3rd edition. Wiley & Sons Ltd, England.

See Chapter 13 for more details regarding these partial atrioventricular canal defects.

### Sinus Venosus Defects

These defects are located either superiorly at the junction of the right atrium and the superior vena cava (SVC), or inferiorly at the junction of the right atrium and the inferior vena cava (IVC). Both defects are located posterior to the fossa ovalis. Superior defects comprise the majority, and inferior defects are rare. Strictly speaking, these are not defects in the true atrial septum, but are believed to result from a deficiency in the common wall that normally separates the right pulmonary veins/left atrium junction from the right atrium/SVC or right atrium/IVC junction, rather than a defect in the IAS or a change in the position of the pulmonary veins *per se*. Unroofing of the posteriorly located pulmonary vein(s) produces drainage of the left atrium into the SVC and right atrium, creating a left-to-right (L-R) shunt. The interatrial communication is the orifice of the pulmonary veins rather than a defect in the atrial septum. Sinus venosus defects

can also be associated with partially anomalous pulmonary venous return (PAPVR). The distinction between an anomalous connection (drainage of a pulmonary vein into a structure other than the left atrium) and anomalous drainage (drainage of normally positioned pulmonary veins across the defect into the SVC/right atrium junction or IVC/right atrium junction) must be made.

The most common type of anomalous pulmonary connection is the RUPV draining directly into the lateral wall of the SVC above the SVC/right atrium junction at the level of the right pulmonary artery. In the case of the inferior defect, Scimitar syndrome (an anomalous connection of the right upper and lower pulmonary veins to the IVC/right atrium junction, aortopulmonary collaterals to the right lower lobe, and hypoplasia of the right lung) can be seen.

### Coronary Sinus Defect

Unroofing of the CS (posterior) allows direct communication with the left atrium (anterior). At its entry into the right atrium, the CS orifice becomes the connection between

the left atrium and right atrium. CS defects are commonly associated with a persistent left superior vena cava (LSVC) draining to a large dilated CS.

## Physiology

An ASD is a simple shunt. A small, restrictive defect will allow minimal shunt flow. A large defect (at least 1 mm in diameter) is unrestrictive. Flow across the defect occurs predominantly in diastole, and thus is largely determined by the relative compliances of the right ventricle and left ventricle, which in turn are influenced by PVR and SVR. Because the high PVR present after birth declines such that PVR is 1/10 to 1/20 that of SVR, the right ventricle is able to pump a large volume of blood across the pulmonary vascular bed into the pulmonary veins and left atrium, elevating the left atrial pressure. This physiologic L-R shunting results in a recirculation of oxygenated venous blood into the pulmonary artery and back into the left atrium. The L-R diminishes the effective forward left ventricular outflow and results in a volume overload of the right atrium, right ventricle, and left atrium. Right ventricular volume overload (RVVO) is typically reported on echocardiograms in patients with ASD.

A large defect will greatly increase pulmonary blood flow; however, unlike a VSD, systemic pressures are not transmitted to the pulmonary vasculature. In fact, the pulmonary artery pressure may remain normal for many years due to the distensibility of the pulmonary arteries. In contrast to a patient with VSD, the onset of pulmonary vascular disease and elevated pulmonary vascular resistance may not occur until the third or fourth decade of life for a patient with ASD.

## Surgical Therapy

Some small ostium secundum ASDs can be primarily closed, whereas larger defects are patched, usually with pericardium. Primum

ASDs generally require patch closure and suture closure of the anterior leaflet mitral cleft. Sinus venosus defects without anomalous venous connections can be closed primarily with a patch.

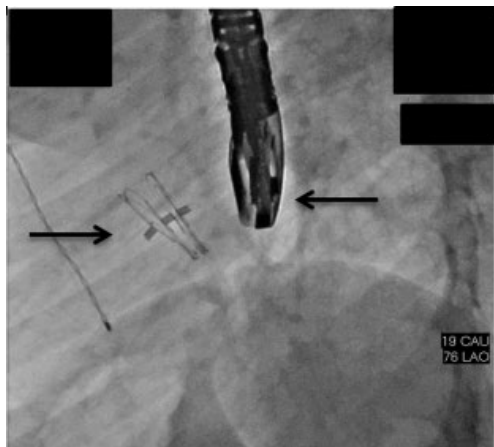
Alternative procedures must be performed when the pulmonary vein(s) anomalously enter the SVC. When the anomalous vein(s) enter the SVC near the SCV/right atrium junction, the SVC is transected above the origin of the anomalous vein(s). The proximal end of the SVC is oversewn, and the SVC orifice is directed across the defect into the left atrium with a pericardial patch. The distal end of the SVC is then anastomosed end-to-end to the roof of the right atrial appendage, re-creating SVC to right atrium continuity. When the anomalous vein(s) enter the SVC remote from the SCV/right atrium junction it may be necessary to create a baffle within the SVC to direct pulmonary venous blood across the defect into the left atrium. In this case the anterior wall of the SVC is enlarged with a patch to allow unrestricted SVC return to the right atrium.

Surgical correction of CS defects depends on the presence or absence of LSVC. In the absence of LSVC the orifice of the CS is oversewn, allowing coronary sinus blood to drain to the left atrium (a very small physiologic right-to-left shunt). When the LSVC is present and drains to the CS with a connecting vein between the two cavae, the LSVC is ligated below the connecting vein and the CS is oversewn.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

An alternative is non-operative device closure of secundum ASDs in the cardiac catheterization laboratory. It is generally performed with transesophageal echocardiographic guidance (Figure 11.2). Case-specific risks include: (i) air embolization during device deployment or manipulation; (ii) device embolization which on occasion





**Figure 11.2** Device closure in the catheterization laboratory with transesophageal echocardiography guidance.

may necessitate surgical intervention for retrieval; and (iii) transient electrocardiogram changes and rarely high-grade AV block.

## Anesthetic Management

The anesthetic management goals include: (i) maintenance of the heart rate, contractility and preload to maintain cardiac output and systemic perfusion; (ii) avoid increases in the PVR:SVR ratio as this may induce a right-to-left shunt with potential for reduced arterial oxygen saturation; and (iii) avoid a decrease in the PVR:SVR ratio as this will cause a L-R shunt, an increase in pulmonary blood flow, and potential for reduced systemic perfusion and oxygen delivery.

### Induction and Maintenance

Most children with ASDs have excellent cardiac reserve and will tolerate an inhalation induction without problems. Good airway management is necessary to allow manipulation of the PVR and prevent any reversal of L-R shunting. The presence of an enlarged atrium may predispose to atrial dysrhythmias, though these are usually well tolerated.

For children with an isolated ASD and low PVR, early extubation in the intensive care unit or extubation in the operating room after repair is possible. If a mini-sternotomy is performed, defibrillator pads should be placed. An inhalational induction with sevoflurane, followed by placement of an IV and administration of rocuronium  $0.6\text{--}1.2\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  and fentanyl  $10\text{--}15\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  can be used. If an IV line is in place, propofol, etomidate or ketamine, in conjunction with rocuronium and fentanyl, can be used for induction. In either case, anesthesia is maintained with isoflurane (0.5–1.0%) or sevoflurane (1.0–2.0%) supplementation. Caudal morphine ( $70\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  in 5–10 ml of preservative-free saline), although not performed routinely, can be administered after induction. A vaporizer on the cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) circuit, along with supplemental opioids and muscle relaxants, can be used for maintenance during CPB.

## Post-CPB Management

The post-CPB management goals are to: (i) maintain an age-appropriate heart rate to maintain cardiac output; (ii) to reduce the PVR, especially in cases where an elevated PVR exists (e.g., milrinone); and (iii) to provide inotropic support to the right ventricle if needed (e.g., dopamine).

Separation from CPB usually is generally not problematic. In primum defects, there is the possibility of heart block, as the patch must be sutured to the crest of the IVS. In addition, the possibility of residual mitral regurgitation exists. If partial anomalous pulmonary venous drainage is unrecognized during sinus venous defect closure, a residual L-R shunt may exist after repair. Intraoperative transesophageal echocardiography can be used to detect this defect. In the rare patient with an elevated PVR the pulmonary vasculature is likely to be hyper-reactive in the post-CPB period. Therefore, it is necessary to use ventilatory measures to reduce post-CPB PVR. These manipulations will prevent right ventricular dysfunction secondary to increased afterload.

In most cases, there is no need for prolonged ventilation and early extubation is feasible with adequate titration of anesthetics and paralysis intraoperatively.

### Non-Cardiac Surgery

Children and adult patients following ASD repair can present for non-cardiac surgery. The history should include the timing of the

repair, the type of repair (device or surgical), and any associated arrhythmias or other cardiac defects. Endocarditis prophylaxis is recommended for patients during the first six months after device or patch closure. Persistent right ventricular dilation or pulmonary hypertension should be considered in patients who presented for repair at a later age.

## 12

# Ventricular Septal Defect

## Introduction

Ventricular septal defect (VSD) is the most common congenital heart disease, with an incidence that varies between 1.5–3 per 1000 term infants and 4.5–7 per 1000 preterm infants. VSDs have a high rate of spontaneous closure (30–40%). The most common associated chromosomal syndromes include trisomy 13, 18, and 21.

## Anatomy

A VSD is an opening in the ventricular septum that permits communication between the right and left ventricles. It may exist in one or more locations in the ventricular septum, and is classified by its location in the septum (Figure 12.1).

### Subpulmonary or Supracristal Defects

These are located in the infundibular septum just below the pulmonary valve. The lesions may be associated with aortic insufficiency due to a lack of support for the right coronary cusp of the aortic valve and prolapse of this leaflet.

### Membranous or Perimembranous Defects

These defects comprise approximately 80% of all VSDs, and are located in the subaortic region of the membranous septum. Such

defects are located near or under the septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve, and communicate with the left ventricle just below the aortic valve. These defects are commonly partially closed by a collection of tricuspid valve and membranous septal tissue, which gives an aneurysmal appearance to the septum.

### Conoventricular Defects

These defects involve the same area as perimembranous defects, but extend anteriorly and superiorly into the septum.

### Inlet or Canal-Type Defects

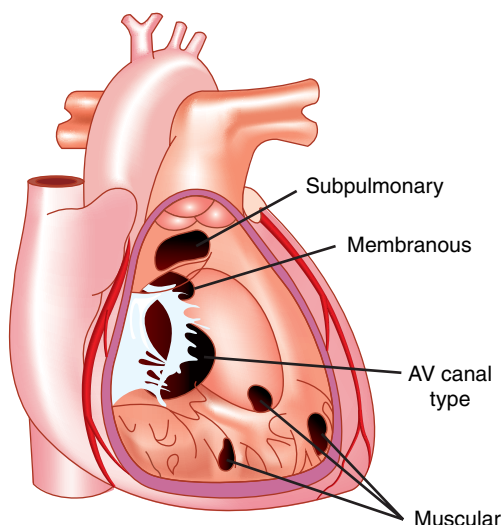
These defects involve the posterior septum near the atrioventricular (AV) valves.

### Muscular Defects

These defects are located in the lower trabecular septum, and may appear deceptively small on inspection from the right ventricular aspect of the septum due to heavy trabeculation. They may be apical, mid-muscular, anterior, or posterior.

## Physiology

A VSD is an example of a simple shunt. The size of the defect is the critical determinant of the magnitude of shunting. If the defect is small (restrictive shunt), flow through the defect will be limited and there will be a large pressure gradient across the defect. However, as the orifice becomes larger (approximating



**Figure 12.1** Different locations of ventricular septal defects. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

the size of the aortic valve orifice) and the pressure gradient across the orifice decreases, the magnitude and direction of shunting becomes more dependent on the relative resistances of the systemic and pulmonary vascular beds.

Because the ratio of pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) to systemic vascular resistance (SVR) is normally 1:10 to 1:20, VSDs generally result in the production of a left-to-right (L-R) shunt. In some instances, however, the PVR:SVR ratio may be higher, resulting in near-normal pulmonary blood flow or, in extreme cases, the production of a right-to-left (R-L) shunt.

The infant with a large VSD may have near-normal pulmonary blood flow as a result of high PVR present at birth. By the second week of life, the PVR begins to fall to near-normal levels and pulmonary blood flow increases dramatically. Continued decreases in PVR after birth may be delayed by the elevated left atrial pressure that accompanies increased pulmonary blood flow.

All patients with large, non-restrictive VSDs have elevated, often systemic or near-systemic, pulmonary artery pressures. As a

consequence, large VSDs predispose to the development of pulmonary artery hypertension (PAH) during the first few years of life due to exposure of the pulmonary vasculature to high flows and systemic blood pressures. The increases in PVR that accompany PAH will ultimately produce bidirectional and R-L shunts. Patients with advanced PAH and markedly increased PVR (Eisenmenger's complex) generally are not candidates for VSD closure, because closure will result in an enormous increase in right ventricle afterload and right ventricle afterload mismatch. In older patients with large VSDs and elevated pulmonary artery pressures, cardiac catheterization to measure PVR is necessary to distinguish high pulmonary blood flow into a pulmonary bed with normal or slightly elevated PVR (candidate for VSD closure) from pulmonary blood flow into a pulmonary bed with significantly elevated PVR (potentially not a candidate for closure). For this reason, large VSDs ( $Q_p:Q_s > 2:1$ ) are corrected early in childhood.

An increase in left atrial volume and pressure parallels the increase in pulmonary blood flow seen with a large VSD. The resultant pulmonary venous congestion increases the work of breathing, decreases pulmonary compliance, and increases airway resistance. All of these factors predispose to recurrent pulmonary infections. Left ventricular end-diastolic volumes are increased in parallel with the increase in pulmonary blood flow. Although the majority of L-R shunting across VSDs occurs during ventricular systole, significant diastolic and isovolumic shunting occurs in the presence of large VSDs to result in an increased right ventricular end-diastolic volume.

In VSDs with a large L-R shunt, systemic blood flow is maintained at the expense of a large volume load on both the right and left ventricles. This limits the capacity of the patient to meet increased cardiac output demands, and may result in pulmonary and systemic venous congestion at rest. The timing of surgery often is dictated by failure of medical therapy to control this congestion.

## Surgical Therapy

VSDs generally are closed with a patch via a variety of approaches, depending on their location. Most defects in the perimembranous and conoventricular septum are approachable through the right atrium and tricuspid valve. A small right ventriculotomy may be necessary to visualize the most superior aspect of a conoventricular defect. Subpulmonary or supracristal defects are usually approached via an incision in the right ventricle and proximal pulmonary artery. To avoid postoperative compromise of a small ventricle, with its poor compliance and limited capacity for tension development, a ventriculotomy to approach and correct VSDs should be avoided whenever possible. Less commonly, assessment and closure of some muscular defects will require a left ventriculotomy. Because a left ventriculotomy may seriously compromise myocardial function in the infant, palliation with pulmonary artery banding may be preferable to a left ventriculotomy for small infants. Non-operative device closure of muscular VSDs remote from atrioventricular or semilunar valves is possible in the cardiac catheterization laboratory.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Under guidance of fluoroscopy and echocardiography while avoiding sternotomy and cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), VSDs may be closed in the catheterization laboratory based on the location and size of the lesion. This approach can be associated with adverse events such as arrhythmia, device embolism, and vascular complications. More recently, a hybrid perventricular device closure of VSDs (muscular and premembranous) has been described which combines the advantages of both surgical and percutaneous approaches.

## Anesthetic Management

### Induction and Maintenance

As discussed previously, control of ventilation is the most reliable way to manipulate PVR. For infants and children without congestive heart failure (CHF), an inhalational induction is well tolerated. For neonates and patients with CHF, an intravenous induction with fentanyl or sufentanil will provide better hemodynamic stability. In particular, for patients with reactive pulmonary vasculature, high opioid doses will be useful in blunting increases in PVR associated with surgical stimulation. In the absence of intravenous access, intramuscular ketamine or gentle inhalation induction may be used, followed by placement of an intravenous catheter.

The anesthetic management goals are to: (i) maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output; (ii) avoid decreases in the PVR:SVR ratio to maintain systemic blood flow; and (iii) avoid large increases in the PVR:SVR ratio.

In instances in which a R-L shunt exists, ventilatory measures to decrease the PVR should be used. In addition, SVR must be maintained or increased. These measures will reduce the magnitude of the R-L shunt.

## Post-CPB Management

Closure of the VSD will prevent further exposure of the pulmonary vasculature to high flows and pressures. This usually will result in some immediate decrease in pulmonary artery pressures. For patients with small defects and patients with large VSDs in whom PAH has not yet developed, near-normal pulmonary artery pressures may result. In these patients, inotropic support post-CPB is rarely necessary. In fact, reduction in the large volume load on the left ventricle usually results in post-CPB hypertension. Direct vasodilators such as sodium

nitroprusside ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) or inodilators such as milrinone ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) may be necessary.

Pulmonary artery pressures and PVR will remain elevated in patients with underlying PAH. In addition, the pulmonary vasculature of these patients will remain hyper-responsive to vasoconstricting stimuli due to medial hypertrophy that accompanies PAH. Therapy to reduce PVR in the post-CPB period may be necessary for these patients to avoid right ventricle afterload mismatch.

Separation from CPB may be complicated by a variety of surgical problems. Inadequate closure of the VSD or the presence of an unrecognized VSD may prevent separation from CPB. Assessment of the presence and location of such defects in the operating room can be accomplished using transesophageal echocardiography. In addition, tricuspid

valve damage due to a difficult transatrial approach may produce tricuspid regurgitation. Patch closure of the VSD may create subaortic or subpulmonic obstruction. Because the atrioventricular node and the bundle of His are often near the area where the surgeon is working, transient heart block may occur. Temporary epicardial A-V sequential pacing may be necessary to terminate CPB.

### Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patients with repaired VSD can present for non-cardiac surgery with residual ventricular dysfunction and PAH. They may also suffer from dysrhythmias and conduction defects (e.g., right bundle branch block, ventricular arrhythmias, and heart block).

## 13

### Atrioventricular Canal Defects

#### Introduction

Atrioventricular canal defects (AVCs) or endocardial cushion defects constitute 4–5% of congenital heart diseases (CHDs).

#### Anatomy

Embryologically, there are four endocardial cushions that contribute to the development of the lower ostium primum portion of the atrial septum and the upper, posterior inlet portion of the interventricular septum (IVS) where the atrioventricular valves (AVs) insert. The cushions also contribute to the tissue that forms the septal leaflets of the mitral and tricuspid valves. Therefore, cushion defects, or AVC defects, include abnormalities in all of these structures. The terminology of these lesions can be confusing and is summarized as follows (Figure 13.1).

#### Partial AVC

This is an ostium primum atrial septal defect (ASD) in association with a cleft mitral valve. There are two separate AV (mitral and tricuspid) annuli. No inlet ventricular septal defect (VSD) is present.

#### Transitional AVC

This is an ostium primum ASD, common AV valve orifice, common antero-superior and postero-inferior bridging leaflets with dense

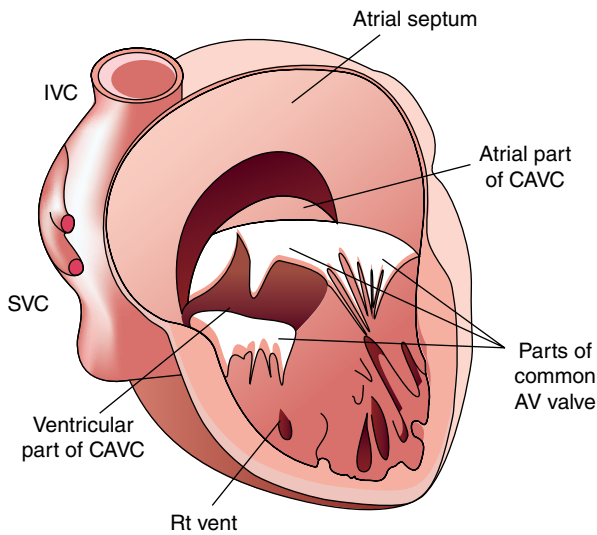
chordal attachments to the crest of the IVS creating functionally separate mitral and tricuspid valves. There is a very small or absent inlet VSD.

#### Complete AVC (CAVC)

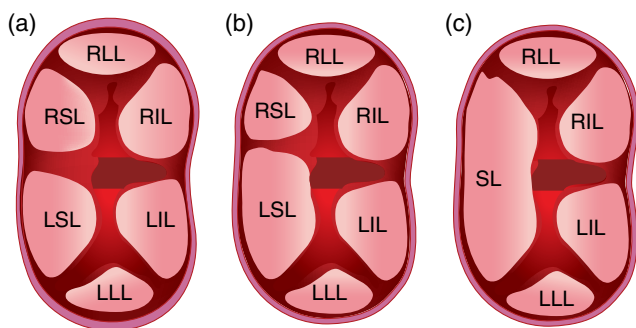
This is an ostium primum ASD, common AV valve orifice, common antero-superior and postero-inferior bridging leaflets with varying chordal attachments to the crest of the IVS. There is a moderate to large inlet VSD.

The types of chordal attachments are summarized as follows (Figure 13.2):

- Rastelli A: The antero-superior bridging leaflet is effectively divided into left (mitral) and right (tricuspid) antero-superior leaflets by chordal attachments to the crest of the IVS. There is also usually an attachment of the postero-inferior leaflets to the crest of the IVS. The majority (70%) of CAVCs are of this type.
- Rastelli B: There are chordal attachments from the right side of the IVS (right ventricular septal papillary muscle) to left side of the antero-superior bridging leaflet. There are no chordal attachments to the crest of the IVS.
- Rastelli C: There are no chordal attachments of the antero-superior bridging leaflet to any portion of the IVS; there is usually an attachment to a right ventricular free wall papillary muscle. This creates what appears to be a free-floating common AV valve. This type is seen most commonly in conjunction with other lesions such as tetralogy of Fallot (TOF).



**Figure 13.1** Components of a complete atrioventricular canal defect. AV, atrioventricular; CAVC, complete atrioventricular canal; IVC, inferior vena cava; RT vent, right ventricle; SVC, superior vena cava. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.



**Figure 13.2** Types of complete atrioventricular canal. (a) Rastelli type A; (b) Rastelli type B; (c) Rastelli type C. LIL and RIL, left and right inferior (posterior) leaflets; LLL and RLL, left and right lateral leaflets; LSL and RSL, left and right superior (anterior) leaflets; SL, superior anterior bridging leaflet. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

**Unbalanced AVC**

In this lesion there is relative hypoplasia of either the right ventricle (left dominant) or left ventricle (right dominant) and the corresponding outflow tract.

**Physiology**

These defects can result in communication between all four heart chambers, as well as in abnormalities of the mitral and tricuspid valves. Because the orifice between the four chambers is large, these lesions tend to produce dependent simple shunts. As with large VSDs, this results in:

- the production of a large left-to-right physiologic shunt;

- an increased pulmonary blood flow;
- the transmission of systemic pressures to the right ventricle and pulmonary arteries; and
- volume overloading of the right and left ventricles.

As with large VSDs, CAVC defects predispose to the early development of pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH). This may increase the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR):systemic vascular resistance (SVR) ratio such that a bidirectional or right-to-left (R-L) shunt develops. This is a particular concern for patients with Trisomy 21, who are prone to the early development of PAH. These defects are generally repaired at about 3 months of age when there is sufficient maturation of AV valve tissue to facilitate a good surgical repair, and before the



development of pulmonary vascular changes and PAH. In some CAVC defects, the presence of severe mitral insufficiency results in a regurgitation of left ventricular blood directly into the right atrium (left ventricle to right atrium shunt). This increases the left-to-right (L-R) shunt. In addition, mitral regurgitation increases the volume work of the left ventricle.

In children presenting for repair at a later age, in those without symptoms of congestive heart failure (CHF) and in those with episodes of cyanosis, the possibility that PVR is elevated may be investigated with a preoperative cardiac catheterization to directly determine PVR.

## Surgical Therapy

The repair of these defects involves:

- Septation of the common AV valve tissue into two separate competent, non-stenotic tricuspid and mitral valves.
- Closure of the ostium primum ASD.
- Closure of the inlet VSD.

This can usually be accomplished using a one-patch technique wherein a single patch is used to close both the VSD and ASD, and the reconstructed AV valves are re-suspended by sutures to the patch. When the VSD is large and extends to other areas of the septum (as in TOF), two patches (atrial and ventricular) may be necessary. When the inlet VSD component is small, the AV valve tissue can be sutured down to the crest of the ventricular septum, essentially closing the VSD. A patch

is then sutured to the crest of the ventricular septum and is used to close the ASD.

## Anesthetic Management

### Induction and Maintenance

Anesthetic management is similar to that for large VSDs (Table 13.1). However, the child with CAVC also may have severe mitral regurgitation and a highly reactive pulmonary vasculature. Because control of ventilation is the most reliable way to manipulate PVR, a prompt and reliable control of the airway at induction is important. The goal should be to use a reduced  $\text{FiO}_2$  and to maintain  $\text{PaCO}_2$  at 35–40 mmHg. Despite aggressive medical management with diuretics and ACE inhibitors, many of these patients present for surgery with pulmonary vascular congestion and poor lung compliance. This may make mask ventilation without insufflation of the stomach with air difficult. Inhalational induction should be reserved for infants and children with small defects, no mitral regurgitation, and no PAH. Cardiac reserve often is limited or exhausted in patients with large shunts and high pulmonary blood flow. Moreover, the additional volume load imposed on the left ventricle by mitral regurgitation will further limit cardiac reserve.

An intravenous induction and maintenance with fentanyl will provide better hemodynamic stability. In particular, for patients with a reactive pulmonary vasculature, high doses of fentanyl will be useful in blunting increases in PVR associated with

**Table 13.1** Anesthetic management goals for surgical repair of CAVC.

Intraoperatively	Post-CPB
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain heart rate, contractility and preload to maintain cardiac output.</li> <li>• Avoid decreases in PVR:SVR ratio.</li> <li>• Avoid large increases in PVR:SVR ratio to avoid an increase in R-L shunt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Maintain age-appropriate heart rate and sinus rhythm.</li> <li>• Reduce PVR, especially in cases of PAH. Consider nitric oxide.</li> <li>• Inotropic support (e.g., dopamine 5–10 <math>\mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{min}^{-1}</math>, milrinone 0.5–1 <math>\mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{min}^{-1}</math>).</li> </ul>

surgical stimulation. High doses of fentanyl will also blunt stimulation-induced increases in the SVR, which will increase the mitral regurgitant fraction.

## Post-CPB Management

Closure of the defects will prevent further exposure of the pulmonary vasculature to high blood flows and pressures. This usually will result in some immediate decrease in pulmonary artery pressures. In patients with small defects and patients with large defects in whom PAH has not yet developed, near-normal pulmonary artery pressures may result. However, the pulmonary artery pressures and PVR will remain elevated in patients with underlying PAH. In addition, the pulmonary vasculature of these patients (especially patients with Trisomy 21) will remain hyper-responsive to vasoconstricting stimuli due to medial hypertrophy that accompanies PAH. Therapy to reduce PVR in the post-CPB period may be necessary for these patients to avoid right ventricular afterload mismatch.

Separation from CPB may be complicated by a variety of surgical problems. Inadequate closure of the defects or persistent mitral regurgitation may prevent

separation from CPB. An assessment of the presence and location of such defects in the OR can be accomplished using transesophageal echocardiography (TEE). The presence of large V-waves on the pressure trace obtained from a left atrial catheter may be helpful in assessing the degree of mitral regurgitation, whereas TEE will provide definitive information. Because the AV node is near the area of patch placement, heart block may occur. Temporary epicardial A-V sequential pacing may be necessary to terminate CPB.

In patients with unbalanced canal defects, restrictive diastolic function and reduced ventricular chamber size and stroke volume may be limiting factors in maintaining cardiac output. In these patients the appropriate heart rate is a balance between the competing priorities of reduced diastolic filling time and the requirement for an increased heart rate in the setting of reduced stroke volume.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patients with repaired CAVC may present with residual mitral valve disease, pulmonary hypertension and right ventricle dysfunction and arrhythmias (heart block, sinus node dysfunction).

## 14

### Double Outlet Right Ventricle

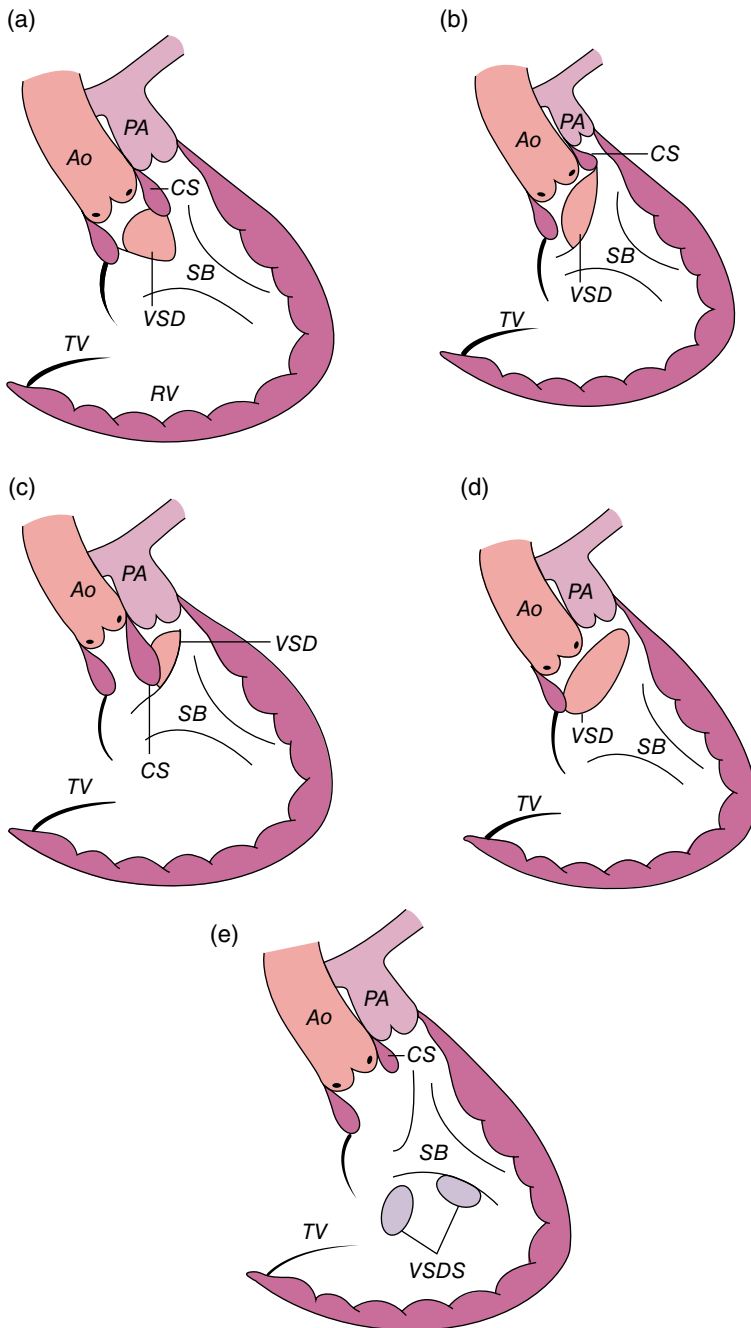
#### Introduction

Double outlet right ventricle (DORV), a clinically significant congenital heart defect, occurs in 1–3% of individuals with congenital heart defects. It is associated with trisomy 13 and 18 but only rarely with chromosome 22q11 deletions.

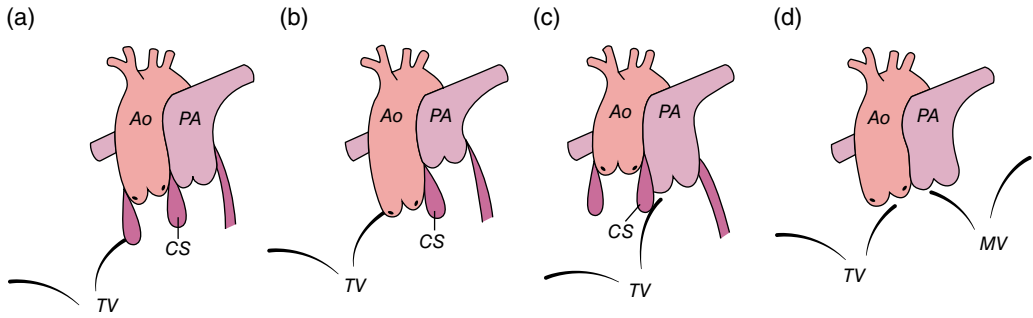
#### Anatomy

In the Congenital Heart Surgery Nomenclature and Database Project, the consensus definition of DORV is “...DORV is a type of ventriculoarterial connection in which both great vessels arise either entirely or predominantly from the right ventricle.” It results from a failure of counterclockwise rotation of the distal conus and a leftward shift of the conoventricular septum. It is almost always associated with a ventricular septal defect (VSD). In DORV it is generally not the position of the VSD that is variable; rather, it is the rotation of the great arteries driven by the conal development that is variable. Given the morphologic and physiologic diversity of DORV, determining the following anatomic features is important in the evaluation of DORV:

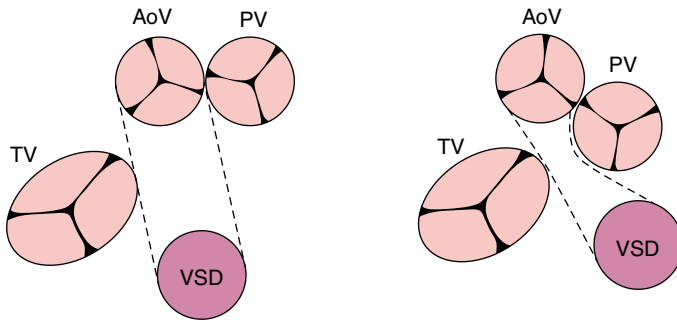
- VSD size and its relationship to the semilunar valves (Figure 14.1). The VSD is generally cradled within the limbs of the septomarginal trabeculation or septal band with the relationship to the great arteries described as subaortic (50%) subpulmonary (30%), or doubly committed (10%). Atrioventricular (AV) canal type VSDs are more remote from the great arteries with the relationship described as uncommitted (10%).
- Conal morphology (Figure 14.2). In the normal heart the infundibulum or conus is a right ventricular structure, a fibromuscular tube that separates the tricuspid valve (AV valve) from the pulmonary valve (semilunar valve). In DORV there may be bilateral conus, subaortic conus with absent subpulmonary conus, subpulmonary conus with absent subaortic conus, or bilaterally absent conus. The size and location of conus is a determinant of the distance from the VSD to each semilunar valve, and of the distance between the AV valve and the semilunar valve. This is important because the width of an intracardiac baffle connecting the left ventricle to the aorta via a VSD is limited to the distance between the tricuspid valve (TV) and the pulmonary valve. In order for the baffle not to be the source of subaortic stenosis, the distance between the tricuspid valve and the pulmonary valve must be adequate.
- Relationship of the great arteries to each other (Figure 14.3). The great artery trunks commonly have a side-by-side orientation but may occasionally have a normal, spiraled orientation.
- Associated cardiac lesions, including outflow tract obstruction, AV valve anomalies, and ventricular hypoplasia.
- Coronary artery anatomy.



**Figure 14.1** Different variants of double-outlet right ventricle (DORV). (a) DORV with a subaortic ventricular septal defect (VSD) where the conal septum is attached to the antero-superior limb of the septal band. (b) DORV with a subaortic VSD and pulmonary stenosis secondary to significant anterior attachment of the conal septum to the antero-superior limb of the septal band. (c) DORV with a subpulmonary VSD where the conal septum is attached to the right ventriculo-infundibular fold. (d) DORV with a doubly committed VSD and absent conal septum. (e) DORV with a remote VSD. Ao, aorta; CS, conal septum; PA, pulmonary artery; RV, right ventricle; SB, septal band; TV, tricuspid valve; VSD, ventricular septal defect. Reproduced from Lopez, L., Geva, T. (2016) Double Outlet Ventricle, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).



**Figure 14.2** Four categories of conal morphology. (a) Bilateral conus; (b) absent subaortic conus; (c) absent subpulmonary conus; (d) bilaterally absent conus. Ao, aorta; CS, conal septum; MV, mitral valve; PA, pulmonary artery; TV, tricuspid valve. Reproduced from Lopez, L., Geva, T. (2016) *Double Outlet Ventricle, in Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).



**Figure 14.3** Illustration of how the distance from the tricuspid valve (TV) to the pulmonary valve (PV) can affect the potential baffle pathway from the left ventricle (LV) to the aorta. AoV, aortic valve; VSD, ventricular septal defect. Reproduced from Lopez, L., Geva, T. (2016) *Double-Outlet Ventricle in Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

## Physiology

The pathophysiology of DORV is determined by the magnitude and direction of intra-cardiac physiologic shunting which in turn is determined by the interplay of:

- VSD size.
- VSD relationship to the great arteries.
- The presence of right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT) or left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction.
- Pulmonary vascular resistance.
- Associated cardiovascular anomalies.

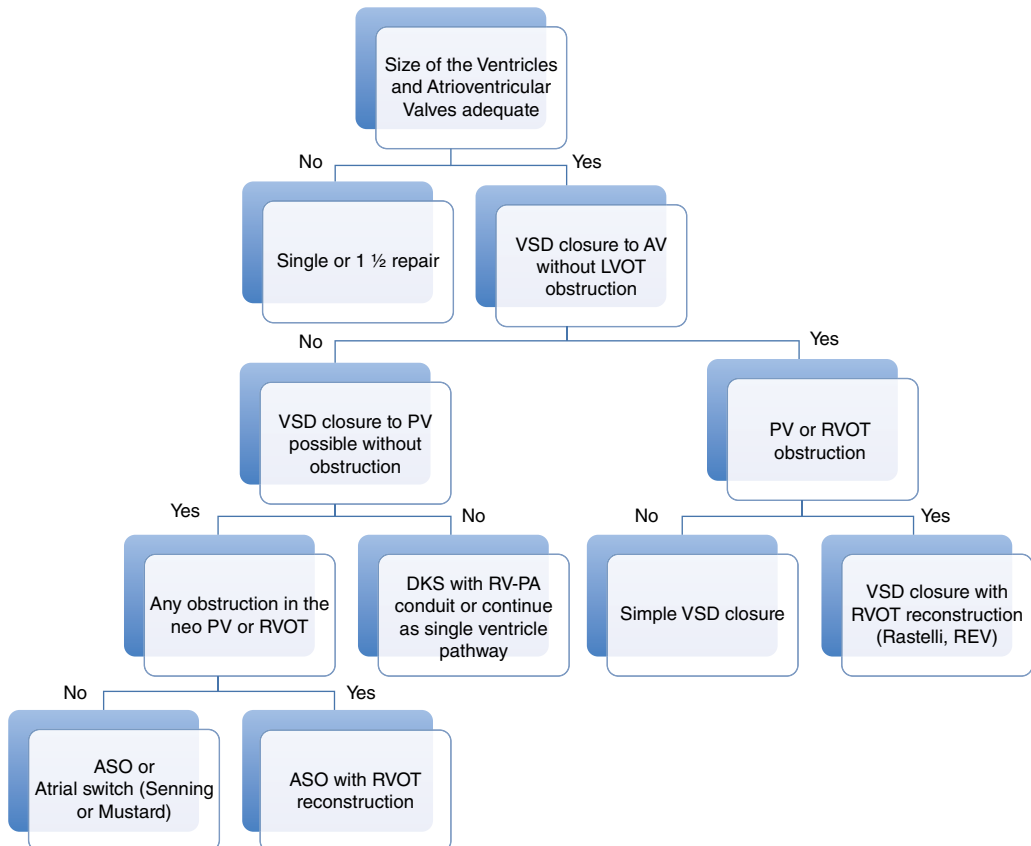
The common pathophysiologic variants are summarized:

- VSD physiology: DORV with a large subaortic VSD and no pulmonary stenosis.
- Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) physiology: DORV with a subaortic or doubly committed VSD and pulmonary stenosis.
- Transposition of the great arteries (TGA) physiology: DORV with a subpulmonary VSD. This physiology is seen in the Taussig–Bing anomaly where there is a subpulmonary VSD, side by side great vessels, and bilateral conus.

- Non-committed VSD physiology: remotely located VSD commonly associated with AV canal defects and/or heterotaxy syndrome, where the distance from the VSD to the aortic valve or pulmonary valve is greater than the aortic diameter. These patients have a physiology similar to that of patients with complete AV canal defects.
- Single-ventricle physiology: DORV with mitral atresia or significant ventricular hypoplasia, often in association with an unbalanced AV canal defect and/or heterotaxy syndrome.
- Intracardiac baffle from the left ventricle to the aortic valve via the VSD, with or without resection of the conal septum while ensuring unobstructed intracardiac flow from the right ventricle to the pulmonary artery.
- Intracardiac baffle from the left ventricle to the aortic valve, with or without resection of the conal septum as well as a RVOT reconstruction with options such as trans-annular patch augmentation, placement of a homograft or conduit from the right ventricle to the pulmonary artery (Rastelli procedure), or direct anastomosis of the pulmonary trunk to the right ventricle free wall (réparation à l'étage ventriculaire known as the REV or Lecompte procedure).
- Intracardiac baffle from the left ventricle to the pulmonary valve in conjunction with an arterial switch operation ± aortic arch reconstruction.

## Surgical Therapy

Surgical options for DORV include the following broad approaches, as dictated by the complex relationship between the ventricles, VSD, and great arteries (Figure 14.4):



**Figure 14.4** Surgical management for patient with double-outlet right ventricle (DORV). See text for details of repairs.

- Intracardiac baffle to both aortic and pulmonary valves in conjunction with a Damus–Kaye–Stansel (DKS) anastomosis and a right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit (Yasui procedure) can be used to create a biventricular circulation when an unobstructed pathway from the VSD to either the pulmonary or aortic outflow tract alone cannot be created.
- Single-ventricle palliation.
- Most patients with a DORV undergo surgical intervention within the first year of life. Transthoracic echocardiography provides the information necessary for surgical planning in all but the most complex anatomy, in which case cardiac magnetic resonance imaging or cardiac catheterization may be necessary. Surgical management of DORV with non-committed VSD physiology is very challenging, since long intracardiac baffles with multiple potential points of obstruction are often necessary.

## Anesthetic Management

### Induction and Maintenance

Anesthetic management is based on the physiologic variant of DORV (TOF, TGA, single ventricle) present. The anesthetic management of each lesion is described in detail in Chapters 20, 23, and 24, respectively.

### Post-CPB Management

Post-CPB management is described in Chapters 20, 23, and 24. Given the complexity of many of the biventricular repairs, transesophageal echocardiography, epicardial echocardiography and determination of  $Q_p:Q_s$  by blood gas oximetry may be necessary to rule out residual lesions, particularly residual VSD and LVOT obstruction, and baffle obstruction.

## 15

## Truncus Arteriosus

### Introduction

Truncus arteriosus (TA) occurs in approximately 1–4% of patients with congenital heart defects.

### Anatomy

Truncus arteriosus is characterized by a single great vessel arising from the base of the heart and giving rise to the pulmonary, coronary, and systemic arteries. There is a single semilunar valve, which is usually abnormal, and invariably a large (non-restrictive) ventricular septal defect (VSD) is present. The truncus usually straddles this large VSD. The VSD is of the conoventricular type, similar to that seen in tetralogy of Fallot (TOF). The truncal valve is tricuspid in 60–70% of patients, but multiple cusps can be seen and the valve itself may be regurgitant (50%) or stenotic (30%). Extracardiac anomalies are seen in approximately 30% of patients. TA is classified based on the origin of the pulmonary arteries; typically, there are two classifications (Figure 15.1). Collett and Edwards classified TA into four major types based on the sources of pulmonary blood supply:

- Type I: a short main pulmonary artery segment gives rise to both branch pulmonary arteries.
- Type II: both branch pulmonary arteries arise from the common arterial trunk

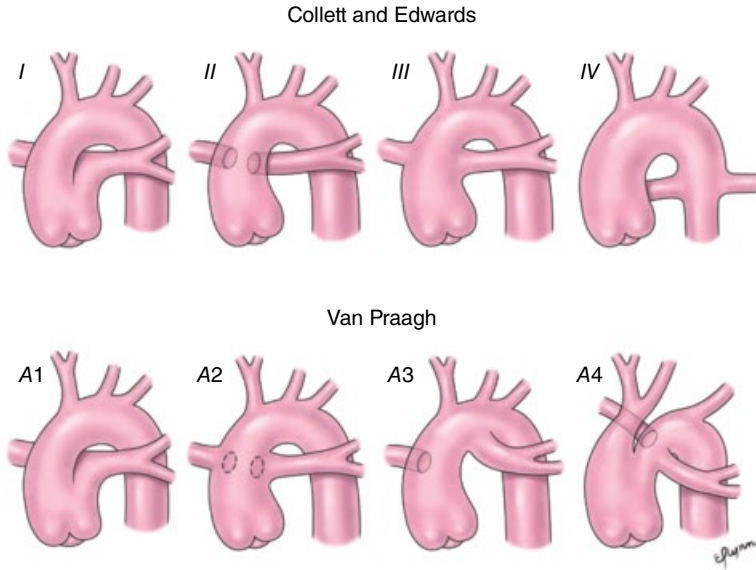
adjacent to one another, with a rim of truncal tissue between them.

- Type III: the branch pulmonary arteries arise from either side of the truncus and are somewhat remote from one another.
- Type IV (previously termed pseudo-truncus): the pulmonary circulation is supplied by collateral vessels from the descending aorta. This anomaly is considered a form of TOF with pulmonary atresia rather than TA.

The classification of Van Praagh and Van Praagh, as devised in 1965, is as follows:

- Type A1: the branch pulmonary arteries arise from a short main pulmonary artery.
- Type A2: the branch pulmonary arteries arise directly from the arterial trunk through separate orifices.
- Type A3: only one branch pulmonary artery arises from the ascending segment of the arterial trunk. Collateral vessels usually supply the contralateral lung.
- Type A4: truncus arteriosus with aortic arch hypoplasia, coarctation or interruption (usually type B interruption distal to the left common carotid artery). In this anatomic variant there is usually a well-formed main pulmonary artery and a small ascending aorta.
- The associated cardiac lesions include right-sided aortic arch (33%), interrupted aortic arch (19% of type IV), left superior vena cava (SVC) (12%), and partial anomalous pulmonary venous return (PAPVR) (1%).





**Figure 15.1** Classification of truncus arteriosus. Upper panel: Collett and Edwards' system. Lower panel: Van Praagh and Van Praagh's system. Reproduced from Slesnick TC, Sachdeva R, Kreeger JR, Border WL. (2016) Truncus Arteriosus and Aortopulmonary Window, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

## Physiology

Truncus arteriosus is a simple shunt with a common chamber and single-ventricle physiology. The large (non-restrictive) VSD allows equalization of pressures in the right and left ventricles. As a result, there is bidirectional shunting and complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in a functionally common ventricular chamber. This blood is then ejected into the truncal root, which gives rise to the pulmonary, systemic, and coronary circulations.  $Q_p:Q_s$  is determined by the ratio of pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) to systemic vascular resistance (SVR). In TA, as in all single-ventricle physiology lesions, the pulmonary and systemic circulations are supplied in parallel from a single vessel, and increases in flow to one circulatory system are likely to produce reductions in flow to the other. Under normal circumstances, as the PVR decreases following birth the balance of PVR and SVR is such that pulmonary blood flow is high and the patient with TA has symptoms of congestive heart failure (CHF) with

mild cyanosis. After the cardiac reserve has been exhausted, further decreases in PVR will increase pulmonary blood flow at the expense of systemic and coronary perfusion. This will produce a progressive metabolic acidosis. If PVR is increased relative to SVR, systemic blood flow will increase at the expense of pulmonary blood flow and severe hypoxemia will result. This second scenario is particularly likely in older patients in whom pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) has developed in response to high pulmonary blood flow and the transmission of systemic arterial pressures to the pulmonary vasculature. Finally, if truncal valve insufficiency is present, this will impose an additional volume load on the ventricles.

## Surgical Therapy

Because of the risk of early development of PAH from high pulmonary blood flow and pressure, prompt surgical intervention is recommended. A definitive repair of TA

requires patch closure of the VSD, detachment of the pulmonary arteries from the truncus, and establishment of right ventricular-to-pulmonary artery continuity with a valved homograft. The right ventricular-to-pulmonary artery conduit requires placement of the proximal end of the conduit over a ventriculotomy in the right ventricle free wall. The truncal valves must be assessed at the time of surgery. In some instances, valve repair or replacement is necessary to avoid valvular insufficiency or stenosis. Considering the problems with valve replacement in a growing child, valvuloplasty is preferred over valve replacement. The valved conduit eventually will require replacement as the child grows.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Most patients with a TA undergo surgical intervention based entirely on information obtained from transthoracic echocardiography.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

Management principles are based on those described in Chapter 24:

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. A reduction in cardiac output will compromise systemic perfusion, despite a relatively high pulmonary blood flow. A decrease in cardiac output will also reduce systemic venous saturation. As with all mixing lesions, a reduction in systemic venous saturation will reduce arterial oxygen saturation.
- For patients without PAH, avoid decreases in the PVR:SVR ratio. The increase in pulmonary blood flow that accompanies a reduced PVR:SVR ratio is likely to occur at the expense of systemic and coronary

blood flow. Ventilate with a reduced  $F_iO_2$  (<30%) and maintain  $PCO_2$  at 35–40 mmHg.

- For patients with severe CHF, inotropic support of the ventricles in combination with normocarbica or slight hypercarbica to reduce pulmonary blood flow may be necessary.
- For patients with PAH and reduced pulmonary blood flow; ventilatory interventions to reduce the PVR will be necessary. A high PVR will increase systemic and coronary blood flow at the expense of pulmonary blood flow, resulting in hypoxemia.

### Induction and Maintenance

The neonate with TA often will be intubated and ventilated, requiring inotropic support to manage CHF due to high pulmonary blood flow. Cardiac reserve is very limited due to ventricular volume overload. Subendocardial perfusion will be compromised by the low aortic diastolic blood pressure that results from diastolic flow into the lower-resistance pulmonary vascular bed. Consequently, ventricular fibrillation can be seen during routine maneuvers, such as opening the pericardium in the pre-cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) period. Ventilatory control of PVR will help reduce pulmonary blood flow and prevent systemic and coronary hypoperfusion. Patients with TA are unlikely to tolerate the myocardial depression associated with inhalational anesthetics. Fentanyl in high doses, combined with a muscle relaxant, will provide hemodynamic stability without myocardial depression.

### Post-CPB Management

Post-CPB management may be complicated by ventricular failure. Left ventricular volume overload may occur secondary to truncal valve insufficiency. Right ventricular systolic dysfunction may result from a right ventricular afterload mismatch due to the high pulmonary vascular resistance in

patients with PAH; the right ventriculotomy required for conduit placement; and poor protection of the right ventricle during CPB.

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate (preferably sinus rhythm) at an age-appropriate rate. Cardiac output is likely to be more heart-rate-dependent during the post-CPB period.
- Reduce PVR when necessary through ventilatory interventions.
- Inotropic support of the left and right ventricles may be necessary for the reasons addressed previously. Dopamine ( $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) intravenously is useful in this instance as it provides potent inotropic support without increasing PVR.

## 16

## Total Anomalous Pulmonary Venous Return

### Introduction

The incidence of total anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR) ranges from 0.6 to 1.2 per 10 000 live births. Among patients born with congenital heart disease (CHD), the incidence of TAPVR ranges between 0.7% and 1.5%. It is the fifth most common cause of cyanotic CHD.

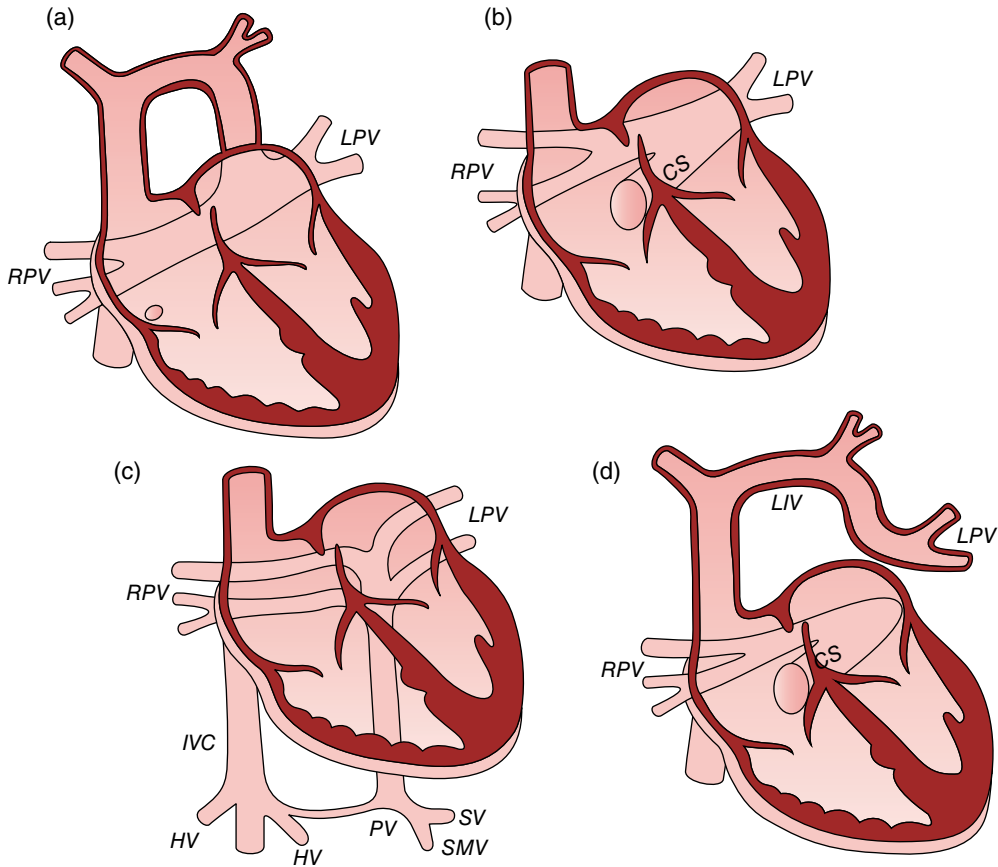
TAPVR arises from a failure of the left atrium to connect the pulmonary venous plexus, which results in the retention of connections to the primitive cardinal and umbilicovitelline drainage systems. The anatomic variants of TAPVR are dependent upon which connections are retained. The cardinal venous system provides connections to the innominate vein, right atrium, superior vena cava, or azygous vein, and the umbilicovitelline system to the portal or hepatic vein, or inferior vena cava (IVC).

### Anatomy

Total anomalous pulmonary venous return is characterized by drainage of all of the pulmonary veins into the systemic venous system rather than directly into the left atrium. In this lesion there is usually a single common pulmonary venous confluence with no direct connection to the left atrium. The pulmonary vein confluence then drains into the systemic venous circulation via one of the following four types of drainage patterns (Figure 16.1):

- Supracardiac (type 1): in 46% of patients, drainage of the pulmonary vein confluence is into a supracardiac structure. Most commonly, drainage is to the superior vena cava (SVC) via a vertical vein that connects the pulmonary vein confluence with the innominate vein, which then empties into the SVC.
- Intracardiac (type 2): in 24% of patients, drainage of the pulmonary vein confluence is directly into the right atrium via the coronary sinus.
- Infracardiac (type 3): in 22% of patients, drainage is into an infracardiac structure such as the IVC, portal vein, or hepatic vein. A vertical pulmonary vein passes through the esophageal hiatus of the diaphragm to connect the pulmonary vein confluence to one of these infracardiac vessels.
- Mixed (type 4): in 8% of patients, pulmonary venous drainage is some combination of types 1, 2, and 3.

In general, the greater the distance the vertical connecting vein travels, the greater the likelihood that this pathway will be stenotic or compressed and that there will be pulmonary venous obstruction. For this reason, infracardiac drainage is most commonly associated with pulmonary venous obstruction. Some patients with supracardiac TAPVR have compression of the vertical vein between the left main stem bronchus and left pulmonary artery. As the pulmonary artery pressure rises due to the obstruction of pulmonary venous return, the connecting vein



**Figure 16.1** Total anomalous pulmonary venous connection. (a) Supracardiac; (b) cardiac; (c) infracardiac; (d) mixed connections. Reproduced from Brown, D. (2016) Pulmonary venous anomalies, in: *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva), Wiley-Blackwell.

may become further compressed between the left main stem bronchus and left pulmonary artery, leading to near-complete compression of the connecting vein. This has been described as a 'hemodynamic vice'.

## Physiology

The delivery of all pulmonary venous blood to the right atrium results in a large physiologic left-to-right (L-R) shunt. There is complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in the right atrium. There must be an anatomic right-to-left (R-L) shunt and delivery of effective systemic blood flow if

there is to be filling of the left heart and survival outside the uterus. Normally, an atrial septal defect (ASD) or patent foramen ovale (PFO) exists as the communication with the left heart. The magnitude and direction of shunting across the ASD or PFO is determined by the principles of simple shunting. Normally, a non-restrictive or mildly restrictive atrial level communication exists in these patients. The delivery of blood across the atrial septum can be impeded by the poor compliance of the left atrium and left ventricle, as these structures tend to be small due to reduced blood flow to the left side of the heart *in utero*. As a result, in the absence of any obstruction, neonates will have a  $Q_p:Q_s$

close to 1:1. As the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) falls following birth there will be a preferential delivery of the mixed systemic and pulmonary venous blood to the pulmonary circuit. The pulmonary artery pressures will be near systemic because, although the PVR is near-normal, the  $Q_p:Q_s$  will be high (>2-3:1).

Compression or stenoses along the vertical vein pathway will produce an obstructed TAPVR, leading to pulmonary venous hypertension, an elevated PVR, and systemic or suprasystemic right ventricular and pulmonary artery (PA) pressures. Some of these patients may also develop pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) *in utero*. In addition, pulmonary edema may occur, further elevating the PVR, much as it does with mitral stenosis. These patients have a small heart and congested lung fields on chest radiography.

The cardiac output can be severely compromised in these patients. Systemic or suprasystemic right ventricular pressures will result in a leftward septal shift that ‘pancakes’ the left ventricle, thereby further reducing the compliance of the small left ventricle. This will impede the delivery of blood across the atrial septum to the left ventricle. There is likely to be a right ventricle afterload mismatch with right ventricular distension and tricuspid regurgitation. The systemic cardiac output will be largely dependent on a physiologic R-L shunt across the ductus arteriosus supplied by a failing right ventricle.

These patients will be hypoxemic because all the determinates of  $SaO_2$  with complete mixing will be reduced:

- Pulmonary edema will induce intrapulmonary shunt and V/Q mismatch leading to low  $SpvO_2$ .
- $Q_p:Q_s$  will be reduced by the presence of a high PVR.
- Low cardiac output will reduce  $SvO_2$ .

Efforts to increase pulmonary blood flow in these patients will only worsen the pulmonary edema, and inhaled pulmonary

vasodilators (e.g., NO) are clearly contraindicated. In patients with severe pulmonary venous obstruction leading to suprasystemic right ventricular and PA pressures, ductal patency with R-L shunting is necessary to maintain cardiac output because the left ventricle is pancaked and underfilled. In patients with less severe obstruction and subsystemic right ventricular and PA pressures, ductal flow will be bidirectional or L-R. In these patients ductal patency may exacerbate pulmonary edema. Patients with obstructed TAPVR present at birth with hypoxemia and poor systemic perfusion. In many cases there is an ongoing metabolic acidosis and evidence of end-organ (hepatic and renal) dysfunction. Obstructed TAPVR is a surgical emergency, one of the few remaining in the era of prostaglandin  $E_1$  ( $PGE_1$ ) therapy.

## Surgical Therapy

Definitive repair involves anastomosis of the pulmonary venous confluence to the posterior wall of the left atrium, ligation of the vertical vein, and closure of the ASD.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. Decreases in cardiac output will reduce systemic venous saturation. In a complete mixing lesion, this will reduce arterial saturation.
- For patients with TAPVR and pulmonary venous obstruction, emergency surgery is necessary. Efforts to increase pulmonary blood flow through ventilatory interventions and pulmonary vasodilators will worsen pulmonary edema.
- For patients with increased pulmonary blood flow, decreases in the PVR:SVR ratio should be avoided. The increase in pulmonary blood flow that accompanies a reduced PVR:SVR

ratio necessitates an increase in cardiac output to maintain systemic blood flow.

- For patients with increased pulmonary blood flow and right ventricular volume overload, ventilatory interventions should be used to increase the PVR, reduce pulmonary blood flow, and decrease the volume load on the right ventricle.

### Induction and Maintenance

Neonates with pulmonary venous obstruction generally arrive in the operating room intubated, ventilated, and on inotropic support. These patients are best anesthetized with a high-dose opioid technique using fentanyl or sufentanil. Older patients without obstruction and compensated right ventricular volume overload may be candidates for an inhalational induction. Patients with TAPVR, particularly those with venous obstruction, have a highly reactive pulmonary vasculature. High doses of fentanyl and sufentanil will be useful for blunting increases in PVR associated with surgical stimulation.

### Post-CPB Management

#### Goals

- Maintain heart rate (preferably sinus rhythm) at an age-appropriate rate. Cardiac output is likely to be more heart-rate-dependent during the post-CPB period.
- In the presence of postoperative pulmonary venous obstruction, efforts to increase pulmonary blood flow may worsen pulmonary edema. Surgical revision may be necessary.
- For patients with PAH and reactive pulmonary vasculature:
  - blunting of stress-induced increases in PVR with opioids is warranted;
  - ventilatory interventions to reduce PVR and use of selective pulmonary vasodilators such as NO are warranted.
- Inotropic support of the right ventricle may be necessary, even in the face of

aggressive therapy to reduce PVR. Dopamine ( $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) is useful because it provides potent inotropic support without increasing the PVR. In the absence of systemic hypotension, milrinone ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) can be considered.

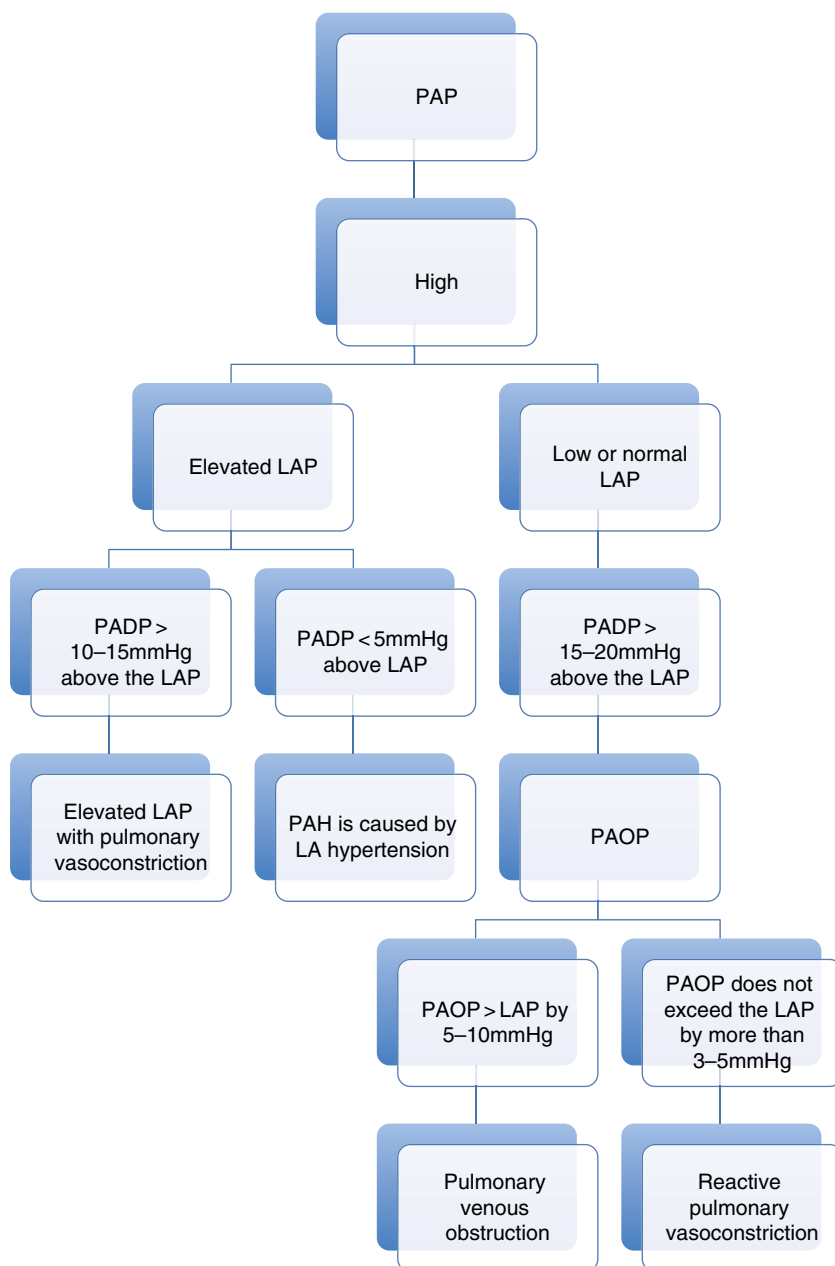
Right ventricular and PA hypertension is the most common problem encountered following CPB. This may be the result of one or more of the following:

- Residual pulmonary venous obstruction may exist due to the technical difficulty of constructing a non-restrictive surgical anastomosis.
- In the presence of a non-restrictive surgical anastomosis, an appropriate cardiac output may produce left atrial hypertension due to the presence of a small, non-compliant left atrium and left ventricle, or left ventricular dysfunction.
- Reactive pulmonary vasoconstriction (pre-capillary) may cause labile increases in PVR.
- Pre-existing PAH.

The use of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) and surgically placed PA and left atrial lines is helpful in sorting out these etiologies (Figure 16.2). The PA line can be advanced and 'wedged' to determine the pulmonary artery occlusion pressure. TEE is valuable in assessing the patency of the pulmonary venous to left atrial anastomosis, and in assessing ventricular function. In some institutions epicardial echocardiography is preferred in neonates and infants given concern that the TEE probe in the esophagus may result in compression of the left atrium and pulmonary venous confluence to the detriment of hemodynamics.

### Long-Term Outcomes

Following a successful surgical repair, medical or catheterization interventions are normally not needed. A subset of children with repaired TAPVR develop restenosis of the



**Figure 16.2** Etiologies of pulmonary hypertension. LAP, left atrial pressure; PADP, pulmonary artery diastolic pressure; PAH, pulmonary artery hypertension; PAOP, pulmonary artery occlusion pressure; PAP, pulmonary arterial pressure.

pulmonary vein anastomosis site and may require reoperation in the form of a ‘sutureless repair,’ wherein the atrial wall is sutured to the pericardium in a suture line remote from the divided edge of the pulmonary

veins. Some children develop a form of progressive pulmonary vein stenosis proximal to the anastomosis site that can only be remedied with catheter-based balloon dilation and stenting.



## 17

## Left Ventricular Outflow Tract Obstruction

### Introduction

Several categories of congenital left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction exist, including valvular aortic stenosis, subaortic stenosis, and supraaortic stenosis.

### Anatomy

Valvular aortic stenosis is most commonly caused by a bicuspid (bicommissural) aortic valve. Most of these patients will remain asymptomatic until the fourth or fifth decade of life. In infants presenting with valvular aortic stenosis, the left ventricle and aortic annulus may be small. These patients may represent a milder form of hypoplastic left heart syndrome.

Subaortic stenosis occurs secondary to a discrete membranous ring located 1–2 cm below the aortic valve or to a fibromuscular overgrowth of the LVOT that produces a tunnel-like stenosis. It may also occur late following ventricular septal defect (VSD) closure due to fibrous nature of the patch material in the subaortic region.

Supraaortic stenosis (SVAS) is caused by an elastin gene microdeletion in the q11.23 region of chromosome 7, and is most commonly associated with Williams–Beuren syndrome, although SVAS can occur in both sporadic and familial forms in the absence of the other manifestations of Williams–Beuren syndrome. SVAS is due to a characteristic

hourglass narrowing of the aorta at the sinotubular junction; in a smaller percentage of cases (approximately 30%) there is a diffuse tubular narrowing of the ascending aorta which often extends to the arch and the origin of the brachiocephalic vessels. In approximately 40% of SVAS patients, severe pulmonary stenosis and right ventricular pressure overload exist in conjunction with SVAS.

### Physiology

Infants with aortic stenosis tend to have a small left ventricle and varying degrees of endocardial fibroelastosis secondary to prolonged subendocardial ischemia. When aortic stenosis is severe and there is reduced antegrade aortic blood flow in the neonatal period, systemic blood flow and survival may be dependent on right-to-left (R-L) shunting across a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA). This will result in perfusion of the aorta distal to the ductus largely with systemic venous blood, producing differential cyanosis (higher arterial oxygenation saturation in the upper extremities than in the lower extremities). In the absence of antegrade aortic blood flow, the coronary arteries will be perfused retrograde down the aortic arch with desaturated ductal blood. This, combined with the high left ventricular end-diastolic pressure (LVEDP) that accompanies aortic stenosis, will exacerbate myocardial ischemia.

The mechanical impairment of coronary blood flow is a frequent and often unappreciated feature of Williams–Beurin and non-syndromic SVAS. Adhesion of the right or left aortic leaflet edge to the narrowed sinotubular junction can restrict coronary blood flow into the sinus of Valsalva. The thickened aortic wall may narrow the coronary artery orifice itself. Coronary artery dilation and tortuosity due to exposure of the coronary arteries to high pre-stenotic pressures, and coronary artery structural changes consistent with elastin arteriopathy, may further compromise coronary flow. Finally, the SVAS impairs coronary diastolic flow, as the pressure in the pre-stenotic region is lower than in the post-stenotic region during diastole.

## Surgical Therapy

Isolated aortic valve stenosis is approached by transecting or opening the ascending aorta. A decision can then be made about repairing or replacing the aortic valve. Subaortic lesions are approached across the aortic valve. Resection of discrete subvalvular or supra-valvular membranes is relatively straightforward, but the treatment of fibromuscular tunnel-like stenosis is difficult. Resection of the fibromuscular tissue is limited by the potential damage to surrounding structures such as the conduction system, mitral valve and the septum. In some instances of LVOT hypoplasia, the repair of subaortic and aortic stenosis may require widening of the LVOT with a patch and performing an aortic valve replacement. A Konno procedure is performed to enlarge the aortic annulus and subaortic area. This procedure involves enlarging the aortic annulus in the region of the interventricular septum with graft material (essentially creating and closing a VSD). This procedure allows the placement of an appropriately sized aortic valve (mechanical or bioprosthetic) or the performance of a Ross procedure. The Ross procedure involves harvesting a patient's normal-sized pulmonary valve to be used as an aortic valve; the right

ventricular outflow tract (RVOT) is then reconstructed with a valved conduit.

SVAS is best repaired by symmetrical reconstruction of the aortic root using two or three patches to widen the aortic sinuses. In instances where diffuse tubular hypoplasia of the aorta and arch exists, symmetrical reconstruction of the ascending aorta with extension of the patch to the underside of the aortic arch is necessary. In some circumstances surgical relief of coronary ostial stenosis may be necessary.

Post-repair transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) can be used to detect residual gradients and to rule out damage to the mitral valve and ventricular septum. In particular, the presence of a small VSD should be ruled out.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Aortic valve balloon dilation in the catheterization laboratory can be performed. Ideally, the procedure is intended to substantially reduce the peak and mean aortic valve gradients without producing hemodynamically significant aortic regurgitation.

## Anesthetic Management

Tachycardia in patients with aortic stenosis (AS) is detrimental because, although there is adequate time in systole to allow ejection across the stenotic valve, the diastolic time and subendocardial perfusion are drastically reduced. Bradycardia in these patients is also detrimental because the valve pressure gradient increases as the square of the flow across the valve. Maintaining CO at a reduced heart rate requires increased flow across the valve as stroke volume (SV) (Cardiac output = Heart rate  $\times$  SV) at the expense of an increase in the transvalvular gradient.

### Goals

- Sinus rhythm is essential. Atrial contraction may contribute up to 40% of LV filling.

- Maintain heart rate at baseline.
- Maintain a PAOP high enough to ensure adequate LVEDV; more full rather than less full.
- Maintain afterload. Decreases in diastolic blood pressure reduce coronary perfusion.
- Maintain contractility.

### Induction and Maintenance

There is no one anesthetic technique superior to another. Induction agents must be chosen based on their ability to achieve the anesthetic goals outlined above. Etomidate, or high-dose opioids are appropriate. Propofol may cause a severe reduction in blood pressure and should be used with great caution in patients with AS. A high-dose opioid induction is indicated in some critically ill patients. Generally, a balanced technique of opioids and inhalational agents for maintenance of anesthesia is appropriate. Fentanyl ( $10\text{--}25\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) can be used as the primary anesthetic for maintenance before cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). These agents have no effect on myocardial contractility and cause a reduction in peripheral vascular resistance only through a diminution in central sympathetic tone. For patients who are poorly beta-blocked and for those not taking beta-blockers, fentanyl in combination with muscle relaxant is a good choice.

Tachycardia requires aggressive treatment to avoid subendocardial ischemia and hemodynamic compromise. The first strategy should be to terminate any noxious stimuli and increase the depth of anesthesia if appropriate. Esmolol is an excellent agent to acutely reduce heart rate in a patient with AS. Esmolol is a  $\beta_1$ -selective agent with an elimination half-life of 9 min. This short half-life renders esmolol quite useful for patients with poor ventricular function or bronchospastic disease because, if it is not tolerated, therapy is terminated quickly. Furthermore, unlike longer-acting beta-blockers, esmolol can be used aggressively during the pre-CPB period without fear that it will compromise termination of CPB.

If hypotension due to reduced peripheral vascular resistance occurs during induction,

small doses of phenylephrine and volume infusion to increase preload to preinduction levels usually will correct the problem. TEE is very useful at this point. If TEE reveals a dilated, hypokinetic left ventricle or if the patient fails to respond with a prompt increase in aortic blood pressure, an inotropic agent may be indicated. Dopamine  $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  is a reasonable choice.

If surgical stimulation (skin incision, sternotomy, sternal spreading, or aortic manipulation) produces hypertension, additional doses of fentanyl ( $5\text{--}15\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) and/or inhalational agents may be necessary. During recent years there has been movement away from a pure high-dose narcotic anesthetic. Inhalational anesthetics are now common in all types of cardiac surgery.

### Post-CPB Management

After aortic valve repair or replacement, the obstruction to forward flow is eliminated. With allograft replacement, the valve gradients are usually normal, and with mechanical valves there is a small peak gradient of  $10\text{--}20\ \text{mmHg}$ . Many of these patients will have hyperdynamic left ventricular function and will be hypertensive post-CPB. Pure vasodilators such as sodium nitroprusside and nicardipine widen pulse pressure, decrease aortic diastolic blood pressure, and induce a reflex tachycardia. This combination of hemodynamic changes increases sheer forces on the aorta and jeopardizes subendocardial perfusion. Judicious doses of these vasodilators in combination with esmolol are a more appropriate choice.

As with any procedure requiring cardioplegia, the left ventricular systolic function may be compromised by inadequate myocardial protection during CPB. It may, therefore, be necessary to rely on inotropic agents for augmentation of systolic function, despite the dramatic reduction in afterload. Epinephrine  $0.01\text{--}0.1\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  or dopamine  $3\text{--}5\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  are reasonable choices, providing inotropic support with

little concomitant vasoconstriction and afterload increase.

Because the surgical procedure requires an aortotomy with subsequent repair, it is helpful to avoid hypertension, which places

undue stress on the aortic suture line. The atrioventricular node lies proximal to the aortic valve annulus and may be transiently or permanently damaged after valve replacement. Ventricular pacing may be necessary.

## 18

## Mitral Valve

### Mitral Valve Stenosis

#### Introduction

Isolated congenital mitral valve disease is a rare entity. Most commonly, mitral valve stenosis is associated with mitral valve hypoplasia or as part of Shone's syndrome.

#### Anatomy

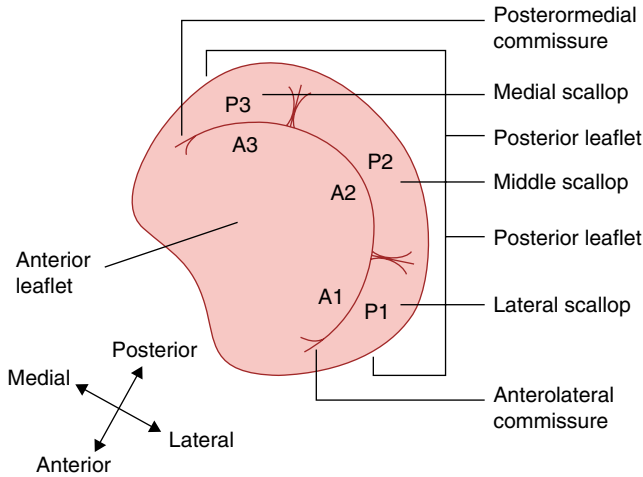
The mitral valve acquired its name in the sixteenth century because of its resemblance to a bishop's miter. In a normal heart, the mitral valve separates the left ventricle from the left atrium, pulmonary circulation, and entire right side of the heart, and has an anterior leaflet and a posterior leaflet. The anterior leaflet is the larger of the two leaflets, accounting for two-thirds of the surface area of the valve. The anterior leaflet base-to-coaptation distance is longer than the posterior leaflet base-to-coaptation distance. The posterior leaflet wraps around the anterior leaflet, accounting for only one-third of the valve's surface area and two-thirds of the annular circumference. The mitral annulus is a fibrous ring surrounding the mitral valve. The anterior leaflet portion of the annulus is part of the heart's fibrous skeleton. This skeleton also has a common attachment to the left coronary and non-coronary cusps of the aortic valve. The coaptation points of the anterior and posterior leaflets at the annulus

are called the anterolateral and posteromedial commissures. The leaflets themselves are attached to the anterolateral and posteromedial papillary muscles via the chordae tendineae. During ventricular systole, contraction of the papillary muscles prevents mitral leaflet prolapse. The Carpentier classification divides the three scallops of the posterior leaflet into P1, P2, and P3. The anterior leaflet is similarly divided into the three segments A1, A2, and A3, which oppose the corresponding scallops of the posterior valve. The coaptation of A1/P1 at the annulus form the anterolateral commissure, while the coaptation of A3/P3 at the annulus form the posteromedial commissure (Figure 18.1).

Several congenital causes of obstruction to left ventricular filling exist:

- Valvular mitral stenosis: Isolated congenital mitral stenosis is very rare and usually is caused by short, fused chordae tendineae.
- Parachute mitral valve: In this lesion, two mitral valve leaflets are attached to shortened chordae that insert on the same papillary muscle.
- Supravalvular mitral stenosis: In this lesion, an obstructive ring of thickened endocardium is found above the mitral valve, downstream from the atrial appendage.
- Cor triatriatum: In this lesion, an obstructive membrane is located upstream of the atrial appendage.

The severity of mitral stenosis based on the *mean* Doppler gradient is: mild (less than



**Figure 18.1** Anatomy of the mitral valve leaflets. A1, lateral segment; A2, middle segment; A3, medial segment; P1, lateral scallop; P2, middle scallop; P3, medial scallop.

4–5 mmHg), moderate (6–12 mmHg) or severe (more than 13 mmHg). It is important to note that a structurally normal mitral valve can be functionally stenotic because of underdevelopment. The z-score in such a case is less than 2.5–3.0.

## Physiology

All of the above-mentioned lesions have the same physiologic consequences as valvular mitral stenosis, namely obstruction to left ventricular diastolic filling and pulmonary venous congestion (Figure 18.2). A notable finding is elevated pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) and right ventricular pressure. This will be associated with a failure to thrive.

## Surgical Therapy

Resection of a supralvalvular ring or of the membrane in cor triatriatum normally suffices. Repair of the mitral valve is a superior alternative to mitral valve replacement in infants and children. If a valve replacement is performed, a low-profile valve must be used to prevent LVOT obstruction. Mechanical valves require long-term anticoagulation, which may be problematic for growing, active children.

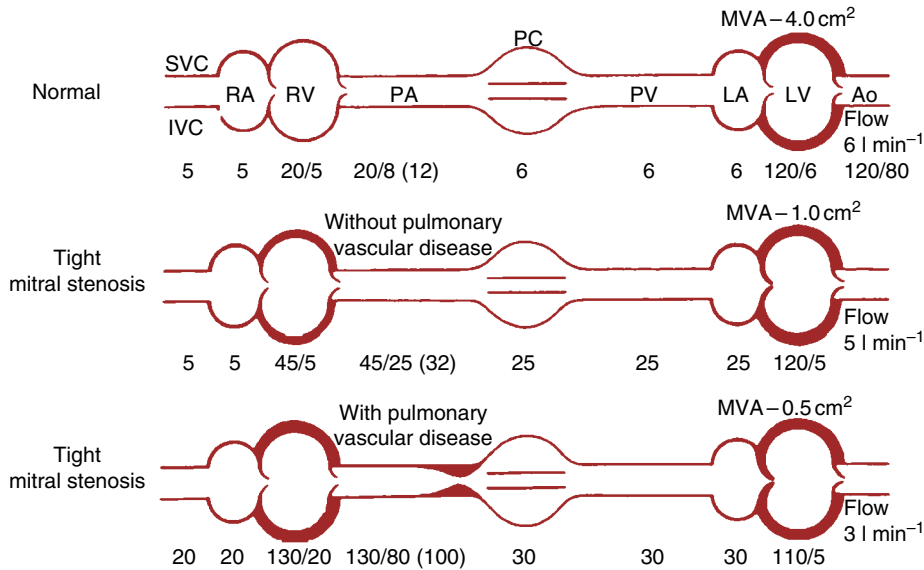
## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Mitral valve dilation for congenital mitral stenosis is commonly used as a palliative procedure to delay surgical repair or replacement. There is a risk of pulmonary edema following balloon dilation and a post-catheterization intensive care unit bed is reserved in case complications arise. Complications include arrhythmias, cardiac perforation, and tamponade. A follow-up echocardiography is repeated later in the day or on the following day.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- Maintain sinus rhythm when possible; control ventricular rate in atrial fibrillation.
- Maintain a slower rather than a faster heart rate.
- Maintain a normal left ventricular afterload; increases are poorly tolerated. Decreasing afterload is warranted when left ventricular systolic function is poor and afterload is high. In this instance, preload must be maintained.
- Maintain contractility.
- When pulmonary vascular resistance is high and right ventricular systolic performance is poor, right ventricular afterload reduction will improve right ventricular



**Figure 18.2** Illustration of changes seen with the progression of mitral stenosis (MS). Pressure in each of cardiac chambers and great vessels is indicated. In MS without pulmonary vascular disease, there is a reversible passive elevation of pulmonary vein (PV), pulmonary capillary (PC) and pulmonary artery (PA) pressures, while pulmonary vascular resistance remains normal. These elevations are secondary to an elevation of left atrial (LA) pressure, which is necessary to maintain left ventricular (LV) filling across the stenotic mitral valve. Right ventricular (RV) pressure is elevated in response to elevated PA pressure, and RV concentric hypertrophy may result. RV systolic dysfunction usually is not present. In MS with pulmonary vascular disease, the PA pressure is elevated far in excess of LA, PC, and PV pressures because of the presence of pulmonary arterial occlusive disease with elevated pulmonary vascular resistance. This results in a second stenosis at the level of the PA. This second stenosis causes dramatic elevations in RV pressure. This RV pressure elevation may result in a reduced RV stroke volume due to afterload mismatch and to tricuspid regurgitation due to RV dilation. A reduction in RV stroke volume results directly in a decrease in systemic cardiac output. Similar changes would be expected over time in patients with sustained elevations in LA pressure due to mitral regurgitation. Ao, aorta; IVC, inferior vena cava; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; MVA, mitral valve area; PA, pulmonary artery; PC, pulmonary capillary; PV, pulmonary vein; RA, right atrium; RV, right ventricle; SVC, superior vena cava. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

and left ventricular outputs. Caution must be exercised so that excessive systemic vasodilation does not result.

- Avoid hypercarbia, hypoxemia, and acidemia, which tend to cause pulmonary hypertension and may result in acute right ventricular decompensation.

### Pre-Induction

Standard monitoring is required. For patients with severe right ventricular failure, pulmonary congestion, and systemic hypotension, efforts to improve right ventricular function with vasodilator therapy may be unsuccessful due

to worsening systemic hypotension. For these patients, the addition of inotropic support is necessary. Dopamine  $3\text{--}5\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  is a good choice. Other beneficial agents include epinephrine  $0.01\text{--}0.1\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  with or without milrinone  $0.5\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  depending on the degree of systemic hypotension.

### Induction and Maintenance

Adherence to the hemodynamic goals rather than using a specific agent is the most important consideration when choosing an induction and maintenance plan for anesthesia.

Hypotension may be treated initially with volume infusion and with cautious use of phenylephrine. After optimization of preload and heart rate, it may be necessary to use an inotropic agent. As discussed previously, dopamine, epinephrine and milrinone are all appropriate choices.

If surgical stimulation (skin incision, sternotomy, sternal spreading, or aortic manipulation) produces hypertension, additional doses of fentanyl ( $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) may be necessary. If this fails to control the hypertension the use of additional agents will be necessary. Benzodiazepines and inhalational agents in combination with opioids will cause vasodilation in patients and reduce blood pressure. This makes it an ideal choice for treatment of transient elevations in peripheral vascular resistance.

## Post-Cardiopulmonary Bypass (CPB) Management

After mitral valve replacement for mitral stenosis, a small mean gradient of  $2\text{--}5\ \text{mmHg}$  usually exists across the prosthetic valve. Mechanical valves exhibit a small amount of regurgitant flow in systole. Repaired mitral valves may exhibit some residual mild regurgitation and stenosis. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) provides an excellent method to evaluate the new valve structure and function. A full examination of the valve including color Doppler and pressure gradients is required. A dramatic improvement in left ventricular filling via the left atrium after replacement or repair is expected. As a result, preload reserve is greatly improved. This makes left ventricular afterload mismatch less likely and allows the augmentation of cardiac output via increases in preload, even when preoperative systolic dysfunction exists.

The management of right ventricular function and the pulmonary vasculature can be problematic in the post-CPB period. In all patients with elevated PAPs, there will be a dramatic reduction in PAP due to reductions

in the mean left atrial pressure (LAP) and passive pulmonary congestion after valve replacement. Despite this, some patients will continue to have an elevated pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) due to reversible (reactive pulmonary vasoconstriction) and non-reversible (morphologic changes in the pulmonary vasculature) causes. For these patients, careful management is necessary. The left ventricular stroke volume depends on proper right ventricular function. In right ventricular failure there is an inadequate transit of blood to the left heart, and the cardiac output falls. The hallmarks of this syndrome are a high right atrial pressure (RAP)  $>10\ \text{mmHg}$  and PVR coupled with a low LAP ( $<5\ \text{mmHg}$ ) and cardiac index ( $<2.21\ \text{min}^{-1}\ \text{m}^{-2}$ ). The clinician should aggressively strive to keep the PVR as low as possible by avoiding hypercarbia, hypoxemia, and acidemia, and by avoiding the use of pulmonary vasoconstrictors. If pulmonary hypertension persists despite these efforts, then active pulmonary vasodilation will be necessary. Nitroglycerin has been shown to be effective in reducing PAPs and increasing pulmonary blood flow after mitral valve replacement. Other effective pulmonary vasodilators include the inhaled agents nitric oxide (NO) and prostacyclin ( $\text{PGI}_2$ ).

In some patients, inotropic support of the right ventricle may be necessary in addition to pulmonary vasodilation. Inotropic support without increased PVR is ideal. Epinephrine  $0.01\text{--}0.1\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ , dopamine  $3\text{--}5\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ , or dobutamine  $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ , all meet this goal. Increased doses of epinephrine and dopamine may result in progressive pulmonary vasoconstriction from increased alpha-adrenergic activity. In situations where afterload reduction is deemed desirable milrinone  $0.5\text{--}0.75\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  with or without a loading dose of  $25\text{--}75\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  may be added. Milrinone, a phosphodiesterase 3 inhibitor, provides some inotropic support and is a pulmonary vasodilator. Isoproterenol, a potent beta-1 agonist can improve inotropy and induce pulmonary vasodilation; however,



isoproterenol is associated with an increase in heart rate, myocardial oxygen consumption, and the incidence of ventricular dysrhythmias, all of which may limit its usefulness. In instances of refractory pulmonary hypertension and right ventricular failure after mitral valve replacement the combination of intravenous prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> (PGE<sub>1</sub>) and norepinephrine can be effective. PGE<sub>1</sub> is a potent pulmonary and systemic vasodilator while norepinephrine is a potent inotrope, which normalizes systemic vascular resistance in this setting.

The potential for distortion of, or direct injury to, the circumflex coronary artery must be considered after mitral valve repair or replacement, given the close proximity of this artery to the posterior mitral valve annulus. This is particularly true when, in an effort to prolong the interval between prosthetic mitral valve replacements in growing children, an oversized prosthesis is placed in the mitral annulus. Compromise of flow may also occur from the placement of annuloplasty rings. TEE should be used to assess the patency of the circumflex artery. New regional wall motion abnormalities in lateral or posterior left ventricular wall segments should raise suspicion that circumflex artery flow has been compromised.

## Mitral Valve Regurgitation

### Introduction

Mitral valve regurgitation is much more common than mitral valve stenosis. It is commonly associated with atrioventricular septal defects.

### Anatomy

Any abnormality of the mitral valve apparatus may cause mitral regurgitation, including:

- A cleft of the anterior leaflet in patients with atrioventricular septal defects.

- A central jet secondary to poor central apposition of the posterior (mural) and anterior leaflets.
- A structurally abnormal valve, dysplastic and retracted leaflets, abnormal papillary muscles, thick and short cords.

### Physiology

Mitral regurgitation increases left atrial pressure and therefore pulmonary artery pressure. In addition, mitral regurgitation imposes a volume load on the left ventricle and a pressure load on the right ventricle. The symptoms are similar to those of congestive heart failure.

There is a low-impedance outflow tract into the low-pressure left atrium via the incompetent mitral valve, and a high-impedance outflow tract into the high-pressure aorta via the aortic valve. The extent of regurgitation depends on the size of the mitral valve orifice, the time available for regurgitation (systole), and the pressure gradient between the left atrium and left ventricle. The area of the mitral valve orifice is determined, in part, by the size of the left ventricle. Dilation of the left ventricle will result in distortion and enlargement of the valve orifice. Ventricular systolic pressure, left atrial pressure and left atrial compliance all contribute to the valve gradient.

Regurgitant flow ceases when the left ventricular and left atrial pressures equalize. The equalization of pressure will occur more rapidly when a small, non-compliant left atrium exists, because the left atrial pressure will rise more rapidly than in a large compliant atrium. An equalization of pressure also occurs more rapidly when the impedance to left ventricular ejection in the aorta is low. When aortic impedance is low, there is a larger forward stroke volume, and equalization of pressure will occur quickly.

Chronic volume overloading of the left ventricle results in eccentric ventricular hypertrophy, similar to that seen in aortic regurgitation.

Myocardial oxygen consumption is altered in mitral regurgitation. There is an increase in oxygen consumption due to the large mass of myocardium that must be supplied with oxygen and the enormous volume work done by the left ventricle.

Bradycardia is detrimental in mitral regurgitation because it prolongs systole, which increases the time available for regurgitation. In addition, bradycardia prolongs diastole allowing a large left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV) to develop. This may result in left ventricular distension, particularly in acute mitral regurgitation, in which eccentric hypertrophy and pressure-volume compensation are absent. Left ventricular distension leads to an enlargement of the mitral annulus and worsening regurgitation. Finally, when the regurgitant fraction is large (50–60%), the total stroke volume will be large but the forward stroke volume will be low. Elevating the heart rate enhances forward flow in this situation. Efforts to increase heart rate are balanced with the increased oxygen demand and decreased oxygen supply with tachycardia. This is particularly important for patients who have mitral regurgitation secondary to papillary muscle rupture or dysfunction from ischemia.

An increased afterload is poorly tolerated by patients with mitral regurgitation because it increases the regurgitant fraction. An increased afterload tends to increase the size of the left ventricle by increasing the left ventricular end-systolic volume, followed by a compensatory increase in LVEDV. This left ventricular dilation increases the size of the mitral orifice. An increased afterload also increases the impedance to aortic ejection. This favors ejection into the left atrium via the lower-impedance outflow tract.

## Surgical Management

Surgical repair is attempted in mitral regurgitation; this includes cleft closure, annuloplasty, chordal shortening, or chordal transfer.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Catheter-based interventions to treat mitral regurgitation in children have yet to be developed.

## Anesthetic Management in Mitral Regurgitation

### Goals

- Maintain sinus rhythm when possible.
- Maintain a faster rather than a slower heart rate.
- Decrease the left ventricular afterload, as increases are poorly tolerated. Decreasing the afterload will improve cardiac output by decreasing regurgitation, but the preload must be maintained.
- Maintain contractility; there may be significant left ventricular dysfunction.
- When the pulmonary vascular resistance is high or when right ventricular systolic dysfunction exists, a reduction in right ventricular afterload will improve right ventricular, and subsequently left ventricular, output. The concurrent systemic vasodilation will also directly reduce regurgitation.
- Avoid hypercarbia, hypoxemia, and acidemia which tend to cause pulmonary hypertension and may result in acute right ventricular decompensation.

### Premedication

For patients with MR, severe hemodynamic compromise usually is the rule. All sedatives and opioids should be given with careful observation of the fully monitored patient.

### Induction and Maintenance

Patients with stable mitral regurgitation usually tolerate induction without significant hemodynamic compromise. Etomidate, ketamine, or propofol are all appropriate agents. Hypotension may be treated with

vasopressors; however, caution is urged because in some patients, increasing afterload will increase the regurgitant volume which worsens the situation. In all patients the heart rate and preload must be optimal. If inotropic support is required, dopamine  $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$  can be used.

## Post-CPB Management

Repaired mitral valves may exhibit some residual mild regurgitation and stenosis. TEE is essential in evaluating valvular repairs.

After mitral valve replacement or repair for chronic mitral regurgitation, the ventricle is now faced with a relative pressure overload. The competent mitral valve eliminates the low-impedance outflow into the left atrium. Ejection of the stroke volume is now directed out the high-impedance outflow tract into the aorta. This causes a substantial elevation of ventricular pressure during the isovolumic contraction phase. The elimination of

regurgitation by the competent valve greatly reduces the need for a large total stroke volume. Therefore, a greater proportion of total myocardial oxygen consumption goes towards the more energy-consuming process of pressure generation to begin ejection and less towards volume ejection.

For these reasons, and particularly if poor myocardial protection is obtained during CPB and aortic cross-clamping, or if a depressed systolic function exists preoperatively, the management of these patients post-CPB is challenging. The mainstays of therapy are afterload reduction and inotropic support of systolic function. The goal of vasodilator therapy is not necessarily a reduction of blood pressure; rather, it is a reduction of the impedance to left ventricular ejection with a concomitant increase in stroke volume.

The management of right ventricular function and the pulmonary vasculature can be problematic in the post-CPB period. Management of this problem is described in detail in the above section on mitral stenosis.

## 19

## Pulmonary Atresia/Intact Ventricular Septum (PA/IVS)

### Introduction

Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS) was first described in 1783 by John Hunter, an anatomist. It is a rare form (3%) of congenital heart disease. It is rarely associated with trisomy 18 and 21.

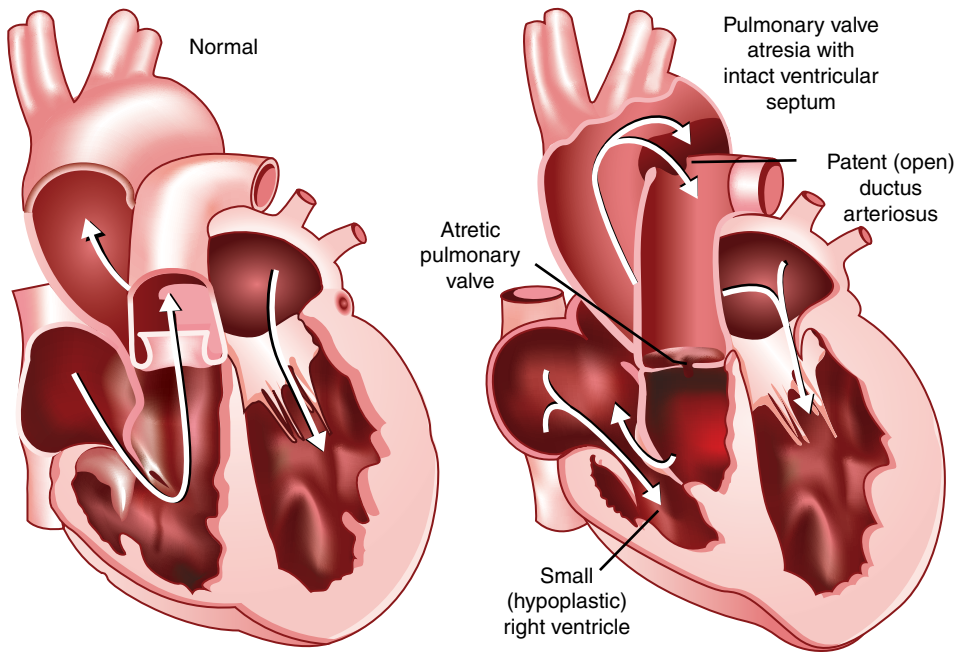
### Anatomy

PA/IVS is characterized by a lack of continuity between the right ventricle and pulmonary artery (PA) in the presence of an intact ventricular septum (IVS) (Figure 19.1). In 70–80% of cases, a very small patent right ventricular infundibulum is separated from the main PA by plate-like membranous atresia of the pulmonary valve (PV). The PV annulus is usually normal or slightly hypoplastic with recognizable but fused PV leaflets, while the pulmonary arteries are of normal size. The normal right ventricle is tripartite with an inflow region (tricuspid valve), a body (the trabeculated apical component), and an outflow region (infundibulum). The right ventricle tends to be hypoplastic and of tricuspid valve size, and generally parallels the right ventricular cavity size. In mild to moderate hypoplasia the apical trabeculated component of the right ventricle is poorly developed, or even absent. With more severe degrees of hypoplasia, the infundibulum may also be absent. Occasionally, the right ventricle is miniscule. Approximately 25% of patients have mild hypoplasia, 40% have

moderate hypoplasia, and 35% have severe hypoplasia. A patent foramen ovale (PFO) is present and 20% of patients will have a secundum atrial septal defect (ASD). In the presence of a small right ventricle and tricuspid valve, and particularly in the absence of significant tricuspid regurgitation, the right ventricle generates suprasystemic pressures. This elevated pressure is felt to lead to a persistence of the sinusoidal spaces that nourish the myocardium in early fetal life.

### Physiology

PA/IVS is a ductal-dependent, single-ventricle physiology lesion that may be amenable to a two-ventricle repair, although in many instances patients are staged to single-ventricle palliation. There is an obligatory flow of systemic venous blood across the PFO or ASD [physiologic right-to-left (R-L) shunt]. Mixed systemic venous and pulmonary venous blood is then distributed in parallel to the systemic and pulmonary circulations from the left ventricle via the aorta and the ductus arteriosus respectively. Right ventricular pressures may be two- to three-fold the systemic pressure, and the right atrial pressure is elevated. The right ventricular filling volume in diastole is essentially equal to the volume of blood that is regurgitated back across the tricuspid valve in systole. Consequently, there is an obligatory physiologic R-L shunt at the atrial level, with complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in the left atrium. When the ASD or PFO



**Figure 19.1** Anatomy of pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS).

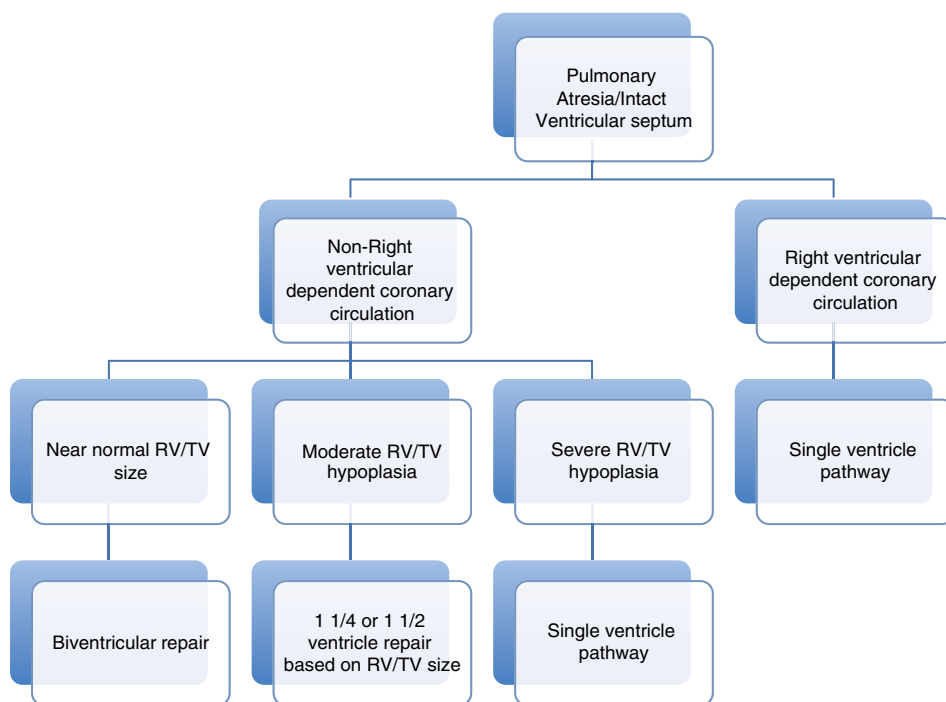
is restrictive, there will be a large right atrial to left atrial pressure gradient. This will result in a poor decompression of the right atrium and systemic venous congestion. Pulmonary blood flow is provided by a downstream shunt (patent ductus arteriosus; PDA). Prostaglandin  $E_1$  is started after birth to maintain ductal patency.

The elevated pressure in PA/IVS is felt to lead to a persistence of the sinusoidal spaces that nourish the myocardium in early fetal life. This elevated pressure can lead to the development of fistulous connections between the right ventricular cavity and both the left and right epicardial coronary arteries. Furthermore, coronary artery stenoses and atresia of the coronary artery ostia may be present. Retrograde coronary blood flow through these ventriculocoronary connections predisposes the coronary circulation to the development of proximal obstructive lesions from fibrous myointimal hyperplasia. As a result of these changes, the myocardium distal to any proximal coronary occlusion will be dependent on a high right ventricular pressure to provide retrograde perfusion via ventriculocoronary connections.

This physiology, which is present in 10–20% of patients, is described as right ventricle-dependent coronary circulation (RVDCC), and is strictly defined by the presence of one or more of the following: (i) ventriculo-coronary artery fistulae with severe obstruction of at least two major coronary arteries; (ii) complete atresia of the aortic coronary ostia; or (iii) a significant portion of the left ventricular myocardium is supplied by the right ventricle and is judged to be at risk if right ventricular decompression is performed. It is important to point out that fistulous connections between the right ventricle and the epicardial coronary arteries in the absence of proximal coronary obstructive lesions are not necessarily a contraindication to right ventricular decompression.

### Surgical and Catheter-Based Therapy

Transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) is used to assess the pulmonary valve annulus size, the size and function of the tricuspid



**Figure 19.2** Algorithm for surgical management of pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS).

valve and right ventricle, and the size of the PDA. Although information about the coronary circulation may be obtained using TTE, cardiac catheterization is the only definitive method to delineate the coronary artery anatomy and determine whether RVDCC is present. Consequently, virtually all neonates with PA/IVS undergo cardiac catheterization.

Once the status of the coronary circulation is determined, an algorithm such as that shown in Figure 19.2 can be used to plan surgical or catheter-based interventions. Surgical therapy has two objectives: (i) the provision of sufficient pulmonary blood flow to replace the PDA; and (ii) if possible, to relieve the right ventricular outflow obstruction such that forward flow through the tricuspid valve, right ventricle and pulmonary artery is established.

In patients with RVDCC, right ventricular decompression is contraindicated because the antegrade coronary blood flow is insufficient to prevent the development of subendocardial ischemia and infarction. These patients undergo a single-ventricle palliation

which typically involves the placement of a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) during the neonatal period, followed by a bidirectional Glenn shunt (superior cavopulmonary connection) and a Fontan (total cavopulmonary connection; TCPC) procedure at the appropriate time. Recently, the percutaneous placement of a stent in the PDA has been utilized as an alternative to surgical shunt placement.

In patients with non-RVDCC, right ventricular decompression with the establishment of antegrade tricuspid valve and pulmonary valve blood flow is important to promote the right ventricular growth necessary for the consideration of biventricular repair. When there is an infundibulum in continuity with the imperforate or nearly imperforate pulmonary valve, an attempt to establish antegrade pulmonary blood flow using transcatheter radiofrequency perforation and subsequent balloon dilation of the pulmonary valve can be made at the time of initial catheterization. Alternatively,

enlargement of the right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT) and a pulmonary valvotomy can be accomplished with a surgical transannular patch. Because the infundibulum may be very hypertrophied and the infundibular muscle usually is quite fibrotic, the incision for the transannular patch is carried well down into the body of the right ventricle. The PDA is almost always ligated at the time of the initial procedure.

If the right ventricle is hypoplastic, patients may have to be managed with two sources of pulmonary blood flow – a systemic artery to pulmonary artery shunt (mBTS or stented PDA) and antegrade pulmonary blood flow (RVOT perforation or transannular patch) – to provide an adequate pulmonary blood flow until a definitive decision regarding suitability for biventricular repair is made. Ultimately, the decision to pursue a biventricular repair or a 1¼ or 1½ ventricle palliation is made based on the size and function of both the tricuspid valve and right ventricle. Because decompression of the right atrium and right ventricle will occur as long as the ASD or PFO is open, neither of the latter can be closed unless the right ventricle is capable of providing all of the pulmonary blood flow without failing.

Following initial intervention, one of the following options exist depending on the presence or absence of RVDCC and the size and function of the right ventricle and tricuspid valve (Figure 19.2). In all of the repairs described, the mBTS or stented PDA, if present, is ligated. The choice of repair is based on the ability of the right ventricle to deliver a sufficient volume of blood to the left ventricle to provide adequate systemic cardiac output.

- Fontan procedure (TCPC). Staging to the fenestrated Fontan via a superior cavopulmonary connection (bidirectional Glenn; BDG) is reserved for patients with RVDCC or for patients with a severely hypoplastic right ventricle.
- 1¼ ventricle repair. In patients with non-RVDCC and moderate to severe right ventricular hypoplasia, this repair – which consists of a BDG and an atriopulmonary connection between the roof of the right atrium and the undersurface of the right pulmonary artery opposite the BDG anastomosis in conjunction with a right ventricular outflow patch and a fenestrated ASD (R-L ‘pop-off’) or ASD closure – can be considered. This repair allows a small amount of superior vena cava (SVC) and inferior vena cava (IVC) blood to cross the tricuspid valve and be ejected by the right ventricle antegrade into the pulmonary bed while most of the systemic venous return is delivered directly to the pulmonary arteries.
- 1½ ventricle repair. In patients with non-RVDCC and mild to moderate right ventricular hypoplasia, this repair, which consists of a BDG in conjunction with a right ventricular outflow patch and a fenestrated ASD (R-L ‘pop-off’) or ASD closure, can be considered. This repair allows all or most IVC blood to cross the tricuspid valve and thus only requires that the right ventricle be capable of ejecting this IVC blood antegrade into the pulmonary arteries while SVC blood is delivered directly to the pulmonary arteries.
- Two-ventricle repair. In patients with non-RVDCC and mild right ventricular hypoplasia this repair, which consists of a right ventricular outflow patch and a fenestrated ASD (R-L ‘pop-off’) or ASD closure, can be considered. This repair allows all, or nearly all, systemic venous blood to cross the tricuspid valve and be ejected by the right ventricle antegrade into the pulmonary bed.

In all of these repairs the fenestrated ASD can be closed at a later date in the cardiac catheterization laboratory if there is minimal R-L shunting and if right atrial hypertension is not present following temporary balloon occlusion.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

These patients are managed using the principles outlined in Chapter 24. These patients have ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow. Patients with PA/IVS are particularly vulnerable to myocardial ischemia because, even in the absence of RVDCC, the coronary arteries are supplied in part retrograde from the body of the right ventricle. Myocardial depression is poorly tolerated not only because it may reduce pulmonary blood flow across a restrictive PDA but also because coronary blood flow may be compromised if aortic pressure and right ventricular pressure falls.

## Post-CPB Management

Most of these patients are managed according to the principles described in Chapter 24 (Single-Ventricle Physiology).

Only those patients with a right ventricle large enough to require only a transannular patch will not exhibit single-ventricle physiology. For a given cardiac output and  $Q_P:Q_S$ , patients with a transannular patch and a mBTS will have less of a volume load on the left ventricle. Following decompression of the right ventricle, PA/IVS patients are vulnerable to myocardial ischemia because, even in the absence of RVDCC, the coronary arteries are supplied in part retrograde from the body of the right ventricle.



## 20

### Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF)

#### Introduction

Étienne Fallot described tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) in 1988. It is the most common cyanotic congenital heart defect, occurring in approximately 1 in 3500 births and accounting for 7–10% of all congenital cardiac malformations. The etiology of TOF is multifactorial. Up to 25% of patients have chromosomal abnormalities, with trisomy 21 and 22q11.2 microdeletions (DiGeorge syndrome) being the most frequent. The risk of recurrence in a family is 3%.

#### Anatomy

TOF is actually more accurately described as tetralogy of Fallot with pulmonary stenosis (TOF/PS) to distinguish it from TOF with pulmonary atresia (TOF/PA) and TOF with absent pulmonary valve (TOF/APV) (Figure 20.1). TOF is characterized by a ventricular septal defect (VSD), overriding of the aorta, right ventricular hypertrophy, and pulmonary stenosis (infundibular or subvalvular, valvular, supra-valvular, or a combination). The key malformation is underdevelopment of the right ventricular infundibulum and displacement of the infundibular septum resulting in right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT) stenosis. Patients with TOF have displacement of the infundibular septum in an anterior, superior, and leftward direction. The posterior wall of the RVOT is formed by the infundibular septum, and this abnormal

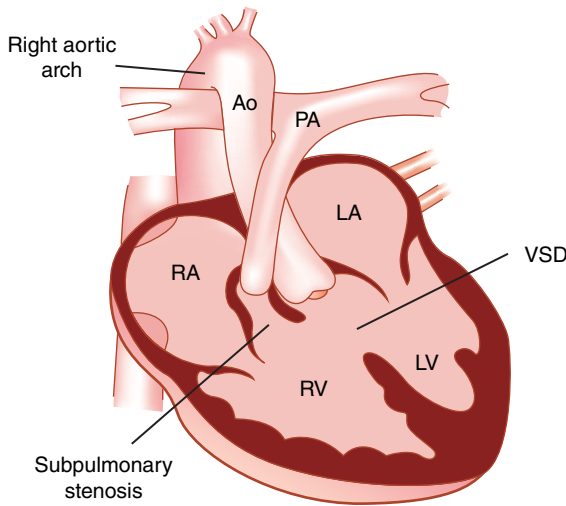
displacement results in narrowing of the RVOT. In addition, this displacement of the infundibular septum creates a large malalignment VSD, with the aorta overriding the intraventricular septum (IVS). Abnormalities in the septal and parietal attachments of the outflow tract further exacerbate the infundibular stenosis (Figure 20.2). Seventy-five percent of TOF patients will have both infundibular and valvular stenosis. A small proportion of patients will have multiple muscular VSDs.

The pulmonary valve is almost always bileaflet. At one end of the spectrum of TOF the pulmonary valve may be mildly hypoplastic (reduced annulus size) with minimal fusion of the pulmonary valve leaflets. At the other end of the spectrum, the pulmonary annulus may be very small with near-fusion of the valve leaflets. In addition, there are varying degrees of main pulmonary artery and branch pulmonary artery hypoplasia.

The most common associated lesion, present in 25% of patients, is a right aortic arch with mirror image arch vessel branching (the innominate artery gives rise to left carotid and left subclavian, while the right carotid and right subclavian arise separately).

#### Physiology

TOF is a complex shunt in which a communication (VSD) and a partial obstruction to right ventricular outflow are present. In most patients with TOF, there is a fixed and a dynamic component to right ventricular



**Figure 20.1** Anatomy in tetralogy of Fallot. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

outflow obstruction. The fixed component is produced by the infundibular, valvular, and supra-valvular stenosis. The dynamic component (subvalvular pulmonary stenosis) is produced by variations in the caliber of the right ventricular infundibulum.

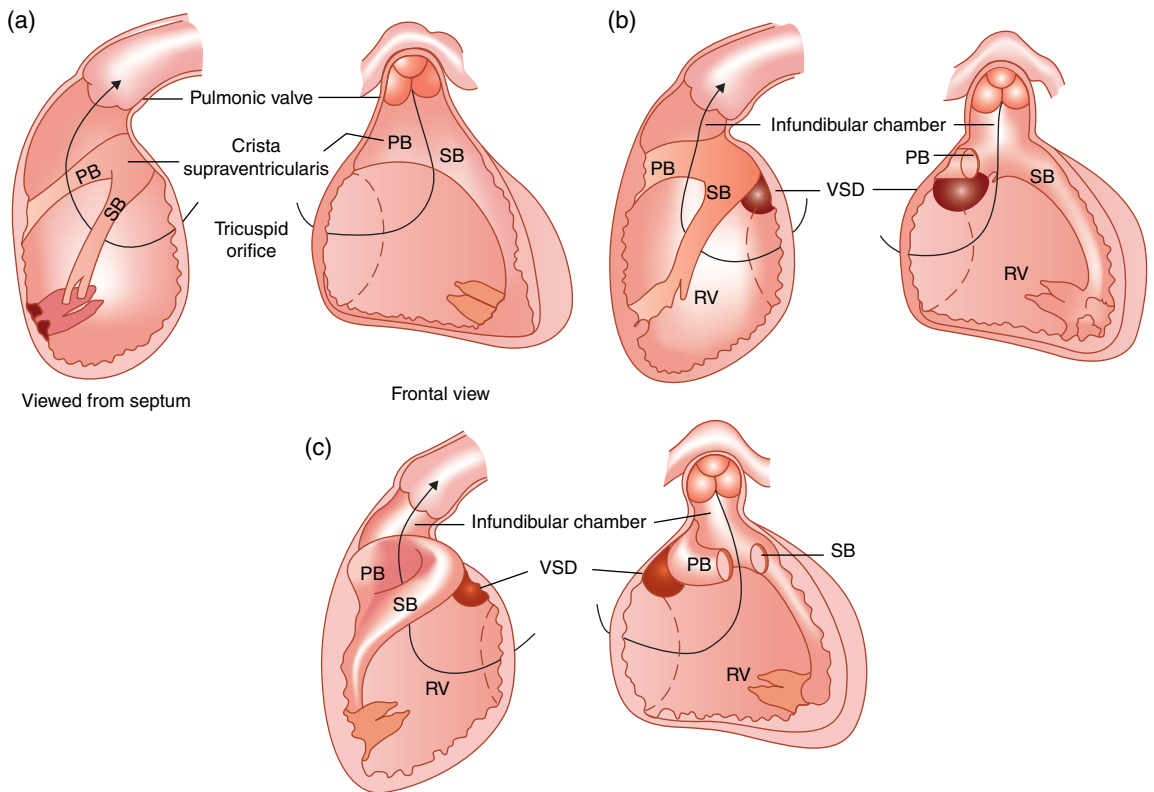
In patients with TOF, the arterial saturation is a direct reflection of pulmonary blood flow. The typical TOF patient has fixed and variable components that create severe right ventricular outflow obstruction, which produces a right-to-left (R-L) shunt and cyanosis. A small subset of TOF patients ('pink tet') have minimal obstruction to pulmonary blood flow at the right ventricular outflow and pulmonary artery level, and may have normal oxygen saturation. Some of these patients have a left-to-right (L-R) shunt with increased pulmonary blood flow and symptoms of congestive heart failure (CHF).

### Hypoxic or Hypercyanotic Episodes ('Tet Spells')

The occurrence of hypoxic episodes in TOF patients may be life-threatening and should be anticipated in every patient, even those who are not normally cyanotic. Spells occur more frequently in cyanotic patients, with

the peak frequency of spells between 2 and 3 months of age. The onset of spells usually prompts urgent surgical intervention, so it is not unusual for the anesthesiologist to care for an infant who is at great risk for spells during the preoperative period.

The etiology of spells is not completely understood, but infundibular spasm or constriction may play a role. Crying, defecation, feeding, fever, and awakening all can be precipitating events. Paroxysmal hyperpnea is the initial finding. There is an increase in the rate and depth of respiration, leading to increasing cyanosis and potential syncope, convulsions, or death. During a spell, the infant will appear pale and limp secondary to poor cardiac output. Hyperpnea has several deleterious effects in maintaining and worsening a hypoxic spell. Hyperpnea increases oxygen consumption through the increased work of breathing. Hypoxia induces a decrease in systemic vascular resistance (SVR), which further increases the R-L shunt. Hyperpnea also lowers intrathoracic pressure and leads to an increase in systemic venous return. In the face of infundibular obstruction, this results in an increased right ventricular preload and an increase in the R-L shunt. Thus, episodes seem to be associated with events that increase oxygen demand while simultaneous decreases in



**Figure 20.2** Spectrum of infundibular stenosis produced by abnormalities in septal and parietal bands of crista supraventricularis. (a) Normal anatomy of crista supraventricularis. (b) Moderate infundibular stenosis and creation of an infundibular chamber secondary to hypertrophy and anterior, superior displacement of parietal band. (c) Severe infundibular stenosis with creation of infundibular and anterior, superior displacement of both septal and parietal bands. PB, parietal band; RV, right ventricle; SB, septal band; VSD, ventricular septal defect. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

PO<sub>2</sub> and increases in pH and PaCO<sub>2</sub> are occurring. Under anesthesia, 'Tet spells' will be heralded by a subtle, progressive decrease in end-tidal CO<sub>2</sub> (ETCO<sub>2</sub>) that precedes a detectable decrease in SaO<sub>2</sub>. Cardiac output will be maintained in this setting by the delivery of venous blood from the right ventricle to the aorta across the VSD.

The treatment of a 'Tet spell' includes:

- The administration of 100% oxygen.
- Compression of the femoral arteries or placing the patient in a knee-chest position which transiently increases SVR and reduces the R-L shunt. Manual compression of the abdominal aorta or compression of the ascending aorta if the chest is open to increase impedance to ejection through the left ventricle.
- Administration of morphine sulfate (0.05–0.1 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>), which sedates the patient and may have a depressant effect on respiratory drive and hyperpnea.
- Administration of 15–30 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> of a crystalloid solution. An enhancing preload will increase the heart size, which may increase the diameter of the RVOT.
- Administration of sodium bicarbonate to treat the severe metabolic acidosis that occurs during a spell. Correction of the metabolic acidosis will normalize the SVR and reduce hyperpnea. Bicarbonate administration (1–2 mEq kg<sup>-1</sup>) in the absence of a blood gas determination is warranted during a spell.
- Phenylephrine in relatively large doses (5–10 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> intravenous as a bolus or 2–5 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> as an infusion) increases SVR and reduces R-L shunting. In the presence of severe right ventricular outflow obstruction, phenylephrine-induced increases of pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) will have little or no effect on increasing right ventricular outflow resistance. It is important to point out that treatment with α-adrenergic agents to increase the SVR does nothing to treat the underlying cause of the spell, although the decrease in unstressed venous volume induced by these agents may augment preload.
- Beta-adrenergic agonists are absolutely contraindicated. Increasing contractility will further narrow the stenotic infundibulum.
- Administration of propranolol (0.1 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) or esmolol (0.5 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> followed by an infusion of 50 to 300 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) may reduce infundibular spasm by depressing contractility. In addition, slowing the heart rate may allow for improved diastolic filling (increased preload), increased heart size, and an increase in the diameter of the RVOT.
- Careful attention should be paid to mean airway pressure in intubated patients. Avoid the temptation to hyperventilate the patient, as an elevated mean airway pressure will impede right ventricular ejection and increase Zone 1 regions of the lung (ventilation, but no perfusion, physiologic dead space). This will further reduce pulmonary blood flow.
- Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation resuscitation in refractory episodes when immediate operative intervention is not possible.

## Surgical Therapy

### Palliative Shunts

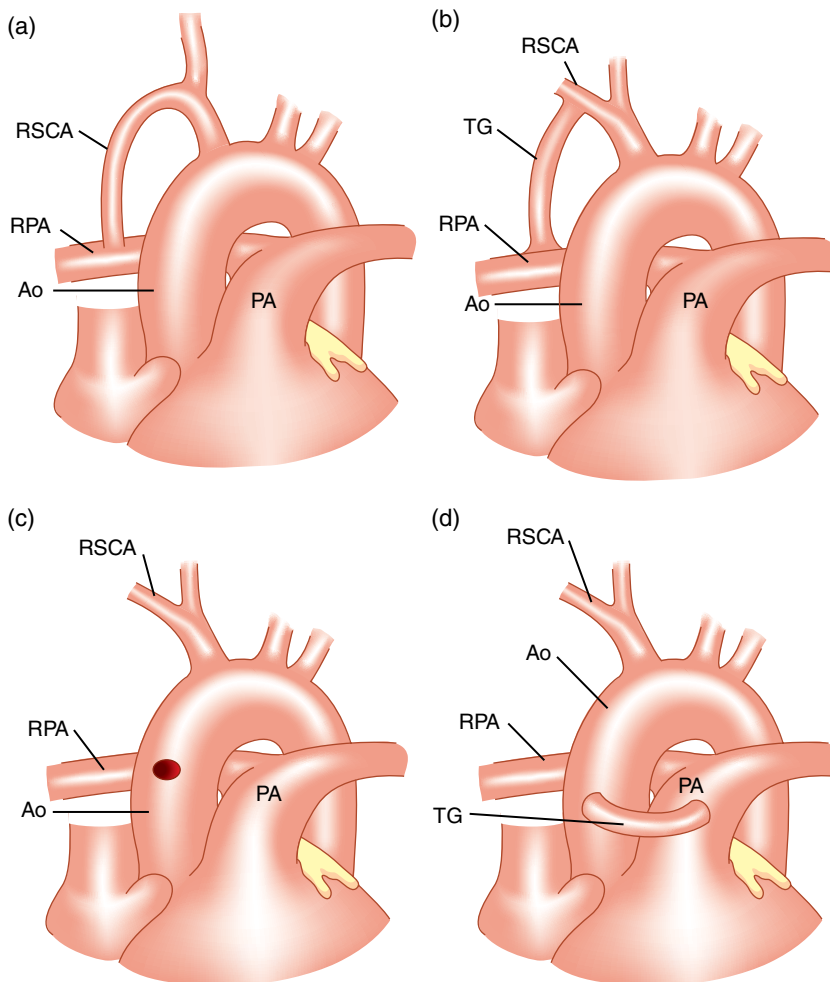
Palliative shunt procedures to increase pulmonary blood flow can be used for patients with TOF in whom complicated surgical anatomy precludes definitive repair at the time of presentation. In addition, some institutions delay elective complete repair until 12–18 months of age with placement of a palliative shunt if cyanosis occurs prior to that time interval.

Palliative shunt procedures involve the creation of a systemic-to-pulmonary arterial shunt, essentially a surgically created PDA. Shunt placement may distort pulmonary artery anatomy and impair subsequent growth, making definitive repair more difficult. A large shunt with a high pulmonary blood flow puts the patient at

risk for development of pulmonary artery hypertension (PAH). Ideally, these surgical shunts should be mildly restrictive, simple shunts. In the presence of a proximal obstruction to pulmonary blood flow, these shunts produce a L-R shunt and an increase in pulmonary blood flow. The shunts can be summarized as follows (Figure 20.3):

- Waterston and Potts shunts. The Waterston shunt is a side-to-side anastomosis between

the ascending aorta and the right pulmonary artery. This procedure is performed via a right thoracotomy, without cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). The Potts shunt is a side-to-side anastomosis between the descending aorta and the left pulmonary artery. This procedure is performed via a left thoracotomy without CPB. Waterston and Potts shunts are of historic interest only. It is difficult to size the orifice of these shunts correctly. A too-small orifice



**Figure 20.3** Surgically created systemic-to-pulmonary artery shunts. (a) Blalock-Taussig shunt. (b) Modified Blalock-Taussig shunt. (c) Waterston shunt. (d) Central shunt. Ao, aorta; PA, pulmonary artery; RPA, right pulmonary artery; RSCA, right subclavian artery; TG, tube graft. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

will limit pulmonary blood flow, whereas a too-large orifice will create pulmonary over-perfusion and congestion and predispose to the development of unilateral PAH. These shunts may produce distortion of the pulmonary artery, making subsequent definitive repair difficult. In addition, they are difficult to take down at the time of the definitive procedure.

- Central shunt. This shunt places a synthetic tube graft between the ascending aorta and the main or branch pulmonary artery. It is often used when prior shunt procedures have failed.
- Blalock–Taussig shunt (BTS). As originally described, this involves the creation of an end-to-side anastomosis of the right or left subclavian artery to the ipsilateral branch pulmonary artery. Currently, a modification of this procedure known as the modified BTS (mBTS) is used. It involves interposing a length of Gore-Tex tube graft (3.5–4.0 mm in infants) between the subclavian or innominate artery and the branch pulmonary artery. These shunts are performed on the side opposite the aortic arch. This shunt can be performed with or without CPB via a thoracotomy or median sternotomy.

### Definitive Repair

Currently, most patients with TOF have an elective full correction between the ages of 2 and 10 months of age. At some centers, surgery is delayed as long as possible within this time interval, with the precise timing of repair dictated by the onset of cyanotic episodes. Definitive repair for TOF is being accomplished in neonates at some centers if a favorable anatomy is present. Surgery is aimed at relieving the outflow obstruction by resection of hypertrophied, obstructing muscle bundles and augmentation and enlargement of the outflow tract with a pericardial patch. Unless the pulmonic annulus is near-normal size, and the pulmonary valve is only mildly stenotic, enlargement of the outflow tract involves extension of the patch across

the pulmonary valve annulus and into the main pulmonary artery. Because a transannular patch creates pulmonic insufficiency it is best avoided when possible. If stenosis of the pulmonary artery extends to the bifurcation, the pericardial patch can be extended beyond the bifurcation of the pulmonary arteries. Finally, the VSD is closed. In neonates, this is usually done through the right ventriculotomy created for the resection of RVOT obstruction and placement of the transannular patch. In infants and older children the VSD can be closed via a trans-tricuspid valve approach.

An important surgical consideration for patients with TOF/PS is the occurrence of coronary artery abnormalities. Approximately 8% of patients have either the left main coronary artery or the left anterior descending artery as a branch of the right coronary artery. In these cases, a right ventriculotomy to enlarge the RVOT will endanger the left coronary artery. In such cases, an extracardiac conduit (right ventricle to main pulmonary artery) may be necessary to bypass the outflow tract obstruction and avoid injury to the coronary artery.

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Patients with repaired TOF may have residual pulmonary artery stenosis amenable to catheter balloon dilation and possibly stent implantation. As these patients progress towards adulthood, they may develop conduit stenosis and valve regurgitation, and intervention before end-stage right ventricular dysfunction is often required. Balloon dilation of conduit stenosis may provide many months, if not years, of delay in the need for surgical conduit replacement, and transcatheter pulmonary valve replacement. The US Food and Drug Administration-approved Melody valve, harvested from a bovine jugular vein, has become common, although it is currently unclear how many years' delay in pulmonary valve replacement may be gained by using this technique.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. Euvolemia is important to prevent the exacerbation of dynamic RVOT obstruction from hypovolemia and reflex increases in heart rate and contractility.
- Avoid increases in the PVR:SVR ratio. The less severe the right ventricular outflow obstructive lesions, the more important this becomes. Increases in PVR relative to SVR, and decreases in SVR relative to PVR, will increase R-L shunting, reduce pulmonary blood flow, and produce or worsen cyanosis.
- Use ventilatory measures to reduce the PVR. Care must be taken to minimize mean airway pressure so as to avoid the mechanical obstruction of pulmonary blood flow.
- Maintain or increase the SVR. This is particularly important when right ventricular outflow obstruction is severe and changes in PVR will have little or no effect on shunt magnitude and direction.
- Aggressively treat episodes of hypercyanosis.
- Maintain contractility. Depression of contractility, particularly in the face of severe right ventricular outflow obstruction, may produce right ventricular afterload mismatch and drastically reduce pulmonary blood flow. The exception to this is the patient in whom the dynamic component of infundibular obstruction is active. Reducing contractility in these patients may reduce right ventricular outflow obstruction via relaxation of the infundibulum.

The creation of surgical shunts to increase pulmonary blood flow presents the anesthesiologist with several additional management problems:

- When a thoracotomy approach is used, unilateral lung retraction will be required for surgical exposure. The resulting atelectasis may severely compromise oxygenation and CO<sub>2</sub> removal. Intermittent reinflation

of the lung may be necessary during the operative procedure. These reinflations should be coordinated with the surgeon. For all the shunts described, the main or branch pulmonary artery will have to be partially occluded by a clamp to allow the creation of a distal anastomosis. The resulting increase in physiological dead space may compromise oxygenation, and CO<sub>2</sub> removal and increase the arterial-ETCO<sub>2</sub> gradient.

- Efforts to increase pulmonary blood flow by reducing PVR with ventilatory interventions and by increasing L-R shunting should be initiated before pulmonary artery occlusion.
- Partial occlusion of the aorta with a clamp will be necessary during the creation of Waterston, Potts, and central shunts. The resulting increase in left ventricular afterload may compromise systolic function.
- All of the palliative shunts impose a volume load on the left ventricle. The volume load imposed on the left ventricle by these shunts parallels the increases in pulmonary flow produced. There will be progressive hypertrophy of the body and infundibulum of the right ventricle during the interval from shunt placement to definitive repair, as RVOT obstruction will not be relieved. Inotropic support may be necessary to ensure systemic and shunt perfusion after shunt creation.
- Palliative shunts are mildly restrictive simple shunts. It is important to maintain SVR and reduce PVR to maintain pulmonary blood flow in patients with surgical shunts.
- Be prepared to treat an episode of hypercyanosis.

### Induction and Maintenance

Regardless of the mode of induction, aggressive volume expansion with 10–15 ml kg<sup>-1</sup> of 5% albumin or normal saline should be initiated once intravenous access is obtained. This is particularly true in patients who have been nil by mouth (NPO) for a long interval prior to induction. This is the most effective

first-line therapy in preventing and treating dynamic RVOT obstruction.

An intravenous induction is desirable, but most infants and children will tolerate a mask induction with sevoflurane, as there is a parallel decrease in PVR and SVR. Systemic hypotension should be avoided or treated promptly. Systemic hypotension is particularly likely to cause or increase R-L shunting when right ventricular outflow obstruction is severe, as anesthesia-induced decreases in PVR have little effect on decreasing right ventricular outflow resistance. A reduced SVR can be normalized with phenylephrine ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ).

Ketamine is a useful induction agent in patients with TOF. Ketamine has been shown to cause no significant alteration in  $Q_P:Q_S$  in these patients. Fentanyl or sufentanil will provide very stable induction and maintenance hemodynamics, and will blunt stimulation-induced increases in PVR. The maintenance of anesthesia with fentanyl or sufentanil, a muscle relaxant, and a benzodiazepine or inhalation agent, is appropriate.

## Post-CPB Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate (preferably sinus rhythm) at an age-appropriate rate. Cardiac output is likely to be more heart-rate-dependent during the post-CPB period. Atrial pacing may be necessary in the presence of junctional ectopic tachycardia (JET).
- Reduce PVR through ventilatory interventions.
- Inotropic support of the right ventricle may be necessary. Dobutamine ( $5\text{--}10\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$ ) or dopamine ( $5\text{--}10\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$ ) is useful in this instance because they provide potent inotropic support without increasing the PVR. Milrinone ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$  following a loading dose of  $50\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) should be considered for its inotropic and lusitropic effects and its effect on PVR.
- In patients with right ventricular systolic or diastolic function and an atrial fenestration, a  $\text{PaO}_2$  of 40–50 mm Hg is acceptable in the presence of adequate cardiac output.
- Mean airway pressure should be minimized. During mechanical positive-pressure ventilation, the inspiratory phase increases impedance to right ventricular ejection by increasing the right ventricular afterload. As a result, the extent of this afterload elevation is directly related to mean airway pressure as determined by peak inspiratory pressure, respiratory rate (RR) and the inspiratory:expiratory (I:E) ratio.

After definitive repair for TOF, several factors may contribute to impaired right ventricular systolic and diastolic function:

- The creation of a right ventriculotomy and placement of the right ventricular outflow patch produces a segment of dyskinetic right ventricle free wall.
- Protection of the right ventricle from ischemia during aortic cross-clamping is difficult in patients with a hypertrophied right ventricle, as occurs in TOF.
- Enlargement of the RVOT with a transannular patch will create pulmonary regurgitation, which imposes a volume load on the right ventricle.
- Stenosis or hypoplasia of the distal pulmonary arteries or residual right ventricular outflow obstruction will impose a pressure load on the right ventricle.
- A residual VSD will impose a volume load on the right ventricle.

A residual VSD is likely to be very poorly tolerated in the patient with TOF, with the most likely manifestation being low cardiac output syndrome associated with elevated central venous pressure (CVP), left atrial pressure (LAP), and pulmonary artery pressure (PAP). RVOT obstruction will be completely or nearly completely eliminated post-repair. PVR is likely to be low and the pulmonary vasculature very compliant. As a result, there will be potential for a large L-R intracardiac shunt with a residual VSD. This



will place an acute, large volume load on both the left and right ventricles. This is likely to be particularly poorly tolerated by the right ventricle that is concentrically hypertrophied and poorly compliant in response to the chronic pressure overload that existed pre-operatively. The presence of pulmonary insufficiency will further exacerbate right ventricular dysfunction by imposing an additional volume load. Any distal pulmonary artery stenosis, high mean airway pressures, and elevated PVR will all increase the regurgitant volume and subsequent right ventricular volume load.

Following complete repair of TOF with no residual lesions and minimal intra-pulmonary shunt the  $\text{SaO}_2$  should be 100%. In infants and small children, particularly those left with pulmonary insufficiency as the result of a transannular patch and those expected to have a restrictive right ventricular diastolic function as a result of a ventriculotomy and/or extensive right ventricular hypertrophy, the surgeon may choose to leave a 'pop-off' valve by leaving the PFO open or by creating a small (3–4 mm) atrial level fenestration. This will allow physiologic intracardiac R-L shunting, with the ability to augment systemic cardiac output at the expense of systemic oxygen saturation in the setting of right ventricular dysfunction. There will be direct delivery of some desaturated venous blood to the left atrium. In these patients, a  $\text{PaO}_2$  of 40–50 mmHg and a  $\text{SaO}_2$  of 70–80% is acceptable until right ventricular function improves over the course of days.

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is invaluable in assessing for residual lesions, ventricular function and the direction of shunting across the atrial fenestration. Hemodynamic and saturation data can be used to identify and quantify residual intracardiac shunts.

### Postoperative Junctional Ectopic Tachycardia

Postoperative junctional ectopic tachycardia (JET) is a transient tachyarrhythmia that occurs immediately following congenital

heart surgery. The incidence of JET following TOF repair may be as high as 20%. JET is likely secondary to surgical trauma in the area of the atrioventricular node secondary to the retraction necessary to expose the VSD and RVOT from across the tricuspid valve.

JET typically manifests with a junctional rate only slightly faster than the sinus node rate, and is the only narrow-complex tachycardia in which the atrial rate is less than the ventricular rate (A:V ratio < 1:1). Much less commonly (10%), there may be retrograde activation of the atrium with inverted p-waves noted and an A:V ratio of 1:1. In either case, there is loss of AV synchrony (loss of atrial kick). At a heart rate < 160–170 bpm this arrhythmia may be well tolerated, but it is unlikely to be tolerated in the presence of a restrictive diastolic function at any rate. JET with heart rate > 170 bpm is associated with hemodynamic instability and increased postoperative mortality.

Neither cardioversion nor adenosine is effective. Treatment of JET is atrial pacing at a rate slightly faster than the junctional rate reinitiating A-V synchrony. This therapy is effective unless the junctional rate is very fast (> 160–170 bpm), at which point atrial pacing at a faster rate is unlikely to improve hemodynamics because the reinitiation of A-V synchrony is offset by the reduction in diastolic filling time present at these rates.

Atrial re-entrant tachycardia will develop in more than 30% of patients, and high-grade ventricular arrhythmias will be seen in about 10% of cases. The overall incidence of sudden cardiac death is estimated at 0.2% per year of follow-up. The most common dysrhythmogenic mechanisms in TOF involve surgical scars and natural conduction obstacles that create narrow corridors capable of supporting macro-re-entry.

### Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patients with repaired or unrepaired TOF can present for non-cardiac surgery. The preoperative assessment should include a quantitative assessment of the right and left

ventricular function, pulmonary regurgitation, tricuspid regurgitation, pulmonary-to-systemic flow ratio, and an understanding of the repair and major aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAS), if present. Imaging, including echocardiography during the first decade of life and cardiac magnetic resonance starting in the second decade of life, is indicated if there is concern regarding

the degree of right ventricular volume load and dysfunction and pulmonary regurgitation (PR).

Patients at high risk of ventricular tachycardia and sudden cardiac death are older, have undergone multiple cardiac operations, and have a longer QRS duration and evidence of compromised left ventricular systolic and/or diastolic dysfunction.

## 21

## Tetralogy of Fallot with Pulmonary Atresia (TOF/PA)

### Anatomy

Tetralogy of Fallot with pulmonary atresia (TOF/PA) involves the features of TOF and infundibular and pulmonary valvular atresia in conjunction with varying degrees of pulmonary arterial atresia. Four groups are said to exist:

- Group 1 patients have isolated infundibular and pulmonary valve atresia with a main pulmonary artery and distal pulmonary arteries of near-normal size and architecture. In some of these patients, the main pulmonary artery (PA) may extend to the atretic infundibulum. In others, there is short segment atresia of the main PA (Figure 21.1). Patients in this group have pulmonary blood flow supplied from a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA).
- Group 2 patients have an absence of the main PA, but the PAs are in continuity and supplied by a PDA.
- Group 3 patients have severely hypoplastic native PAs; the left and right PA may not be in continuity. There are multiple aortopulmonary collateral vessels (vessels from the aorta to the PA) known as MAPCAs. A PDA may also be present. Some segments of lung may be supplied only by blood from MAPCAs, some only by the native PAs, and others by both sources (Figure 21.1).
- Group 4 patients have no native PAs and all pulmonary blood flow is derived from MAPCAs.

The anatomy of MAPCAs in TOF/PA can almost never be clearly delineated by

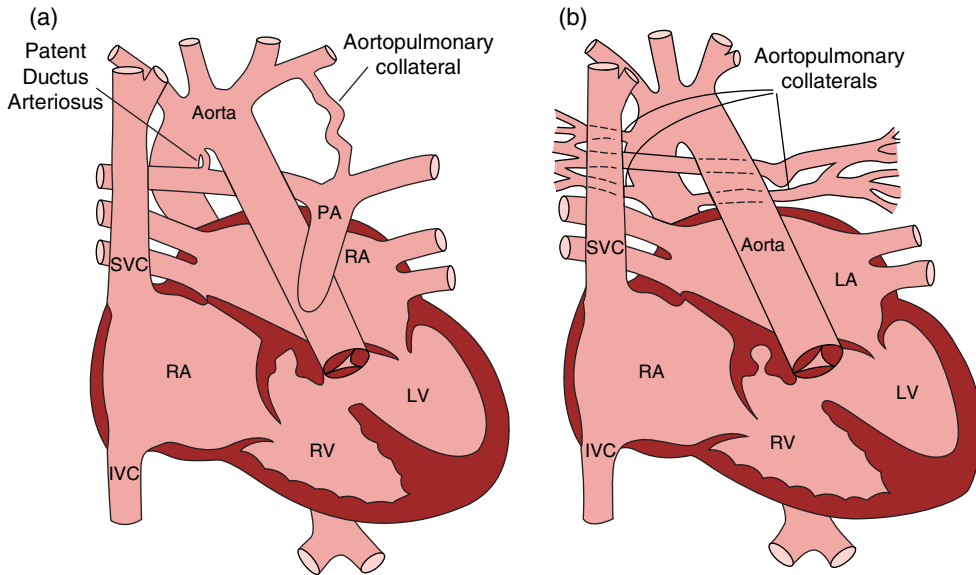
two-dimensional echocardiography alone. Cardiac catheterization and/or magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)/magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) are necessary to delineate collateral anatomy and to determine  $Q_P:Q_S$ .

### Physiology

TOF/PA is a single-ventricle physiology lesion. This lesion is generally amenable to a two-ventricle repair. TOF/PA is a complex shunt in which a communication (ventricular septal defect; VSD) and total obstruction to right ventricular outflow (pulmonary atresia) are present. This results in obligatory right-to-left (R-L) shunting across the VSD, with complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in the left ventricle. Pulmonary blood flow is provided by a downstream simple shunt (PDA or MAPCAs). For infants, in whom the PDA provides most of the pulmonary blood flow, prostaglandin  $E_1$  ( $PGE_1$ ) infusion ( $0.01\text{--}0.05\ \mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$ ) will be necessary to ensure ductal patency.

### Surgical Therapy

Surgery in Group 1 and 2 TOF/PA patients is aimed at establishing a reliable source of pulmonary blood flow in the neonatal period, as these patients are dependent on  $PGE_1$  to maintain a PDA and pulmonary blood flow. These patients may



**Figure 21.1** Anatomy of tetralogy of Fallot/pulmonary atresia. (a) TOF/PA group 1. Short-segment pulmonary atresia, with good-sized pulmonary arteries. The pulmonary arteries are in continuity and supplied by a right-sided PDA and one large MAPCA from the left subclavian artery. There is a right-sided aortic arch. (b) TOF/PA group 3. There is no main pulmonary artery. The small branch pulmonary arteries are in continuity and supplied by MAPCAs.

undergo a palliative shunt procedure (usually a mBTS, as described above) or a definitive procedure. The definitive procedure would be creation of continuity between the right ventricle and the main pulmonary artery (PA) via the placement of a right ventricle (RV) to PA conduit, with VSD closure generally performed via the ventriculotomy used for the proximal end of the conduit. In cases where short segment atresia exists, it may be possible to obtain right ventricle to PA continuity with a direct anastomosis augmented with homograft material or pericardium.

Patients in Groups 3 and 4 present difficult management problems. As a rule, these patients present with univentricular physiology with a tendency for pulmonary blood flow to become excessive ( $Q_P:Q_S > 2-3:1$ ) as the PVR drops following birth. In Group 3 patients, neonatal repair with placement of a right ventricle to PA conduit is undertaken to place the PAs in continuity with the right

ventricle in an effort to promote native PA growth. In this circumstance, the VSD is left open as a source of R-L shunting and delivery of desaturated blood to the systemic circulation, as it would be impossible for the right ventricle to deliver an adequate cardiac output to the left atrium across the hypoplastic pulmonary vascular bed. These infants then undergo multiple cardiac catheterization procedures in order to dilate and stent the hypoplastic native distal pulmonary arteries and to coil embolize MAPCAs which provide pulmonary blood flow that is competitive with blood flow supplied by native PAs.

MAPCAs that provide pulmonary blood flow to segments of lung not supplied by native PAs must be surgically unifocalized to the proximal pulmonary circulation. Unifocalization involves removal of the collateral vessel from the aorta, with subsequent re-anastomosis to a RV to PA conduit or to a proximal PA branch. Although the traditional

approach has been through a thoracotomy, more recently most groups have favored a central approach working through a median sternotomy. It is only when 80–90% of the pulmonary vascular bed is in direct continuity with the right ventricle that closure or fenestrated closure of the VSD can be considered. Usually, this will mean that at least 10 to 12 of the 18 bronchopulmonary segments are now in direct continuity with the right ventricle. As long as the VSD remains open, areas of lung that are not supplied by stenotic collaterals or native pulmonary arteries are at risk of developing the morphological changes of PAH.

In Group 4 patients it is necessary to unifocalize several large collaterals to either the distal end of a conduit from the right ventricle or to a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) or central shunt as the initial intervention. These procedures serve to promote pulmonary vascular growth, prevent the development of pulmonary artery hypertension (PAH) and control the  $Q_P:Q_S$ . Following this initial procedure Group 4 patients can often then be managed like Group 3 patients utilizing additional catheterization and surgical interventions.

Some institutions take a more aggressive operative approach to Group 3 and 4 patients during an initial operative procedure. Unifocalization of MAPCAs that provide pulmonary blood flow to segments of lung not supplied by native PAs are unifocalized to a right ventricle to PA conduit and MAPCAs which provide pulmonary blood flow that is competitive with blood flow supplied by native PAs are ligated. In many instances the VSD can be closed completely or with a fenestration at the time of this initial very lengthy operation.

## Anesthetic Management

These patients are managed according to the principles described in Chapter 24 (Management of single ventricle physiology, pre-initial repair) (see Table 24.2).

## Post-CPB Management

The management issues in patients with Type 1 and 2 TOF/PA who have undergone definitive repair with a RV to PA conduit and VSD closure are similar to those encountered in the care of the patient who has undergone repair for TOF/PS. A few differences merit discussion. These TOF/PA patients will not have pulmonary insufficiency due to the presence of a competent valve in the conduit. The placement of a conduit will, however, require a larger right ventriculotomy and potential for significant right ventricular free wall hypokinesis and dyskinesis.

The management issues in patients with Type 3 and 4 TOF/PA who have undergone a palliative aortopulmonary shunt and unifocalization without VSD closure will be similar to those described for patients with single ventricle physiology. Management of those patients with a right ventricle to PA conduit placement and unifocalization without VSD closure will be similar to patients with a large, non-restrictive VSD. In either case, significant run-off from the aorta, high pulmonary blood flow and a large ventricular volume load will be present if there are a large number of non-unifocalized MAPCAs. In these patients, in the cardiac catheterization laboratory, postoperative embolization of MAPCAs responsible for redundant pulmonary blood flow may be necessary.

## 22

### Tetralogy of Fallot with Absent Pulmonary Valve (TOF/APV)

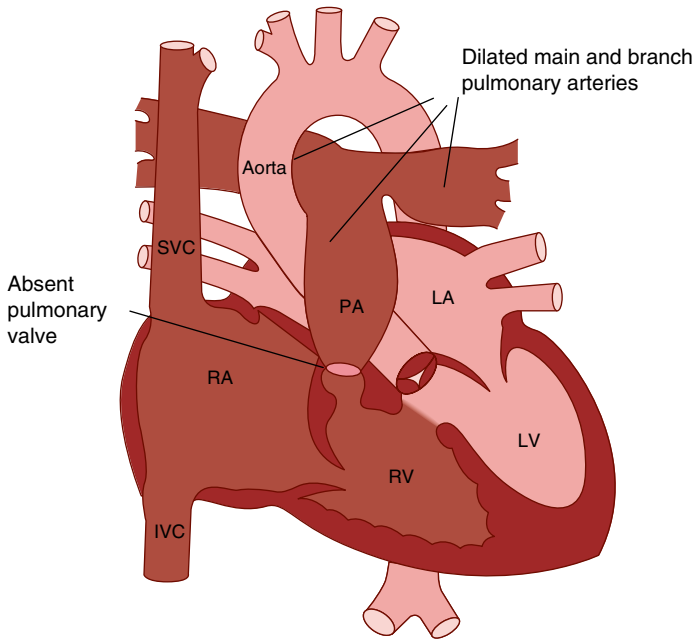
#### Anatomy

Tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve (TOF/APV) is a rare form of congenital heart disease, occurring in approximately 2–6% of patients with TOF (Figure 22.1). These patients have all the components of TOF with pulmonary stenosis (PS), with the exception that the pulmonary valve is severely dysplastic, rendering it both regurgitant and stenotic. *In utero*, free to-and-fro flow between the pulmonary artery and the right ventricle results in right ventricular dilation, dilation of the main and branch pulmonary arteries, and changes in the structure of the intrapulmonary segmental vasculature. At birth, in the most severe form, this results in extrinsic compression of the distal trachea and proximal bronchi by aneurysmal pulmonary arteries, often with associated development of tracheobronchomalacia. The anatomy of the segmental pulmonary arteries is abnormal, with a single segmental artery replaced by an intertwined network of vessels. The compression of intrapulmonary bronchi from these distended and highly pulsatile vessels results in air-trapping and lung hyperinflation, with an alveolar gas-exchange pattern similar to that seen in obstructive lung disease. In the most severe instances, right ventricular dilation may result in compression of the left ventricle. An interesting feature of TOF/APV is

that the ductus arteriosus is almost invariably absent. It is postulated that the combination of a patent ductus, severe pulmonary regurgitation and a large ventricular septal defect (VSD) is simply incompatible with survival, as it will result in massive aortopulmonary shunting and biventricular volume overload.

#### Physiology

Patients with TOF/APV present with a wide spectrum of pathophysiology. At one end of the spectrum, where pulmonary regurgitation is mild and dilation of the pulmonary arteries is largely absent, the patients have a clinical picture similar to patients with TOF and PS. At the other end of the spectrum, symptoms of both large and small airway obstruction define the clinical picture. Children with significant airway pathology present in infancy with severe respiratory symptoms, and often require mechanical ventilation carefully managed to minimize air-trapping and hyperinflation. These patients often benefit from ventilation in the prone position as it can reduce extrinsic airway compression. Such patients require immediate surgical intervention. Children with less severe airway pathology can undergo semi-elective surgical repair similar to that scheduled for patients with TOF and PS.



**Figure 22.1** Tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve with aneurysmal dilation of the pulmonary arteries.

## Surgical Therapy

Surgical therapy involves a reduction of the size of the dilated main and branch pulmonary arteries, VSD closure, and the creation of a competent pulmonary valve. The elimination of pulmonary regurgitation will reduce the pulsatility of the segmental arteries, and thereby reduce the amount of intrapulmonary bronchial compression. A number of surgical strategies employing one or more of the following are utilized: (i) replacement of the main pulmonary artery with a valved homograft; (ii) surgical reduction of the dilated branch pulmonary arteries, both proximal and distal to the hilum of the lungs; (iii) the creation of a monocusp valve in the surgically reduced main pulmonary artery; and (iv) translocation of the pulmonary arteries anterior to the aorta (Lecompte maneuver) to reduce bronchial compression.

## Anesthetic Management

Patients without respiratory pathophysiology are managed according to the principles outlined in Chapter 20 on TOF. In patients with respiratory pathophysiology the challenge is to provide adequate alveolar ventilation, given the constraints imposed by proximal and distal airway obstruction.

## Post-CPB Management

These patients are managed from a hemodynamic perspective according to the principles outlined in Chapter 20 on TOF. A marked improvement in ventilation should occur following surgical repair, but complete resolution is unlikely secondary to the tracheo-bronchomalacia that may persist for weeks or months after repair.

## 23

### Transposition of the Great Arteries (TGA)

#### Introduction

Transposition of the great arteries (TGA) accounts for 7–8% of all congenital heart defects, with a prevalence of 0.2 per 1000 live births and a male preponderance of 3:1. Sibling recurrence rates of 0.27% and 2% have been noted.

#### Anatomy

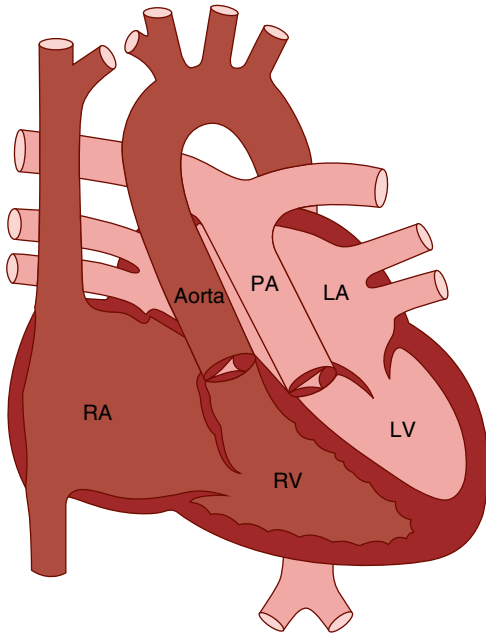
In TGA there is concordance of the atrioventricular connections associated with discordance of the ventriculoarterial connections (Figure 23.1). The most common manifestation of this anatomy occurs in patients with [S,D,D] segmental anatomy. That is, there is atrial situs solitus, D-loop ventricles, and D-loop great arteries. A right-sided right atrium connects via a right-sided tricuspid valve and right ventricle to a right-sided and anterior aorta. A left-sided left atrium connects via a left-sided mitral valve and left ventricle to a left-sided and posterior pulmonary artery. As a result, there is fibrous continuity between the mitral and pulmonic valves, with a lack of fibrous continuity between the tricuspid and aortic valves (conus). This anatomy is most commonly referred to as D-TGA. In D-TGA, the combination of atrioventricular concordance (right atrium to right ventricle; left atrium to left ventricle) and ventriculoarterial discordance (right ventricle to aorta; left ventricle to pulmonary

artery) produces a parallel rather than a normal series circulation.

The coronary arteries in D-TGA arise from the aortic sinuses that face the pulmonary artery. In normally related vessels, these sinuses are located on the anterior portion of the aorta, while in D-TGA they are located posteriorly. In the majority of D-TGA patients (70%) the right sinus is the origin of the right coronary artery, whereas the left sinus is the origin of the left main coronary artery. In the remainder of cases, there is considerable variability (Figure 23.2).

In patients with D-TGA, the most commonly associated cardiac anomalies are a persistent patent foramen ovale (PFO), patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), ventricular septal defect (VSD), and subpulmonic stenosis or left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction. Approximately 50% of patients with D-TGA will present with a PDA. The foramen ovale is almost always patent, but a true secundum atrial septal defect (ASD) exists in only about 5% of patients. Although angiographically detectable VSDs may occur in 30–40% of patients, only about one-third of these defects are hemodynamically significant. Thus, for practical purposes, 75% of patients have an intact ventricular septum (IVS). LVOT obstruction is present in about 30% of patients with VSD, and is most often due to an extensive subpulmonary fibromuscular ring or posterior malposition of the outlet portion of the ventricular septum. Only 5% of patients with IVS have significant





**Figure 23.1** Transposition of the great arteries with intact ventricular septum. RA, Right atria; RV, Right ventricle; LA, Left atria; LV, Left ventricle; PA, Pulmonary arteries.

LVOT obstruction. In these patients, there is a dynamic obstruction of the LVOT during systole due to a leftward bulging of the ventricular septum and the anterior movement of the anterior mitral valve leaflet. The septal shift necessary to produce this obstruction is uncommon in neonates due to the presence of an elevated pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). Valvular pulmonary stenosis is rare in patients with TGA. Other, less commonly seen lesions are tricuspid or mitral regurgitation (4% of each) and a coarctation of the aorta (5%).

Bronchopulmonary collateral vessels (aorta to pulmonary artery proximal to the pulmonary capillaries) are visible angiographically in 30% of patients with D-TGA. The larger and more extensive collaterals generally involve the right lung. These collaterals provide a site for intercirculatory mixing and have been implicated in the accelerated development of pulmonary hypertension.

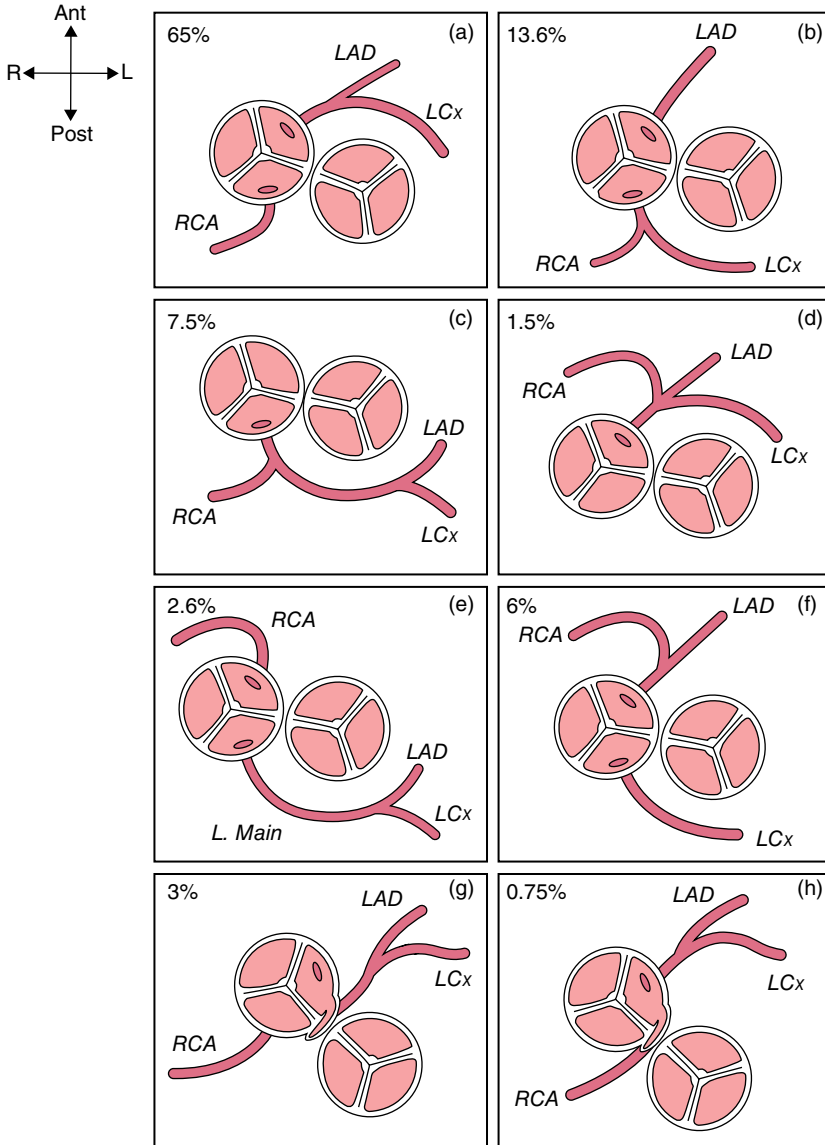
## Physiology

D-TGA produces two parallel circulations with recirculation of systemic and pulmonary venous blood. Survival depends on one or more communications between the two circuits to allow intercirculatory mixing. The sites available for intercirculatory mixing in D-TGA can be intracardiac (PFO, ASD, VSD) or extracardiac (PDA, bronchopulmonary collaterals). Several factors affect the amount of intercirculatory mixing. The number, size and position of anatomic communications are important. One large, non-restrictive communication will provide better mixing than two or three restrictive communications. Reduced ventricular compliance and elevated systemic vascular resistance (SVR) and PVR tend to reduce intercirculatory mixing by impeding flow across the anatomic communications. The position of the communication is also important. Poor mixing occurs even with large anterior muscular VSDs due to their unfavorable position.

Patients with pulmonary stenosis will have a low pulmonary blood flow and may be hypoxemic, despite a relatively large intercirculatory communication. Patients with a high pulmonary blood flow, particularly those with a VSD in whom systemic pressures are transmitted to the pulmonary vasculature, are at risk of developing pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH). In the presence of a good-sized intercirculatory communication, these patients will initially not be hypoxemic. However, the progressive development of PAH will eventually reduce pulmonary blood flow and produce hypoxemia. Finally, all patients with TGA and increased pulmonary blood flow will have a large volume load imposed on the left atrium and left ventricle.

Four clinical subsets based on anatomy, pulmonary blood flow, and intercirculatory mixing can be used to characterize patients with D-TGA. These are summarized in Table 23.1.

In TGA with VSD some intercirculatory mixing occurs at the ventricular level, but there is predominantly anatomic right-to-left (R-L) shunting (effective pulmonary blood



**Figure 23.2** Most common coronary artery patterns in transposition of the great arteries and their percentages in patients with TGA. The aorta is anterior and rightward to the pulmonary artery. (a) Normal coronary anatomy. (b) LCx from RCA and LAD coming from sinus 1. (c) Single coronary coming from sinus 2. (d) Single coronary coming from sinus 1. (e) Inverted origins RCA coming from sinus 1 and LCA coming from sinus 2. (f) LAD and RCA coming from sinus 1 and LCx coming from sinus 2. (g) Intramural LCA with origin of LCA and RCA both from sinus 2 and intramural course of LCA. (h) Intramural RCA with origin of RCA and LCA from sinus 1 and intramural course of RCA. Sinus 1 is the left or anterior facing sinus. Sinus 2 is the right or posterior facing sinus. LAD, left anterior descending; LCA, left coronary artery; LCx, left circumflex; RCA, right coronary artery.

flow) at the VSD (RV-LV-PA) and PDA (RV-AO-PA) and anatomic left-to-right (L-R) shunting (effective systemic blood flow) at the PFO or ASD (LA-RA-RV-AO). In TGA

with IVS the anatomic mixing sites are usually a PDA and a PFO.

The dynamics of intercirculatory mixing in TGA/IVS are complex. In the absence of other

**Table 23.1** Characterization of patients with D-TGA based on anatomy, pulmonary blood flow and intercirculatory mixing.

Anatomy	Pulmonary blood flow	Intercirculatory mixing
D-TGA with IVS	Increased	Small
D-TGA with IVS; non-restrictive atrial septum or PDA	Increased	Large
D-TGA with VSD	Increased	Large
D-TGA with VSD and LVOT obstruction	Reduced	Small
D-TGA with PAH	Reduced	Small

anatomic mixing sites, shunting at the atrial level is ultimately determined by the size of the atrial communication and the cyclical pressure variations between the left and right atria. The volume and compliance of the atria, ventricles and vascular beds in each circuit, as well as heart rate and phase of respiration, influence this relationship. Shunting is from the right atrium to the left atrium during diastole as the result of the reduced ventricular and vascular compliance of the systemic circuit. In systole, shunting is from the left atrium to the right atrium, primarily because of the large volume of blood returning to the left atrium as a result of the high volume of recirculated pulmonary blood flow.

The direction of shunting across the PDA largely depends on the PVR and the size of the intra-atrial communication. When the PVR is low and the intra-atrial communication is non-restrictive, shunting is predominantly from the aorta to the pulmonary artery via the PDA (effective pulmonary blood flow) and almost exclusively from the left to right atrium across the atrial septum (effective systemic blood flow). When PVR is elevated, shunting across the PDA is likely to be bidirectional, which would in turn encourage bidirectional shunting across the atrial septum. When the PVR is high and the pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) exceeds aortic pressure, shunting at the PDA will be predominantly from the pulmonary artery to the aorta. This will create reverse differential cyanosis. Reverse differential cyanosis is a finding unique to D-TGA/IVS with

elevated PVR or aortic arch obstruction. In this physiology, the preductal arterial saturation is lower than the postductal arterial saturation. This is usually the result of a restrictive atrial communication producing left atrial hypertension and elevated pulmonary artery pressures, and is associated with low effective blood flows (poor mixing) and hypoxemia. A balloon atrial septostomy (BAS) can be lifesaving in this setting. Decompression of the left atrium promotes mixing at the atrial level and also reduces PVR and PAP promoting mixing at the PDA.

Neonates with D-TGA/IVS and a restrictive PDA and atrial septum will be hypoxemic (arterial saturation  $\leq 60\%$ ) within the first day of life. A proportion of these patients will have severely reduced effective pulmonary and systemic blood flows resulting in a  $\text{PaO}_2 < 20 \text{ mmHg}$ , hypercarbia, and an evolving metabolic acidosis secondary to the poor tissue oxygen delivery. Prostaglandin  $\text{E}_1$  ( $\text{PGE}_1$ ; maintenance dose  $0.01\text{--}0.05 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ ) is routinely administered to dilate and maintain the patency of the ductus arteriosus. This will be effective in increasing effective pulmonary and systemic blood flows, and in improving  $\text{PaO}_2$  and tissue oxygen delivery if PVR is less than SVR and there is a non-restrictive or minimally restrictive atrial septal communication.

At some centers, all neonates stabilized on  $\text{PGE}_1$  alone will undergo a BAS to enlarge the atrial septal communication so that  $\text{PGE}_1$  can be stopped and surgery scheduled on a semi-elective basis.  $\text{PGE}_1$  infusion is associated with apnea, pyrexia, fluid retention, and

platelet dysfunction. Recent investigations linking BAS to subsequent embolic neurologic injury must be considered in the risk-benefit analysis of non-emergent BAS.

If PGE<sub>1</sub> does not improve tissue oxygen delivery, then an emergent BAS is performed in the catheterization laboratory utilizing angiography, or in the intensive care unit utilizing echocardiography. These patients require tracheal intubation and mechanical ventilation. This allows a reduction of PVR via the induction of a respiratory alkalosis and elimination of pulmonary V/Q mismatch. Sedation and muscle relaxation reduce oxygen consumption thereby increasing mixed venous O<sub>2</sub> saturation. For a given amount of intercirculatory mixing and total systemic blood flow, an increase in systemic venous or pulmonary venous saturation will result in an increase in arterial saturation.

In rare instances, the combination of PGE<sub>1</sub>, a BAS, and mechanical ventilation with sedation and muscle relaxation may be ineffective. In this circumstance, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO; either veno-arterial or veno-veno) support to improve tissue oxygenation and to reverse end-organ insult and lactic acidosis prior to surgery is indicated.

## Surgical Therapy

### Anatomic Repair or the Arterial (Jatene) Switch Procedure

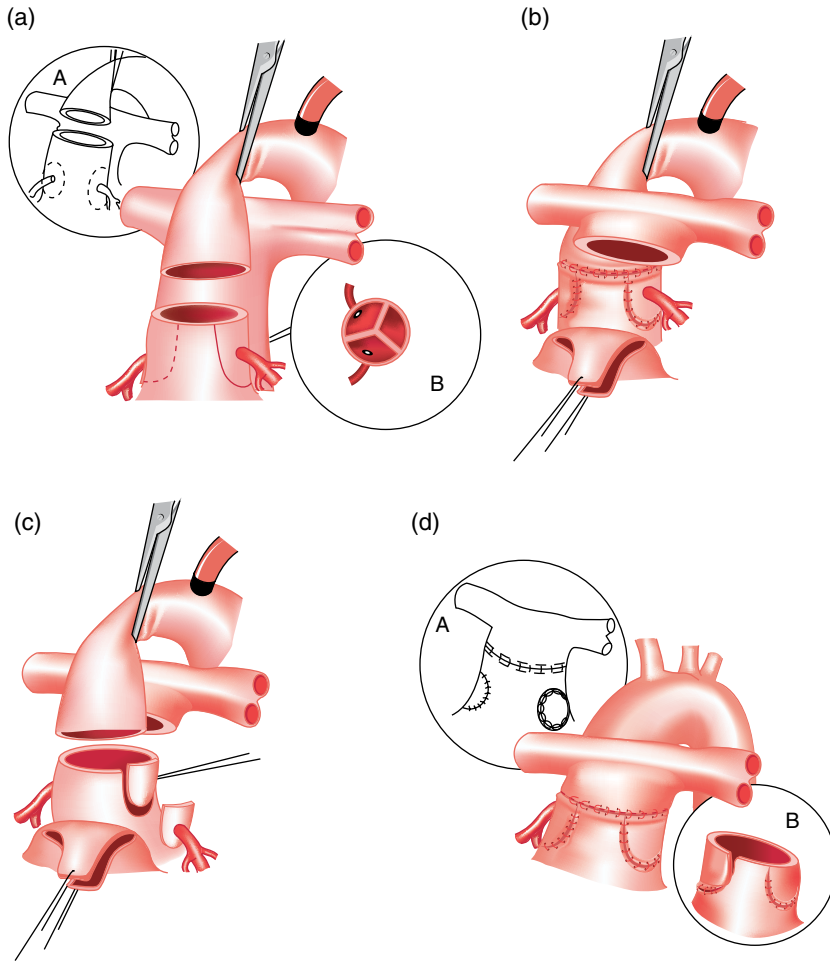
The arterial switch operation (ASO) anatomically corrects the discordant ventriculo-arterial connections. After repair, the right ventricle is connected to the pulmonary artery and the left ventricle is connected to the aorta. Clinical success with the ASO (as summarized in Figure 23.3) was achieved in 1975. In brief, the pulmonary artery and the aorta are transected distal to their respective valves. The coronary arteries are initially explanted from the ascending aorta with 3–4 mm of surrounding tissue. The explant sites are repaired either with pericardium or

synthetic material. The coronary arteries are re-implanted into the proximal pulmonary artery (neo-aorta), and the great arteries are then switched with the distal pulmonary artery brought anterior (Lecompte maneuver) to be re-anastomosed to the old proximal aorta (right ventricular outflow), and the distal aorta re-anastomosed to the old proximal pulmonary artery (left ventricular outflow).

Most patients with D-TGA have a coronary anatomy that is suitable for coronary re-implantation. Patients with certain types of coronary anatomy (inverted coronaries, single right coronary artery) are at risk for postoperative myocardial ischemia and death because re-implantation can result in a distortion of the coronary ostia or narrowing of the artery itself. The emergence of two parallel coronary arteries above, but in contact with, the posterior valve commissure or the intramural origin of the coronaries also presents a technical challenge. These patients may require resuspension of the neopulmonary valve after the coronaries and a surrounding tissue cuff have been excised.

In order for the ASO to be successful, the original pulmonary (left) ventricle must have sufficient mass to be capable of becoming the systemic ventricle. Patient selection and the timing of the surgical procedure are important variables in determining the success of this procedure. Two-dimensional echocardiography is used to non-invasively assess the left ventricle:right ventricle pressure ratio and to determine the extent to which the left ventricular mass has regressed.

The ASO was originally described in patients with D-TGA and a large VSD or a large PDA. In these patients, the pulmonary (left) ventricle remains exposed to systemic pressures and the left ventricular mass remains sufficient to support the systemic circulation. For such patients, the ASO must be performed within the first two to three months of life to prevent intractable congestive heart failure (CHF) or irreversible pulmonary arterial hypertension. In these patients, the ASO is generally performed



**Figure 23.3** Arterial switch operation (ASO). (a) The aorta is transected and the left and right coronary arteries are excised using (A) either a button of aortic wall or (B) a segment of aortic wall extending from the rim of the aorta. (b) An equivalent segment of pulmonary arterial wall (previously marked) is excised, and the coronary arteries are sutured to the pulmonary artery. (c) The distal pulmonary artery is brought anterior to the ascending aorta, and the proximal pulmonary artery is anastomosed to the distal aorta. (d) The sites of coronary artery explanation are repaired using either (A) a patch of Gore-Tex or (B) a segment of pericardium. Finally, the proximal aorta is sutured to the distal pulmonary artery. Reproduced with permission from Casteneda, A.R., Norwood, W.I., Jonas, R.A., *et al.* (1984) Transposition of the great arteries and intact ventricular septum: anatomical repair in the neonate. *Ann. Thorac. Surg.*, **38** (5), 438–443.

within the first few weeks of life. Closure of the VSD is preferentially performed transatrially through the tricuspid valve. It is desirable to avoid approaching a VSD through the right ventricle because an incision in the ventricle may contribute substantially to postoperative right ventricular dysfunction.

In patients with D-TGA and IVS, there is progressive reduction in left ventricular

mass as the physiologic pulmonary hypertension present at birth resolves progressively over the first days after birth. Adequate left ventricular mass to support the systemic circulation exists in these patients for only the first two to three months after birth. In patients with D-TGA and IVS, the ASO can be performed primarily or as the second phase of a staged procedure. A primary ASO

is generally suitable for D-TGA and IVS patients within the first two months of life and is usually performed within the first week of life.

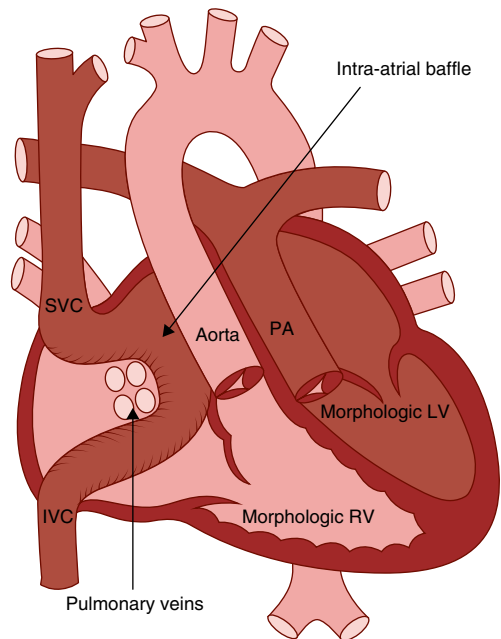
The two-stage repair for D-TGA with IVS is used for neonates in whom there has been significant regression of left ventricular mass. These are generally neonates in whom surgery cannot be performed during the first several weeks of life secondary to prematurity, sepsis, low birth weight (<1.5 kg), or late referral. The left ventricle is prepared to accept the systemic workload by placement of a pulmonary artery band. In addition, an aortopulmonary shunt with entry to the pulmonary artery distal to the band is necessary to prevent hypoxemia. The band must be tight enough to increase pressure in the pulmonary (left) ventricle to approximately one-half to two-thirds that in the systemic (right) ventricle. This will increase the afterload sufficiently to prevent any regression of left ventricular mass. However, if the band is too tight, there may be left ventricular decompensation secondary to afterload mismatch.

Generally, a rapid two-stage repair is performed. The ASO is performed as early as one week after preparatory pulmonary artery banding, often during the same hospitalization. This approach is based on the fact that a doubling of left ventricular mass is seen after one week of pulmonary artery banding. The staged procedure is complicated by the fact that placement of the pulmonary artery band to the proper tightness is not an easy task, and that the pulmonary artery band and systemic to pulmonary artery shunt may result in distortion of the pulmonary artery, making the definite ASO difficult.

The ASO is generally not performed on patients in whom mechanical left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction (subpulmonic stenosis) exists. Correction of the LVOT obstruction is difficult, and without its complete correction these patients will be left with aortic or subaortic stenosis. On the other hand, patients with dynamic LVOT obstruction have been shown to have no gradient across the LVOT after the ASO.

### Intra-Atrial Physiologic Repair: Mustard and Senning Procedures

Both the Mustard and Senning procedures (see Figure 23.4) are atrial switch procedures that surgically create discordant atrioventricular connections in the presence of the pre-existing discordant ventriculoarterial connections. Therefore, after repair, systemic venous blood is routed to the left ventricle, which is in continuity with the pulmonary artery. Likewise, pulmonary venous blood is routed to the right ventricle, which is in continuity with the aorta. This arrangement results in a physiologic but not an anatomic correction of D-TGA. Following these procedures, the right ventricle remains the systemic ventricle and the tricuspid valve remains the systemic atrioventricular valve.



**Figure 23.4** The Mustard procedure. The Mustard procedure redirects pulmonary and systemic venous return via an intra-atrial baffle after excision of the interatrial septum. The baffle is made from pericardium or synthetic material. Note the trabeculated right ventricle and smooth inner wall of the left ventricle. SVC, Superior vena cava; IVC, Inferior vena cava; RV, Right ventricle; LV, left ventricle; PA, Pulmonary artery.

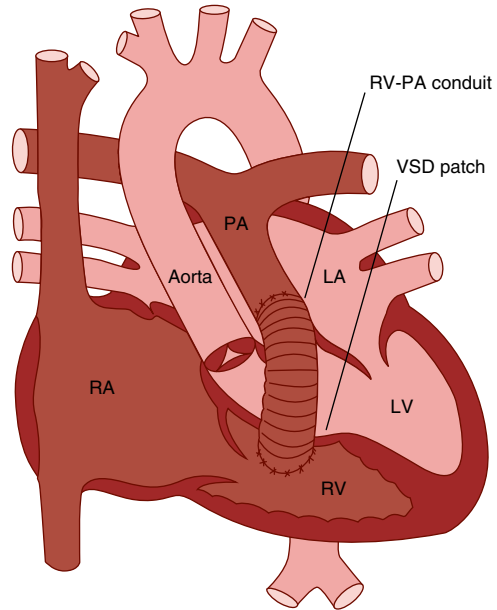
The Mustard procedure redirects pulmonary and systemic venous return via an intra-atrial baffle after excision of the interatrial septum. The baffle is made from pericardium or synthetic material. In the Senning procedure, autologous tissue from the right atrial wall and intra-atrial septum is used in place of pericardium or synthetic material. Following both procedures, pulmonary venous blood is directed over the top of the baffle to cross the tricuspid valve, while systemic venous blood is directed beneath the baffle to cross the mitral valve.

Long-term exposure of the right ventricle and tricuspid valve to systemic pressure results in progressive right ventricular dysfunction. Both, systemic and pulmonary venous obstruction may occur as the result of these procedures. The incidence of dysrhythmias after these procedures is high: 64% of patients have dysrhythmias, 28% of which are serious (bradycardia, sick-sinus syndrome, atrial flutter). Because the Senning procedure uses autologous atrial tissue some believe that it is superior to the Mustard procedure in preserving atrial contractility and optimizing atrial growth potential.

### Rastelli, Lecompte, and Nikaidoh Procedures

The ASO is generally not performed on patients with significant anatomic and fixed LVOT obstruction (subpulmonic stenosis; patients with dynamic LVOT obstruction are likely to have no gradient across the LVOT after the ASO). Correction of some types and severities of anatomic LVOT obstruction is possible, and these patients are also potential candidates for ASO. For patients with D-TGA, VSD, and severe anatomic LVOT obstruction (subpulmonary stenosis), a Lecompte, Nikaidoh, or Rastelli procedure is performed (Figure 23.5).

With the Rastelli procedure, the VSD is closed via a right ventriculotomy with a patch that directs left ventricular blood through the aorta. The proximal pulmonary artery is ligated and a valved conduit is placed from the right ventriculotomy to the pulmonary artery, thereby bypassing the subpulmonic stenosis.



**Figure 23.5** The Rastelli procedure. The VSD is closed via a right ventriculotomy with a patch that directs left ventricular blood through the aorta. The proximal pulmonary artery is ligated and a valved conduit is placed from the right ventriculotomy to the pulmonary artery, thereby bypassing the subpulmonic stenosis. RV-PA, Right ventricle-Pulmonary artery conduit; VSD, ventricular septal defect; RA, right atria; RV, Right ventricle; LA, Left atria; LV, Left ventricle.

placed from the right ventriculotomy to the pulmonary artery, thereby bypassing the subpulmonic stenosis. LVOT obstruction may result from the non-anatomic pathway created between the left ventricle and the aorta. Balloon dilations and eventual replacement of the valved right ventricle-pulmonary artery conduit are usually necessary because of conduit calcification leading to stenosis and because the patient outgrows the conduit. Conduit balloon dilation in turn may cause conduit regurgitation.

The Lecompte and Nikaidoh procedures are performed to create a more anatomic, less tortuous pathway between the left ventricle and aorta, thereby potentially reducing the incidence of re-intervention to treat LVOT obstruction. The Lecompte or REV (Reparation a L'etage Ventriculaire)

procedure involves enlargement of the VSD prior to patch closure to direct left ventricular flow to the aorta. The pulmonary artery is transected just above the valve, and the proximal stump is ligated. The Lecompte maneuver to bring the pulmonary artery anterior to the aorta is performed. The distal pulmonary artery segment, augmented with autologous pericardium, is re-anastomosed to the right ventriculotomy site, creating a right ventricle to pulmonary artery continuity. The pulmonary artery segment may be fitted with an autologous pericardial monocusp valve to reduce the severity of pulmonary insufficiency. The Nikaidoh procedure involves translocation of the root of the aorta posterior to overlie the left ventricle, closure of the VSD, and translocation of the pulmonary artery anteriorly (Lecompte maneuver) prior to creating right ventricle to pulmonary artery continuity.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. Decreases in cardiac output decrease systemic venous saturation with a resultant decrease in arterial saturation.
- Maintain ductal patency with PGE<sub>1</sub> (0.01–0.05 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) in ductal-dependent patients.
- Avoid increases in PVR relative to SVR. Increases in PVR will decrease pulmonary blood flow and reduce intercirculatory mixing. For patients with PAH, ventilatory interventions should be used to reduce PVR. For patients with LVOT obstruction that is not severe, ventilatory interventions to reduce PVR increase pulmonary blood flow and intercirculatory mixing.
- Reductions in SVR relative to PVR should be avoided. Decreased SVR increases recirculation of systemic venous blood and decreases arterial saturation.

### Induction and Maintenance

In prostaglandin-dependent neonates the PGE<sub>1</sub> infusion should be continued until cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) to assure an adequate intercirculatory mixing. The increased pulmonary blood flow will limit the cardiac reserve of these patients, and the immature myocardium will be sensitive to anesthetic-induced myocardial depression.

In infants older than 6–8 months, premedication may be necessary to facilitate separation from the parents. In the absence of an intravenous access, oral midazolam (0.5–1.0 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) with/without oral ketamine (3–7 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>) is useful. Older, better-compensated children, such as those presenting for a Rastelli repair with a functioning systemic to pulmonary artery shunt, may require a substantial oral premedication.

An inhalational induction or an intramuscular ketamine induction followed by placement of an intravenous line and conversion to a high-dose fentanyl technique may be suitable for these patients. A similar approach may be taken for older children with subpulmonic stenosis. A high-dose fentanyl technique is useful in blunting the stress-induced increases in PVR that are so detrimental to these patients.

Hypercarbia, acidosis, and hypoxemia further increase PVR and should be avoided because of the limited myocardial reserve of neonates and infants. This is particularly true in neonates with TGV and IVS, where systemic oxygen delivery is tenuous, and in infants with TGV and VSD, in whom left ventricular volume overload is present. In addition, reactive increases in PVR are commonly seen in the immature pulmonary vasculature and may severely compromise pulmonary blood flow.

## Post-CPB Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate (preferably sinus rhythm) at an age-appropriate rate. Cardiac output is likely to be more heart-rate-dependent



during the post-CPB period. For patients having undergone atrial baffle procedures, anti-dysrhythmic therapy or pacing may be necessary.

- Myocardial ischemia after coronary re-implantation should be treated aggressively and prompt an immediate re-evaluation of the anastomoses and the possibility of external compression.
- Reductions in aortic and pulmonary artery pressures may be necessary to help prevent suture line bleeding after the ASO.
- Systemic ventricular (right ventricle after atrial baffle procedures and left ventricle after arterial switch procedures) dysfunction may necessitate inotropic and vasodilator therapy to terminate CPB. Dobutamine ( $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$ ) or dopamine ( $5\text{--}10\ \mu\text{g}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$ ) is useful. Milrinone ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\ \mu\text{g}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}\cdot\text{min}^{-1}$  following a loading dose of  $25\text{--}50\ \mu\text{g}\cdot\text{kg}^{-1}$ ) may be a better choice if the SVR is high. Milrinone has direct SVR-reducing effects in addition to inotropic, lusitropic, and PVR-reducing effects.

After atrial baffle repairs, there may be pulmonary and systemic venous obstruction. Systemic venous obstruction will produce systemic venous congestion and a low right atrial pressure. Pulmonary venous obstruction may result in pulmonary venous and PAH, pulmonary edema, and hypoxemia. Efforts to reduce SVR will reduce the right ventricular afterload and help prevent tricuspid regurgitation. Therapy for atrial dysrhythmias also may be necessary. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) will prove useful in ruling out pulmonary and systemic venous obstruction. In addition, large baffle leaks that may require surgical revision will be detected.

After the arterial switch procedure, there may be extensive bleeding from the aortic and pulmonary suture lines. Myocardial ischemia following re-implantation of the coronary arteries is a potential problem following the ASO. In some circumstances, the ischemia is transient secondary to coronary air emboli. TEE is very useful to assure

adequate removal of air from the left atrium and ventricle prior to the termination of CPB. It is also useful in assessing the patency of the re-implanted coronary arteries. Maintenance of high perfusion pressures on CPB after aortic cross-clamp removal will facilitate the distal migration of air emboli. In other instances, kinking of the re-implanted artery or compromise of the implanted coronary ostia may require immediate surgical intervention. External compression of the coronaries by clot or surgical hemostatic packing material should also be considered. Pharmacologic intervention with traditional therapies to improve the balance of myocardial oxygen demand and delivery such as nitroglycerin and beta-blockade are never a long-term alternative to prompt surgical revision of the appropriate anastomosis.

Despite comprehensive preoperative evaluation, the left ventricle of patients undergoing an ASO may be marginal in its ability to support the systemic circulation in the post-CPB period. This may occur as the result of myocardial ischemia, inadequate left ventricular mass, poor protection of the left ventricle during aortic cross-clamping, or a combination of these variables. TEE is useful in identifying and continuously evaluating both global and regional left ventricular systolic dysfunction. It also detects mitral regurgitation, which may occur secondary to papillary muscle dysfunction or to dilation of the mitral valve annulus. Inotropic support of the left ventricle and afterload reduction may be necessary to terminate CPB. Initial inotropic support is accomplished with dopamine, and in rare instances where left ventricular failure is severe, epinephrine may be added.

A unique cycle of left ventricular dilation initiating and exacerbating myocardial ischemia exists in patients having undergone the arterial switch. Myocardial ischemia, afterload mismatch, or overzealous volume infusion can result in left ventricular distension and left atrial hypertension. This will be particularly likely if there is mitral insufficiency from either papillary muscle dysfunction or dilation of the

mitral valve annulus. Left ventricular distension may result in tension on and kinking of the coronary re-anastomosis sites. Left atrial hypertension produces elevations in PAP and distension of the pulmonary artery. Since the Lecompte maneuver (see Figure 23.3) brings the distal pulmonary artery anterior to the ascending aorta, distension of the pulmonary artery may actually compress or place tension on the coronary ostia. The resulting myocardial ischemia produces further left ventricular dilation, progressive elevations in left atrial and pulmonary artery pressures, and continuing compromise of coronary blood flow.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Patient presenting for non-cardiac surgery should be investigated for the type of repair, and evaluated for ventricular and valvular function, and possible arrhythmias or sinus node dysfunction.

## Congenitally Corrected Transposition of the Great Vessels

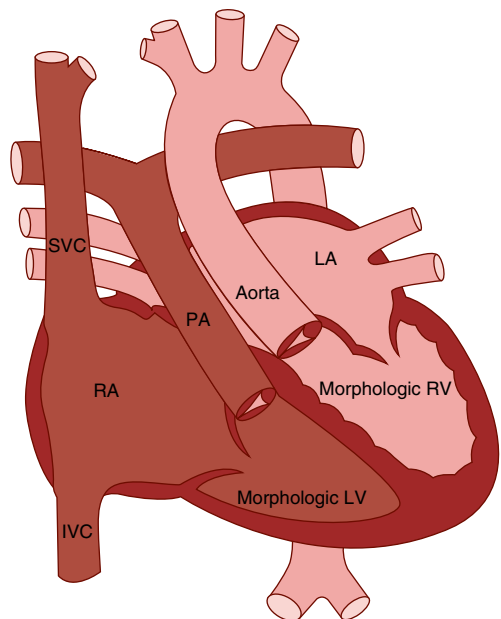
### Introduction

Congenitally corrected transposition of the great vessels (C-TGV) is a lesion that may go undetected for decades, or which may manifest in the neonatal period depending on the other associated cardiac lesions. Traditional surgical therapy for this lesion has less than optimal long-term results. Fortunately, recent advances in surgical therapy offer new options for patients with C-TGV.

### Anatomy

C-TGV refers specifically to the anatomic circumstance wherein there is discordance of the atrioventricular connections associated

with discordance of the ventriculoarterial connections. The most common manifestation (94%) of this physiology occurs in patients with [S,L,L] segmental anatomy; that is, there is atrial situs solitus, L-loop ventricles, and L-loop great arteries. A right-sided right atrium connects via a right-sided mitral valve and a left ventricle to a right-sided pulmonary artery. A left-sided left atrium connects via a left-sided tricuspid valve and a right ventricle to a left-sided aorta (Figure 23.6). Although these patients have a series circulation, there is a high incidence of associated cardiac abnormalities that are of clinical importance. In addition, the morphologic right ventricle functions as the systemic arterial ventricle. A VSD is present in 70% of patients. The VSD is typically a large subpulmonary perimembranous defect. LVOT obstruction (pulmonary atresia, pulmonary and subpulmonary stenosis) occurs in 56% of patients, and is always associated with a VSD. Subpulmonary obstruction may be the result of a posterior



**Figure 23.6** Transposition of the great arteries with ventricular inversion, intact ventricular septum, left aortic arch.

deviation of the conal septal portion of the VSD towards the left ventricle free wall or atrioventricular (AV) valve tissue. Isolated pulmonary valve stenosis is rare.

Abnormalities of the left-sided systemic valve (tricuspid valve) are intrinsic to this lesion, although functional consequences are limited to about 50% of patients. The valve is said to be Ebstein-like, with tethering of the septal and posterior leaflets to the posterior wall of the right ventricle by short, thickened chordae. Unlike Ebstein's anomaly there is rarely apical displacement of the valve leaflets with subsequent atrialization of the right ventricle, nor is there associated tricuspid stenosis.

Disturbances of AV conduction (primarily AV block) are common in patients with [S,L,L] anatomy, with the incidence of spontaneous complete heart block approximately 2% per year for each patient. The position of the AV node is abnormal; it is located anteriorly, superiorly between the orifice of the right atrial appendage and the mitral valve annulus rather than in the apex of the triangle of Koch. As a result, the non-branching portion of the AV conduction bundle has an elongated, tenuous course which courses just under the right, anterior facing leaflet of the pulmonary valve. AV block is felt to be the result of fibrosis of the junction between the AV node and the AV conduction bundle.

Coronary artery anatomy in C-TGV is consistently inverted. The right-sided coronary artery gives rise to the LAD and circumflex arteries, while the left-sided coronary has the course and distribution of a normal right coronary artery.

## Physiology

In C-TGV or physiologically corrected TGV, the combination of atrioventricular discordance (RA to LV; LA to RV) and ventriculoarterial discordance (RV to aorta; LV to pulmonary artery) produces a 'normal' series circulation wherein blood circulates physiologically. Patients with associated

VSD will have a physiology identical to that of patients with normal segmental anatomy and VSD, while those with VSD and LVOT obstruction will have a physiology identical to that of patients with normal segmental anatomy and VSD with pulmonary or sub-pulmonary stenosis.

## Surgical Management

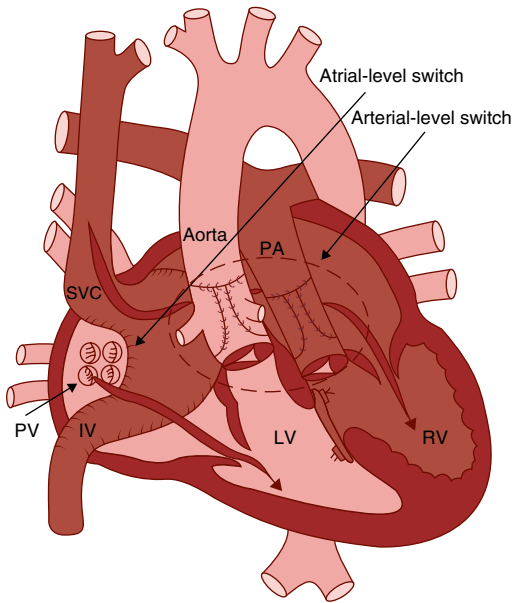
### Traditional Repair for C-TGV

Traditional repair for C-TGV involves the surgical treatment of associated lesions in the context of a physiologic repair (morphologic right ventricle as systemic ventricle). As such, this repair can involve any or all of the following: (i) pacemaker placement for heart block; (ii) VSD closure; (iii) the creation of a morphologic left ventricle to pulmonary artery connection in the setting of pulmonary atresia or severe pulmonary stenosis; (iv) tricuspid valve repair or replacement for severe tricuspid insufficiency.

Heart block may complicate VSD closure because the conduction system travels along the septum of the right-sided morphologic left ventricle (pulmonary ventricle). To avoid compromise of the conduction system, the sutures for closure of the VSD must be placed on the right ventricle (systemic ventricle) side of the septum. This can be accomplished with exposure across the aortic valve so as to avoid a ventriculotomy in the systemic (right) ventricle. Bypass of pulmonary atresia or severe pulmonary stenosis with a conduit from the anatomic left ventricle to the pulmonary artery is also problematic. The left ventriculotomy and proximal portion of the conduit must be positioned so as to avoid the papillary muscle attachments of the mitral valve and the major coronary arteries.

### Double Switch Procedure and Atrial Switch-Rastelli Procedures

The double switch procedure was first performed in 1989, and is a procedure applied to patients with C-TGV with or without VSD



**Figure 23.7** Double switch. It consists of an atrial-level switch (Mustard or Senning) in combination with an ASO.

who do not have significant LVOT (pulmonary arterial) obstruction. It consists of an atrial-level switch (Mustard or Senning) in combination with an ASO (Figure 23.7). The atrial switch-Rastelli procedure was first reported in 1990, and is applied to patients with C-TGV with a VSD and significant LVOT (pulmonary arterial) obstruction. It consists of an atrial-level switch (Mustard or Senning) in combination with a Rastelli procedure. As such, it is commonly referred to as a Mustard-Rastelli or Senning-Rastelli procedure.

These procedures produce an anatomic repair; that is, atrioventricular and ventriculoarterial concordance with the morphologic mitral valve and left ventricle as the systemic AV valve and ventricle. Like the ASO, the success of these procedures is dependent on the retention of a sufficient left ventricular mass to support the systemic circulation. These procedures are performed with hypothermic CPB and aortic cross-clamping with cardioplegic arrest.

Both of these procedures have also been applied to patients with C-TGV who have

undergone previous traditional repair and as a result are experiencing tricuspid regurgitation, right ventricular dysfunction, and heart block. The decision-making process regarding the timing of surgery, the necessary preparatory procedures, and the selection of patients for these procedures is complex and controversial, and is currently evolving at many centers. Briefly, the issues which must be considered in the decision making process are summarized:

Candidates for a double switch should have a systolic morphologic left ventricular pressure that is at least 70% of systemic systolic pressure (morphological right ventricular systolic pressure). Adolescent candidates should probably have systolic morphologic left ventricular pressure that is 90–100% of systemic systolic pressure. Mild valvular pulmonary stenosis or dynamic pulmonary stenosis is not a contraindication to the procedure as long as only minimal LVOT obstruction exists at the end of the procedure. The presence of these lesions preoperatively may confer some benefit by stimulating retention of left ventricular mass.

The timing of surgery for a double switch procedure is dictated by the severity of CHF, which in turn is determined by the size of the VSD and/or the presence of tricuspid regurgitation (TR). The larger the VSD, the more likely it is that the left ventricle will retain its mass; however, it is also more likely that CHF and ultimately PAH will develop. The double switch operation in the first three months of life is recommended for patients with severe CHF. Because dextrocardia in association with S,L,L anatomy complicates surgical exposure for the completion of a Mustard or Senning procedure, a pulmonary artery band (PAB) may be considered to control pulmonary blood flow and CHF, and to promote the retention of left ventricular mass until the child is older and larger. Patients without CHF (no VSD or restrictive VSD, no TR) may be followed and before evidence of right ventricular failure or tricuspid regurgitation develops, undergo placement of a PAB with the intention of increasing left ventricular

mass so that a subsequent double switch can be performed following retraining of the left ventricle. The appropriate interval necessary to retrain the left ventricle in this older subset of patients has not been firmly established, but on average it is on the order of 19 months. It can be expected that some patients will require more than one PAB, and that some will fail to have adequate accumulation of left ventricular mass to go on to a double switch.

Candidates for the atrial switch-Rastelli procedure must be free of significant PAH and have a non-restrictive VSD committed to the aorta, so that that patch tunnel closure of the VSD will create left ventricle to aortic continuity. The timing of surgery for an atrial

switch-Rastelli procedure is dictated by the severity of the limitation of pulmonary blood flow. In neonates with pulmonary atresia or severe pulmonary stenosis, a systemic to pulmonary artery shunt (such as a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt) is placed. When the child outgrows the shunt (at 6–18 months of age) an atrial switch-Rastelli procedure is performed. In neonates with milder pulmonary stenosis, the atrial switch-Rastelli procedure can be deferred until cyanosis progresses. In patients where the limitation of pulmonary blood flow is such that  $Q_p:Q_s < 2:1$ , the procedure may be delayed but should be performed prior to development of right ventricular failure, tricuspid regurgitation, or increased PVR.

## 24

## Single-Ventricle Lesions

### Introduction

Single-ventricle lesions can be amenable to a two-ventricle repair or require a staged approach to a Fontan procedure (Figure 24.1). Single-ventricle lesions amenable to two-ventricle repair include truncus arteriosus, severe neonatal aortic stenosis, interrupted aortic arch, and tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) with pulmonary atresia. Other single-ventricle lesions such as tricuspid atresia and hypoplastic left heart syndrome require a staged approach to the Fontan procedure. Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS) is an example of a single-ventricle lesion that is occasionally amenable to a two-ventricle repair.

There are three phases in the single-ventricle pathway: the initial physiology; the superior cavopulmonary shunt (generally a bidirectional Glenn [BDG] shunt); and the completed Fontan procedure that creates a total cavopulmonary connection (TCPC). During each of these phases three physiologic goals must be achieved:

- There must be a reliable source of an appropriate quantity of pulmonary blood flow. The appropriate quantity is the quantity that is sufficient to prevent hypoxemia but not so large as to cause pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH). The presence of PAH is a contraindication to completion of the Fontan procedure.
- There must be unobstructed delivery of pulmonary venous blood to the systemic ventricle.
- There must be an unobstructed pathway from the systemic ventricle to all segments of the aorta.

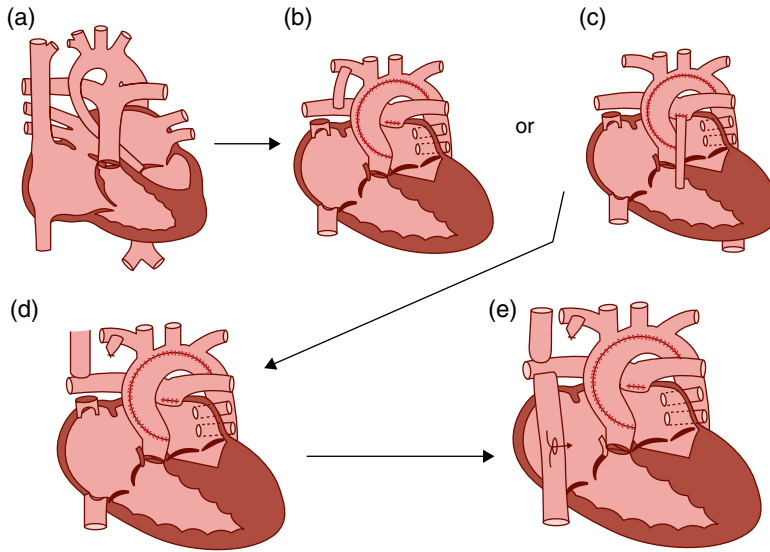
### Physiology and Initial Procedures

The initial palliative procedures described here are applicable to any patient with single-ventricle physiology.

#### Initial Procedures to Optimize Pulmonary Arterial Blood Flow

The following describes the initial approach to optimize pulmonary blood in patients with single ventricle physiology:

- Patients with ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow will require stabilization with prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> (PGE<sub>1</sub>), followed by placement of a surgical aortopulmonary shunt. In most cases a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) will be placed and the patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) ligated. A superior cavopulmonary shunt (bidirectional Glenn) cannot be used in the neonatal period as the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) is elevated and supra-physiologic superior vena cava (SVC) pressure would be necessary to provide adequate pulmonary blood flow. More than 70% of patients with tricuspid atresia have ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow and require a shunt in the newborn period.



**Figure 24.1** Sequence of repairs for hypoplastic left heart syndrome. (a) Hypoplastic left heart. (b) Initial repair with a Damus–Kaye–Stansel repair and a Blalock–Taussig shunt. (c) Initial repair with a Damus–Kaye–Stansel repair and a right ventricle to pulmonary artery graft. (d) Bidirectional Glenn procedure. (e) Lateral Fontan with a fenestration. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

- Patients with unrestricted pulmonary blood flow are at risk for compromise of systemic oxygen delivery due to high pulmonary blood flow in the setting of fixed cardiac output and, ultimately, for the development of PAH. These patients need restriction of pulmonary blood flow:
  - In patients with high pulmonary blood flow and significant intracardiac sources of pulmonary blood flow (Type 1C or 2C tricuspid atresia; see Table 24.1), the PDA can close and appropriately limit pulmonary blood flow. More commonly, it will be necessary to mechanically restrict pulmonary blood flow and reduce  $Q_P:Q_S$  and the volume load on the systemic ventricle by banding the pulmonary artery. The main pulmonary artery is constricted with a circumferential band. This reduces pulmonary blood flow and distal pulmonary artery pressure by the creation of a restrictive lesion. Banding is most effective when the pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) distal to the band is reduced to one-third or one-half of systemic blood pressure. Pulmonary artery banding may cause distortion of the main pulmonary

artery. In addition, distortion of the branch pulmonary arteries may be caused by migration of the band distally. This distortion may complicate or preclude definitive repair. Pulmonary artery banding is accomplished via a thoracotomy or a median sternotomy, without cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB). An excessively tight pulmonary artery band will severely reduce pulmonary blood flow and expose the ventricle to a high afterload. Pulse oximetry has proved useful during pulmonary artery banding because arterial oxygen desaturation precedes hypotension and bradycardia when banding is excessive. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is valuable in assessing ventricular function during pulmonary artery banding. Ventricular distension may require loosening of the band or initiation of inotropic support. TEE or epicardial echocardiography also allows the pressure gradient across the band to be determined. This will help in determining the tightness of the band. Pulmonary artery banding is contraindicated in patients where the aortic blood flow is derived

**Table 24.1** Classification of tricuspid atresia. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

Type	Pulmonary blood flow	Frequency (%)
<i>Type 1: NRGAs</i>		
A No VSD, pulmonary atresia	↓	10
B Small VSD, pulmonary stenosis	↓	50
C Large VSD, no pulmonary stenosis	↔↑	10
<i>Type 2: D-TGA</i>		
A VSD, pulmonary atresia	↓	2
B VSD, pulmonary stenosis	↔↓	8
C VSD, no pulmonary stenosis	↑↑	20
<i>Type 3: L-TGA</i>		
A VSD, D-loop ventricles, pulmonary or subpulmonary stenosis	↓	
B VSD, L-loop ventricles, sub-aortic stenosis	↑	<1

D-loop ventricles, right ventricle anterior and rightward; D-TGA, dextro transposition of the great arteries; L-loop ventricles, right ventricle anterior and leftward; L-TGA, levo transposition of the great arteries; NRGAs, normally related great arteries; VSD, ventricular septal defect.

from a restrictive intracardiac pathway from the systemic ventricle, or where this pathway is likely to become restrictive once the ventricular volume load is reduced by a pulmonary artery band. These patients require a Damus–Kaye–Stansel (DKS) procedure (see below) to provide an unobstructed pathway to the aorta from the systemic ventricle.

- The treatment of patients with high pulmonary blood flow due to major aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAs) is discussed in Chapter 21.
- Rarely, the combination of a restrictive ventricular septal defect (VSD) and mild pulmonary stenosis (type 2B tricuspid atresia) can result in the appropriate quantity of pulmonary blood flow without intervention.

### Initial Procedures to Optimize Pulmonary Venous Blood Flow

In instances where pulmonary venous blood must cross the atrial septum to reach the systemic ventricle, the atrial septum must be non-restrictive. Creating a non-restrictive atrial septum may occur in the cardiac catheterization

laboratory using a Rashkind–Miller balloon atrial septostomy. In some cases the septum may be so thick as to require the placement of a stent. A surgical atrial septectomy to create a non-restrictive atrial septum (common atrium) can also be performed at the time of initial palliation in procedures that require CPB.

### Initial Procedures to Optimize Systemic Blood Flow

When the pathway to the aorta from the systemic ventricle is obstructed (type 2C or 3B tricuspid atresia), or when the left ventricle and proximal/transverse aorta are hypoplastic (as with hypoplastic left heart syndrome [HLHS]), a DKS procedure alone or in conjunction with an aortic arch reconstruction (as with HLHS) can be used. The pulmonary artery is transected just proximal to its bifurcation, and the proximal end of the pulmonary artery is re-anastomosed end-to-side or side-to-side to the ascending aorta. This provides systemic ventricle to aortic continuity (left ventricle to proximal pulmonary artery to aorta in type 3B tricuspid atresia; right ventricle to proximal pulmonary artery to aorta in HLHS). In the neonatal period, pulmonary blood flow is then supplied to the oversewn



end of the main pulmonary artery by a mBTS in patients with type 3B tricuspid atresia, or a mBTS or right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit in patients with HLHS.

## Management of Single-Ventricle Physiology

The primary goal in the management of patients with single-ventricle physiology is the optimization of systemic oxygen delivery and perfusion pressure. This is necessary if end-organ (myocardial, renal, hepatic, splanchnic) dysfunction and failure are to be prevented. This goal is achieved by balancing the systemic and pulmonary circulations. The term 'balanced circulation' is used because both laboratory and clinical investigations have demonstrated that maximal systemic oxygen delivery (the product of systemic oxygen content and systemic blood flow) is achieved for a given single-ventricle output when  $Q_p:Q_s$  is at or just below 1:1. Increases in  $Q_p:Q_s$  in excess of 1:1 are associated with a progressive decrease in systemic oxygen delivery, because the subsequent increase in systemic oxygen content is more than offset by the progressive decrease in systemic blood flow. Decreases in  $Q_p:Q_s$  just below 1:1 are associated with a precipitous decrease in systemic oxygen delivery because the subsequent increase in systemic blood flow is more than offset by the dramatic decrease in systemic oxygen content.

Since  $Q_p:Q_s$  is not a readily measurable parameter in a clinical setting,  $SaO_2$  is commonly used as a surrogate method of assessing the extent to which a balanced circulation exists. An arterial saturation of 75–80% is felt to be indicative of a balanced circulation. It is important to note, however, that an arterial saturation of 75–80% is indicative of a  $Q_p:Q_s$  at or near 1:1 only if the pulmonary venous saturation is 95–100% and the mixed venous saturation is 50–55%. In fact, based on these assumptions the equation used to calculate  $Q_p:Q_s$  in patients with univentricular physiology –  $(SaO_2 - S_{mv}O_2)/$

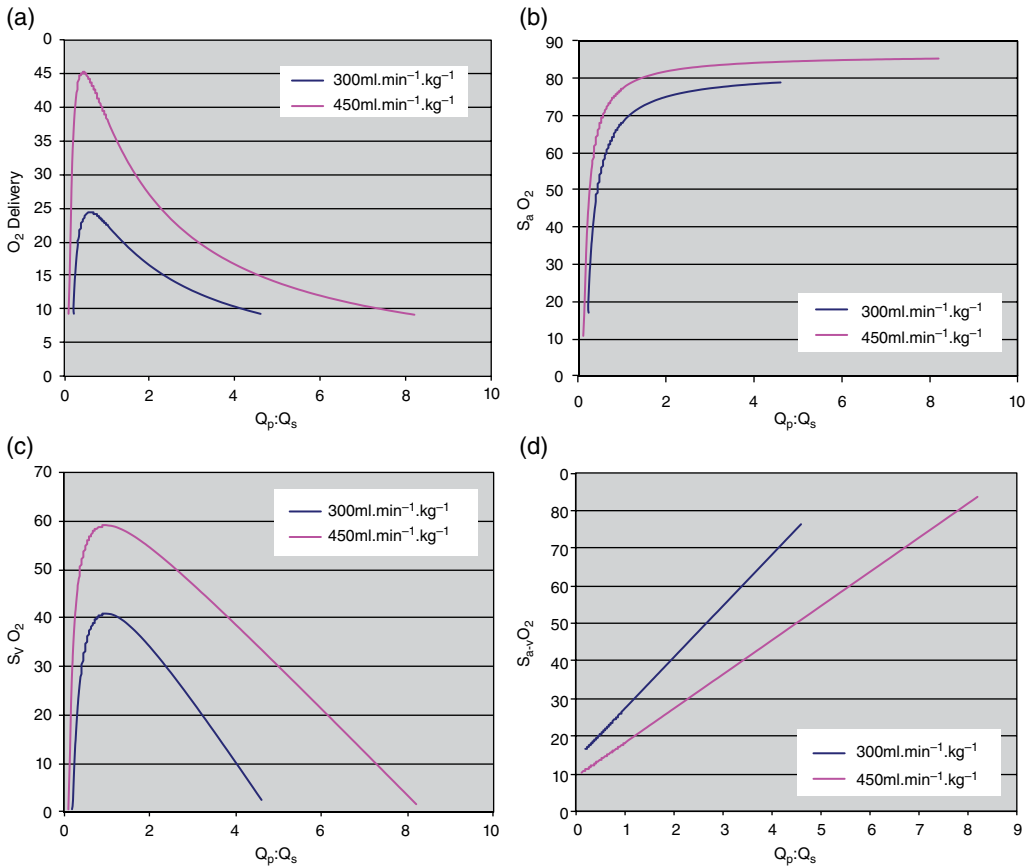
$(SpvO_2 - SaO_2)$  – can be simplified to:  $25/(95 - SaO_2)$ . In this simplified equation,  $SpvO_2$  is assumed to be 95% and the A-V  $O_2$  saturation difference is assumed to be 25%. Use of this simplified equation requires that the  $FiO_2$  be at or near 0.21 in order that the dissolved  $O_2$  content of the pulmonary venous blood can be ignored and an  $SpvO_2$  of 95% used. Unfortunately, an arterial saturation of 75–80% can exist at the extremes of  $Q_p:Q_s$ , depending on pulmonary and systemic venous saturation. Specifically, in the presence of a high  $Q_p:Q_s$  it is possible to have inadequate systemic oxygen delivery (systemic venous desaturation, a wide  $Sa-vO_2$  difference, metabolic acidosis) in the presence of what is considered to be an adequate arterial saturation of 75–80%. In addition, clinically unrecognized episodes of pulmonary venous desaturation ( $SpvO_2 < 90\%$ ) further confound assessment of  $Q_p:Q_s$  based on  $SaO_2$ .

Mathematic modeling of univentricular physiology reveals that systemic  $O_2$  delivery ( $CaO_2 \cdot Q_p$ ) is a complex function of cardiac output (CO), pulmonary venous  $O_2$  content ( $CpvO_2$ ), systemic  $O_2$  consumption ( $CVO_2$ ), and  $Q_p:Q_s$  described by the equation:

$$CaO_2 \times Q_s = \frac{CO \times CpvO_2}{1 + \frac{Q_p}{Q_s}} - \frac{CVO_2}{\frac{Q_p}{Q_s}}$$

Given the complex relationships of the multiple variables that determine  $Q_p:Q_s$  and  $O_2$  delivery in patients with univentricular physiology, it is not surprising that neither  $SaO_2$  nor the equation  $25/(95 - SaO_2)$  reliably predicts  $Q_p:Q_s$ .

In fact,  $SaO_2$  correlates poorly with  $Q_p:Q_s$  and the measurement of  $SpvO_2$  and  $S_{svc}O_2$  substantially improves estimation of  $Q_p:Q_s$ . Regression analysis demonstrates that  $SaO_2$  accounts for 8% of the error in estimating  $Q_p:Q_s$  while  $S_{svc}O_2$  and  $SpvO_2$  contribute 48% and 44% respectively. Figure 24.2 illustrates the effect of CO (450 versus 300  $ml \cdot min^{-1} \cdot kg^{-1}$ ) on  $O_2$  delivery,  $SvO_2$ ,  $SaO_2$ , and  $Sa-vO_2$  as  $Q_p:Q_s$  varies with  $SpvO_2 = 95\%$  and  $O_2$  consumption = 9  $ml \cdot min^{-1} \cdot kg^{-1}$ . It is clear



**Figure 24.2** (a) Systemic oxygen ( $O_2$ ) delivery ( $ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$ ) versus  $Q_p:Q_s$  for two different systemic ventricular outputs ( $300\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $450\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$ ) in single-ventricle physiology. Oxygen consumption is assumed to be  $9\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $SpVo_2 = 95\%$ . It is clear that systemic oxygen delivery peaks just below a  $Q_p:Q_s$  of 1:1 and declines rapidly above or below this narrow peak. (b)  $S_aO_2$  versus  $Q_p:Q_s$  for two different systemic ventricular outputs ( $300\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $450\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$ ) in single-ventricle physiology. Oxygen consumption is assumed to be  $9\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $SpVo_2 = 95\%$ . It is clear that  $S_aO_2$  remains at or near 80% over a wide range of  $Q_p:Q_s$  and consequently is a very poor surrogate measure of  $Q_p:Q_s$ . (c)  $S_vO_2$  versus  $Q_p:Q_s$  for two different systemic ventricular outputs ( $300\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $450\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$ ) in single-ventricle physiology. Oxygen consumption is assumed to be  $9\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $SpVo_2 = 95\%$ .  $S_vO_2$  decreases precipitously outside a narrow range of  $Q_p:Q_s$  near 1.0. (d)  $S_a-vO_2$  versus  $Q_p:Q_s$  for two different systemic ventricular outputs ( $300\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $450\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$ ) in single-ventricle physiology. Oxygen consumption is assumed to be  $9\ ml\ kg^{-1}\ min^{-1}$  and  $SpVo_2 = 95\%$ .  $S_a-vO_2$  increases linearly as  $Q_p:Q_s$  increases with the slope of the increase decreased by increased systemic ventricular output.

that while  $S_aO_2$  remains satisfactory over a wide range of  $Q_p:Q_s$ ,  $S_vO_2$  decreases precipitously outside a narrow range of  $Q_p:Q_s$  near 1.0. Furthermore,  $S_a-vO_2$  increases dramatically once  $Q_p:Q_s > 1.0$ . It is also clear that a higher CO allows maintenance of satisfactory  $O_2$  delivery and  $S_{svc}O_2$  over a wider range of  $Q_p:Q_s$ .

Any combination of variables which produces a  $S_{svc}O_2 < 30\%$  is likely to result in the development of anaerobic metabolism. A modification of the  $O_2$  delivery equation can be used to take this into account, where a threshold level of capillary saturation ( $S_{at\ Thresh}$ ) is defined. Any contributions to  $O_2$  delivery by saturations below this threshold are ignored, as they do not

provide physiologically useful oxygen delivery. As a result, a new term ‘useful O<sub>2</sub> delivery to the body’ defined as  $D(u)O_2 = [(CaO_2)(1 - Sat_{Thresh})](Q_S)$  is utilized rather than the traditional O<sub>2</sub> delivery  $DO_2 = (CaO_2)(Q_S)$ . A realistic  $Sat_{Thresh}$  would be 30–35%.

$\Omega$  is the oxygen excess factor calculated as  $SaO_2/(Sa-vO_2)$ ; it is the inverse of the oxygen extraction ratio. A direct linear relationship between  $\Omega$  and O<sub>2</sub> delivery exists. This direct linear relationship is independent of  $SpvO_2$  and CO; however, the slope of this relationship increases as O<sub>2</sub> consumption increases. Nonetheless, interventions to improve systemic O<sub>2</sub> delivery will be associated with an increase in measured  $\Omega$ . This is a clinically useful parameter as it can be obtained with a systemic saturation from an arterial blood gas or a pulse oximeter and an SVC saturation obtained from a venous blood gas drawn from a central venous catheter positioned just at or above the SVC/RA junction.

These patients are at risk for subendocardial ischemia because volume overload increases the ventricular end-diastolic volume and pressure, and because the run-off of blood into the lower-resistance pulmonary circuit reduces aortic diastolic blood pressure. Under these conditions a small increase in heart rate may reduce subendocardial perfusion enough to induce ischemia and ventricular fibrillation.

## Anesthetic Management, Pre-Initial Repair

### Goals

- A continuous infusion of PGE<sub>1</sub> is used to maintain ductal patency in patients with ductal-dependent blood flow (either systemic or pulmonary). PGE<sub>1</sub> can be discontinued in any patient determined by echocardiogram to have a reliable non-ductal source of systemic or pulmonary blood flow. Ductal patency generally produces unrestrictive pulmonary blood flow.
- A target PaO<sub>2</sub> of 40–45 mmHg and a SaO<sub>2</sub> of 70–80% is reasonable, and is likely to be associated with adequate systemic O<sub>2</sub> delivery.
- In single-ventricle patients with unrestricted pulmonary blood flow, the control and manipulation of PVR and subsequently of Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> is accomplished most reliably through ventilatory interventions. Clinically, both hypercarbia in combination with a 21% FiO<sub>2</sub> to achieve a pH of 7.30–7.35 and normocarbia in combination with a 17% FiO<sub>2</sub> (inspired N<sub>2</sub>) can be utilized to increase PVR and reduce Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub>. Both strategies reduce Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> to a comparable degree versus baseline (21% FiO<sub>2</sub> and normocarbia) but hypercarbia results in a better systemic O<sub>2</sub> delivery (as determined by a narrower A-V O<sub>2</sub> saturation difference and a higher SaO<sub>2</sub>/(Sa-vO<sub>2</sub>)), a higher mean arterial pressure, and a higher cerebral O<sub>2</sub> saturation (as determined by near-infrared spectrometry).
- Hypercarbia (PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 45–55 mmHg) can be reliably obtained via alveolar hypoventilation or via increased inspired CO<sub>2</sub> (3% FiCO<sub>2</sub>). Hypercarbia can be obtained utilizing hypoventilation without the use of inspired CO<sub>2</sub>. Care is taken to assure adequate tidal volumes with maintenance of functional residual capacity (FRC) and avoidance of atelectasis so as not to induce intra-pulmonary shunting and V/Q mismatch resulting in inadvertent hypoxemia. An appropriate degree of hypercarbia can be obtained with a tidal volume of 8–12 ml kg<sup>-1</sup>, a positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) of 3–5 cm H<sub>2</sub>O and a respiratory rate of four to eight breaths per minute. Additional PEEP and larger tidal volumes can be used to mechanically limit excessive pulmonary blood flow. The lower rates are required as the infant cools and the metabolic rate decreases.
- Avoid a high FiO<sub>2</sub> unless the PaO<sub>2</sub> < 35–40 mmHg and intrapulmonary V/Q mismatch is suspected.
- Because ventilatory interventions are incapable of reducing Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> much below 2:1, an increased cardiac output is often necessary to ensure adequate systemic oxygen delivery and coronary perfusion pressure in these patients. The ability to recruit stroke volume with preload augmentation

is very limited in patients with volume-overloaded ventricles. An increasing heart rate >140–150 bpm has the potential of initiating myocardial ischemia in patients with aortic diastolic blood pressures in the range of 20 to 30 mmHg. This is a particular risk in patients with HLHS. Inotropic support may be necessary; dopamine in doses of 3–5  $\mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{min}^{-1}$  is usually sufficient to accomplish these goals.

- Once the chest is open, the surgeon can mechanically limit pulmonary blood flow and reduce  $Q_p:Q_s$  by placing a vessel loop around a pulmonary artery (usually the right). This will often dramatically improve hemodynamics. The end-tidal (ET)  $\text{CO}_2$  will fall as the  $\text{ETCO}_2\text{-Pa CO}_2$  gradient increases. It is not appropriate to decrease minute ventilation at this time; in fact, it may need to be increased slightly. A small increase in  $\text{FiO}_2$  may also be necessary.
- Infants with single-ventricle physiology who arrive in the operating room un-intubated from the intensive care unit require special attention. These patients may clinically have a balanced circulation, but this occurs in the setting of several factors that increase PVR, including low lung volumes, increased interstitial lung water, and hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction. Following induction, intubation and mechanical lung expansion, these patients may have a precipitous drop in PVR and an immediate compromise of systemic circulation. Despite this, denitrogenation with 100%  $\text{O}_2$  is recommended prior to laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation so as to prevent hypoxemia during this interval. Once the airway is secured, the  $\text{FiO}_2$  can be reduced.

### Induction and Maintenance

These patients have a tenuous cardiovascular status with limited cardiovascular reserve. Ventricular fibrillation can be seen in association with light anesthesia or during routine maneuvers, such as opening the pericardium. Many of them arrive in the operating room intubated and receiving inotropic support

and  $\text{PGE}_1$ . In the absence of an accurate prenatal diagnosis some neonates initially present in shock or following cardiopulmonary resuscitation. These neonates usually require one or more days of medical stabilization prior to surgery.

An intravenous induction using a high-dose synthetic narcotic technique in combination with a muscle relaxant is recommended. A benzodiazepine (usually midazolam) can be added as tolerated. Inhalation agents are generally poorly tolerated. Rocuronium is normally utilized and well tolerated.

## Post-CPB Management, Post-Initial Repair

### Goals

After the initial repair, single-ventricle physiology persists and the same principles described for pre-CPB management hold true with a few notable exceptions:

- 1) After CPB, it is not uncommon for a high PVR to result in reduced pulmonary blood flow and hypoxemia.
- 2) The mBTS or RV-PA conduit may be too large or too small for prevailing physiologic conditions.
- 3) Ventricular dysfunction may exist due to the long CPB and DHCA or regional low-flow perfusion intervals that are necessary to complete these complicated repairs.
- 4) Myocardial and tissue edema may be significant precluding chest closure.
- 5) Bleeding from long arterial suture lines may be significant.
- 6) Inhaled pulmonary vasodilators such as NO may be necessary to improve  $\text{SaO}_2$  or reduce the transpulmonary gradient in this patient population. This is particularly true in the subgroup of patients who have repair of partially obstructed pulmonary venous drainage at the time of their initial repair.

Management of the four clinical scenarios present after initial repair, and the appropriate interventions necessary, are summarized in Table 24.2.

**Table 24.2** Management of single-ventricle physiology.

Clinical presentation	Physiology	Management
Sao <sub>2</sub> 75–80%	<b>Balanced flow</b>	No intervention
Sa-vo <sub>2</sub> 25–30%	Q <sub>p</sub> :Q <sub>s</sub> = 0.7–1.5:1	
BP > 60/30 mmHg		
Sao <sub>2</sub> > 85–90%	<b>High pulmonary blood flow</b>	<i>Raise PVR:</i>
Sa-vo <sub>2</sub> 35–40%	Q <sub>p</sub> :Q <sub>s</sub> > 2–3:1	Controlled hypoventilation
BP < 60/30	<i>Causes:</i>	Mild acidosis
Diastolic BP < 15–25 mmHg with mBTS; likely higher with RV-PA conduit	Low PVR	Low Fio <sub>2</sub> (0.17–0.19); compromises cerebral O <sub>2</sub> delivery
	Large MBTS or RV-PA conduit	<i>Increase systemic O<sub>2</sub> delivery:</i>
	Residual arch obstruction	Afterload reduction
	High SVR	Inotropic support
		Hematocrit >40%
		<i>Surgical intervention:</i>
		Clip MBTS or RV-PA conduit
		Revise arch reconstruction
Sao <sub>2</sub> < 65–75%	<b>Low pulmonary blood flow</b>	<i>Lower PVR:</i>
Sa-vo <sub>2</sub> 25–30%; but Svo <sub>2</sub> likely less than critical value of 30%	Q <sub>p</sub> :Q <sub>s</sub> < 0.7:1	Controlled hyperventilation
	<i>Causes:</i>	Alkalosis
BP > 70/40 mmHg	High PVR	Sedation/paralysis
Diastolic BP > 40 mmHg	Small mBTS or RV-PA conduit	Aggressively treat atelectasis (pulmonary venous desaturation)
	Pulmonary venous desaturation with underestimation of actual Q <sub>p</sub> :Q <sub>s</sub>	
		Consider NO
		<i>Increase systemic O<sub>2</sub> delivery:</i>
		Inotropic support
		<i>Surgical intervention:</i>
		Revise MBTS or RV-PA conduit
Sao <sub>2</sub> < 70–75%	<b>Low cardiac output</b>	<i>Minimize O<sub>2</sub> consumption:</i>
Sa-vo <sub>2</sub> 35–40% and Svo <sub>2</sub> likely less than critical value of 30%	<i>Causes:</i>	Sedation/paralysis
	Ventricular dysfunction	Inotropic support/afterload reduction
BP < 60/30 mmHg	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Myocardial ischemia</li> <li>● Depressed contractility</li> <li>● Afterload mismatch (residual arch obstruction)</li> <li>● AV valve regurgitation</li> </ul>	<i>Surgical intervention:</i>
		Repair AV valve
		Revise arch
		<i>Consider mechanical support:</i>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Post-cardiotomy support</li> <li>● Bridge-to-transplantation</li> </ul>

AV, atrioventricular; BP, blood pressure; mBTS, modified Blalock–Taussig shunt; PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; RV-PA, right ventricle-pulmonary artery; SVR, systemic vascular resistance.

## Single-Ventricle Pathway, Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt or Bidirectional Glenn (BDG)

The BDG (Figure 24.1d) directs systemic venous blood from the SVC directly to the pulmonary circulation. The BDG is normally undertaken at 3–6 months of age, at which point the PVR has decreased such that the pulmonary blood flow can be provided with systemic venous pressure as the driving pressure. Patients who have outgrown their PA band, RV-PA conduit, or mBTS and have a low SaO<sub>2</sub>, and patients who are not tolerating the additional volume on their ventricle with a loose PA band or large mBTS will be staged to a BDG earlier in this interval.

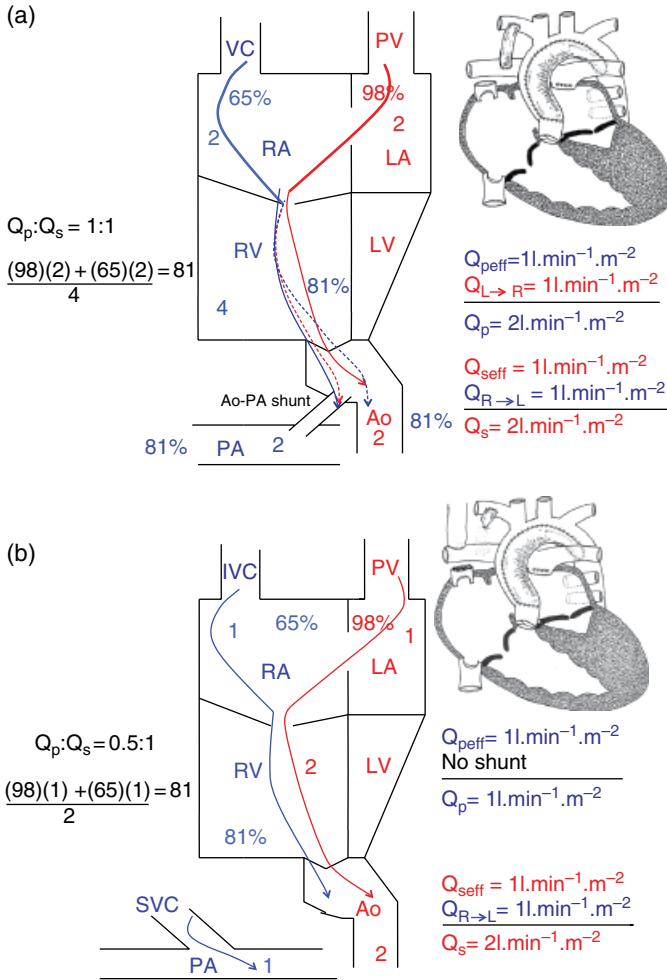
The original Glenn shunt involved an end-to-side anastomosis of the cranial end of the transected SVC to the distal end of the transected right pulmonary artery (RPA). Both the proximal SVC and RPA were oversewn. This procedure was performed through a right thoracotomy, without CPB. Currently, the bidirectional Glenn is used in which the cranial end of the transected SVC is anastomosed end-to-side to the RPA (which is in continuity with the main and left PAs) and the cardiac end of the SVC is oversewn. This creates SVC continuity with both the left and right pulmonary arteries, and bidirectional pulmonary blood flow. The main PA is oversewn if it is not atretic. Unless the IVC is interrupted with azygous continuation, the azygous vein is ligated so that the SVC does not decompress retrograde to the IVC, thereby reducing the quantity of blood delivered to the PAs. This procedure is performed on CPB through a median sternotomy. The previous aortopulmonary shunt is ligated or the PA band taken down.

Normally, all upper-extremity and cerebral venous drainages reach the SVC. In some patients with congenital heart disease

(particularly those with heterotaxy syndrome), there may be bilateral SVCs that are not in continuity via a connecting vein. In this case, a bilateral BDG must be performed with one SVC anastomosed end-to-side to the RPA and the other SVC anastomosed end-to-side to the LPA. LPA-RPA continuity is maintained.

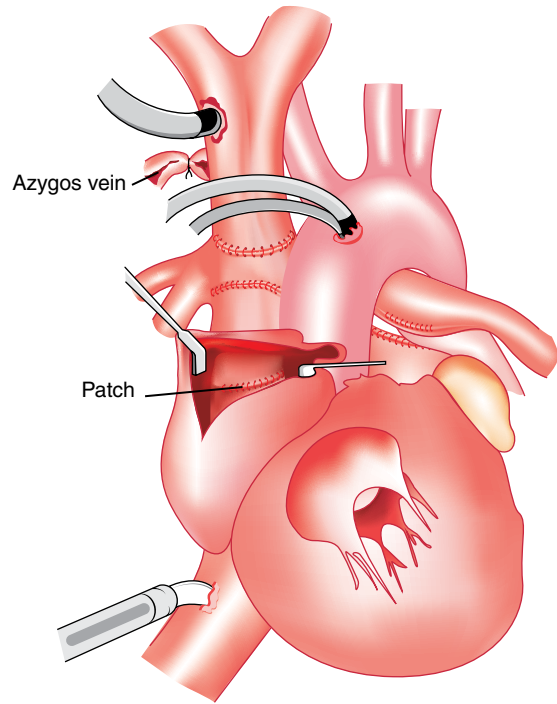
The differences between an aortopulmonary shunt and a BDG are summarized in Figure 24.3. The most obvious difference between the two is that, for a given cardiac output, SaO<sub>2</sub>, SpvO<sub>2</sub> and SvO<sub>2</sub>, the volume load on the systemic ventricle will be twice as large with an aortopulmonary shunt as it is with a BDG. Effective pulmonary blood flow in the aortopulmonary shunt and BDG circulations are equal. However, in the aortopulmonary shunt circulation there is recirculated pulmonary blood (physiologic L-R shunt), while in the BDG circulation there is no recirculated pulmonary blood flow. As a result, a child with a BDG will have the same SaO<sub>2</sub> as a child with an aortopulmonary shunt, but with a significant reduction in the volume load on the systemic ventricle.

Modifications of the BDG have been devised to potentially simplify the conversion to a Fontan. The hemi-Fontan refers specifically to a procedure in which an atriopulmonary anastomosis is constructed between the dome of the right atrium at the RA/SVC junction and the inferior surface of the right pulmonary artery. A GoreTex baffle or dam is used to supplement the central pulmonary artery area and to isolate the cavopulmonary connection from the right atrium. Another modification (incorrectly called a hemi-Fontan) involves the creation of a double cavopulmonary anastomosis, where the cranial end of the divided SVC is anastomosed to the superior surface of the right pulmonary artery. The cardiac end of the divided SVC is anastomosed to the inferior surface of the right PA. The internal orifice of the cardiac end of the superior vena cava is closed with a GoreTex patch (Figure 24.4).



**Figure 24.3** (a) Depiction of saturations and blood flows in a neonate with HLHS palliated with a Damus-Kaye-Stansel (DKS) anastomosis, aortic arch reconstruction and coarctectomy, atrial septectomy, and an aortopulmonary shunt. Complete mixing occurs at the atrial level. The right ventricle (RV) is volume-overloaded in this parallel circulation to provide both systemic and pulmonary blood flow.  $Q_s$  and  $Q_p$  are  $21 \text{ min}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-2}$  and the arterial saturation is 81% ( $Q_p:Q_s = 1:1$ .) (b) Depiction of saturations and blood flows in the same patient now palliated with a bidirectional superior cavopulmonary shunt. Complete mixing occurs at the atrial level. The RV is not volume-overloaded in this series circulation.  $Q_s$  is  $21 \text{ min}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-2}$ , and  $Q_p$  is  $11 \text{ min}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-2}$ ;  $Q_p:Q_s = 0.5:1.0$ . Nonetheless, cardiac output and arterial saturation are identical to the patient palliated with the aortopulmonary shunt. This is because arterial saturation in complete mixing is determined by the relative volumes and saturations of systemic and pulmonary venous blood. In this instance,  $Q_s$  and the volume of systemic venous blood reaching the right atrium (RA) are not equal because half of  $Q_s$  has been diverted to become pulmonary venous blood. As a result,  $Q_p:Q_s$  is deceptive here. Ao, aorta; IVC, inferior vena cava; LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; PA, pulmonary artery; RA, right atrium; RV, right ventricle; SVC, superior vena cava. Effective blood flows are shown as solid lines and shunted blood flows are shown as dotted lines.

**Figure 24.4** The anatomy of a double cavopulmonary anastomosis with internal patch closure of the cardiac end of the SVC anastomosis. Both the cardiac and cephalic portions of the superior vena cava are in continuity with the right pulmonary artery.



## Anesthetic Management, Pre-Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt

### Goals

The principles outlined above on management of single-ventricle physiology after the initial repair apply (Table 24.2). By the age of 3–6 months, when these infants present for their cavopulmonary shunt, they have generally grown and gained weight such that their  $Q_p:Q_s$  is likely to be 1.0–1.5:1. As a result, these patients are much less prone to compromise of systemic  $O_2$  delivery by an excess of pulmonary blood flow.

### Induction and Maintenance

An IV induction is preferred in these patients. Vascular access may be difficult, as many of these patients have prolonged intensive care unit (ICU) stays after their initial repair. In addition, many of these patients are tolerant to opioids and benzodiazepines following their

ICU stay. This should be considered if pre-medication is planned prior to IV placement.

## Post-CPB Management, Post-Superior Cavopulmonary Shunt

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. Decreases in cardiac output will reduce IVC saturation. In BDG physiology, where there is mixing of IVC and pulmonary venous blood in a common atrium, this will reduce arterial saturation.
- Low  $P_{pv}O_2$  saturation will produce a low  $SaO_2$ . Maneuvers to reduce  $V/Q$  mismatch and intrapulmonary shunt should be undertaken. A high  $FiO_2$  may be necessary in the presence of significant  $V/Q$  mismatch.
- Normocarbia or mild hypercarbia (40–45 mm Hg) should be maintained. The mean airway pressure should be kept at the minimal



compatible with delivery of an adequate tidal volume and lung expansion. A high mean airway pressure will mechanically limit the non-pulsatile pulmonary blood flow. This can usually be accomplished with a relatively large tidal volume ( $10\text{--}12\text{ ml kg}^{-1}$ ), slow respiratory rates ( $10\text{--}15$  breaths per min), and short inspiratory times (I:E of 1:3 or 1:4). PEEP should be used with caution.

- A central line placed in the internal jugular (IJ) vein will measure SVC pressure, which equals mPAP following a BDG. A surgically placed atrial line will measure common atrial pressure. The TPG (mPAP – common atrial pressure) is usually  $<10$  mmHg, with appropriate ventilation. A mPAP of  $12\text{--}18$  mmHg is usually seen in the presence of good systemic ventricular function.
- Inotropic support of the systemic ventricle may be necessary due to ventricular dysfunction induced by chronic volume overload and CPB. Dopamine ( $3\text{--}5\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$ ) is useful. Milrinone ( $0.5\text{--}1.0\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$ ) may be useful for those patients who have high SVR and hypertension.
- Inhaled pulmonary vasodilators such as NO generally do not improve  $\text{SaO}_2$  or reduce the transpulmonary gradient in this patient population. The exception to this may be the subgroup of patients who have repair of partially obstructed pulmonary venous drainage at the time of their BDG.
- The most likely cause of a low  $\text{SaO}_2$  following a BDG is low cardiac output with a low IVC saturation. TEE will help to delineate the cause (ventricular dysfunction, hypovolemia, AV valve dysfunction). If a low  $\text{SaO}_2$  persists despite optimization of the ventricular function, consideration should be given to causes of reduced pulmonary blood flow, such as a stenotic anastomosis or the presence of decompressing venous collaterals from the SVC to the IVC.

These patients will have a  $\text{SaO}_2$  of  $75\text{--}80\%$ , similar to that prior to their BDG (Figure 24.5). The  $\text{Q}_p:\text{Q}_s$  ranges from  $0.5\text{--}0.7:1$  and as a result there will be the acute reduction in

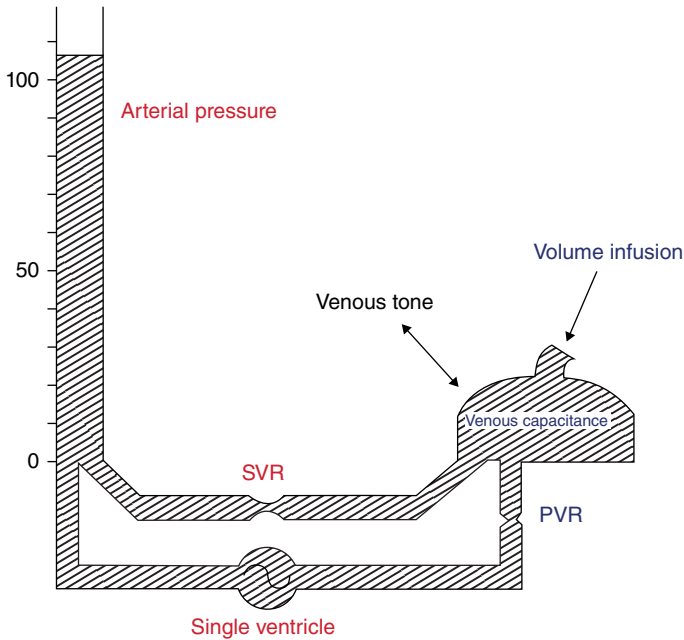
volume load on the systemic ventricle. There is an acute increase in SVC pressure and presumably in ICP. The volume load reduction and elevated SVC pressure are believed to contribute to the initial systemic hypertension and postoperative irritability that is commonly seen in these patients. The majority of pulmonary blood flow will be supplied via venous blood from the brain; this is the largest contributor to venous drainage from the upper body. Hyperventilation and hypocarbia, while beneficial in reducing PVR, will also reduce cerebral blood flow and cerebral venous drainage. Maintaining normocarbia or mild hypercarbia following BDG has been shown to provide maximal  $\text{Q}_p:\text{Q}_s$  and  $\text{SaO}_2$ . These patients tend to have a large  $\text{ETCO}_2\text{--PaCO}_2$  gradient due to an increased physiologic dead space. An increased portion of the lung in these patients is ventilated but not perfused due to the low pulmonary artery driving pressure (SVC pressure).

Attention is focused on the transpulmonary gradient (TPG) that, in normal patients, is defined as the mPAP–LAP. In BDG patients, the mPAP = SVC pressure. In BDG patients, the equivalent of a LAP or pulmonary venous atrial pressure is the common atrial pressure. A common atrium exists in these patients because the atrial septectomy creates a non-restrictive communication between the left and right atria.

## Definitive Repair: The Fontan Procedure or Total Cavopulmonary Connection (TCPC)

### Fontan Physiology

The Fontan procedure is generally performed in staged patients at the age of 2–3 years. As a child with a BDG grows, the BDG becomes progressively less efficient in providing pulmonary blood flow. The ratio of venous return from the SVC:IVC changes from  $50:50$  at 3 months to the adult value of  $30:70$  at 3–4 years of age. In addition, the child becomes



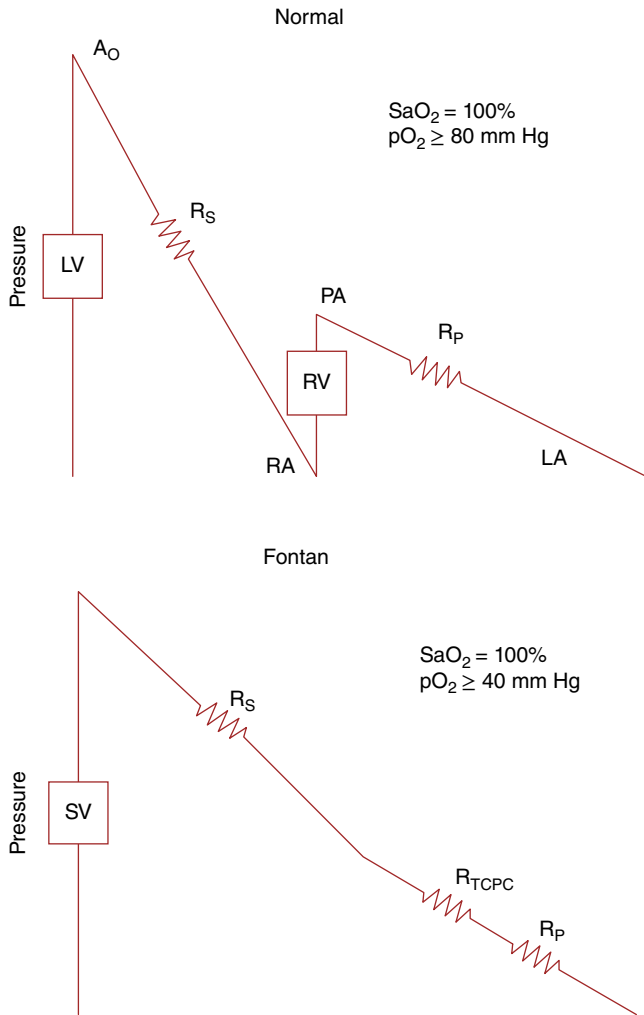
**Figure 24.5** A hydraulic schematic of the Fontan circulation in which the systemic and pulmonary resistance beds are arranged in series. The single ventricle is represented as a pump that moves blood from a high-compliance, low-pressure venous reservoir into a low-compliance, high-pressure arterial reservoir. Blood return to the venous reservoir is gradient-driven across a single resistance, the systemic vascular resistance (SVR). Unlike a two-ventricle circulation, blood return to the pump (ventricular preload) is gradient-driven from the venous reservoir across two interposed resistances: the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) and the resistance across the cavopulmonary connection (not shown separately here but incorporated in PVR). There are two mechanisms whereby the driving pressure in the venous reservoir can be increased to increase ventricular preload: increase the volume of the venous reservoir by expanding the blood volume; or reduce venous capacitance. Unique to the Fontan circulation is the fact that increases in venous reservoir pressure simultaneously increase preload and afterload to the single ventricle because all resistances and pressures are in series. All the energy necessary to provide sufficient gradients for flow in the presence of elevated venous pressure is supplied by the single ventricle. Reproduced from Jolley, M., Colan, S.D., Rhodes, J., DiNardo, J. (2015) Fontan physiology revisited. *Anesth. Analg.*, **121** (1), 172–182.

ambulatory with the large muscle groups of the lower body returning deoxygenated blood to the heart. Furthermore, deprivation of the lungs of blood return from the splanchnic bed through the liver is associated with the development of pulmonary arteriovenous shunting similar to that seen in end-stage liver disease.

Fontan physiology is a series ('normal') circulation that can be described as follows:

- There is one ventricle with sufficient diastolic, systolic, and atrioventricular valve function to support systemic circulation. This ventricle must in turn:
  - be in unobstructed continuity with the aorta; and
  - be in unobstructed continuity with pulmonary venous blood.
- There is unobstructed delivery of systemic venous blood to the pulmonary circulation (total cavopulmonary continuity).

In the absence of any residual physiologic intracardiac or intrapulmonary R-L shunting, these patients should have a normal  $\text{SaO}_2$ . It is often stated that pulmonary blood flow is passive and gradient-driven (systemic venous pressure > mean pulmonary artery pressure > pulmonary venous atrial pressure).

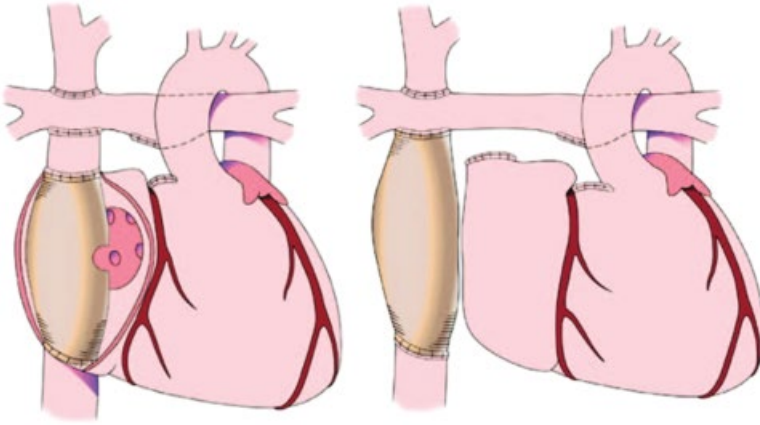


**Figure 24.6** Schematic of the normal and Fontan circulation demonstrating a single-ventricle driving flow across three resistances in series; systemic ( $R_S$ ), total cavopulmonary connection ( $R_{TCPC}$ ), and pulmonary ( $R_P$ ). In a normal, two-ventricle circulation, each ventricle drives flow across one resistance. Reproduced from Jolley, M., Colan, S.D., Rhodes, J., DiNardo, J. (2015) Fontan physiology revisited. *Anesth. Analg.*, **121** (1), 172–182.

In fact, the systemic ventricle generates the energy necessary to provide flow through the pulmonary capillary bed because the systemic vascular bed and pulmonary vascular bed are in continuity without an intervening atria and ventricle to provide a reservoir and pumping capacity. As a result, the single ventricle in a series Fontan circulation is faced with higher afterload than the systemic

ventricle in a two-ventricle series circulation. In addition, preload to the single ventricle is relatively low as compared to a normal ventricle due to the fact that the systemic venous pressure and not the right ventricle is the energy source for volume delivery to the systemic ventricle (Figures 24.5 and 24.6).

The Fontan procedure was first performed in 1968 and was applied to patients with



**Figure 24.7** Fontan procedure. Illustrations of a fenestrated lateral tunnel (intra-atrial baffle) Fontan (left), and an unfenestrated extracardiac Fontan (right). Both place the inferior vena cava and superior vena cava in continuity with the pulmonary arteries, a complete cavopulmonary connection, with no interposed ventricle. The fenestration allows a ‘pop off’ of blood from the systemic venous circulation to the pulmonary venous (common) atrium when baffle pressures are elevated. This allows cardiac output to be maintained in the presence of elevated resistance across the cavopulmonary connection and the pulmonary vascular bed in exchange for lower systemic arterial saturation. Adapted from: <https://apps.childrenshospital.org/clinical/mml/>.

tricuspid atresia. The original operation included a Glenn shunt, which drained the SVC directly into the distal right pulmonary artery. The proximal end of the right pulmonary artery was joined to the right atrial appendage via an aortic valve homograft, and a pulmonary valve homograft valve was placed at the IVC-RA junction. The main pulmonary artery was ligated and the ASD was closed. Subsequently, creation of the Glenn shunt and placement of homograft valves at the RA-PA and IVC-RA junctions were eliminated, resulting in the creation of a direct atriopulmonary connection.

Since then, many modifications have been described. Despite the modifications, the goal of the procedure remains the same: to provide delivery of all systemic venous blood directly to the pulmonary arteries without the benefit of the reservoir or pumping capability of a ventricle. This requires total cavopulmonary continuity either directly or via the systemic venous atrium. Currently, the most commonly performed procedures are the lateral tunnel and extracardiac Fontan (Figure 24.7).

The lateral tunnel procedure avoids incorporating any substantial volume of atrium in the cavopulmonary pathway, while the extracardiac procedure does not incorporate any atrium. These procedures are referred to as total cavopulmonary connections. Over time, in atriopulmonary connections, an elevated systemic venous pressure leads to atrial dilatation. The atrium often expands to a volume as large as 300–500 ml. This is a source of stasis and a nidus for atrial arrhythmias. In theory, the extracardiac procedure may offer additional protection from development of atrial arrhythmias due to a lack of suture lines in atrium.

Traditionally cited contraindications to the Fontan procedure include: early infancy,  $PVR > 4$  Wood units  $m^{-2}$ , severe pulmonary artery hypoplasia, an ejection fraction (EF)  $< 25$ – $30\%$ , and a ventricular diastolic pressure  $> 25$  mmHg. The majority of lesions felt in the past to be relative contraindications to the Fontan procedure such as AV valve regurgitation/stenosis or focally narrowed or distorted pulmonary arteries

can now be corrected at the time of the Fontan procedure.

Use of the staged single-ventricle pathway results in reduced morbidity and mortality as compared to the acute transition from single-ventricle to Fontan physiology. As previously described, the staged pathway makes use of a bidirectional cavopulmonary shunt procedure before the Fontan procedure. Use of the cavopulmonary shunt at 3 to 6 months of age allows an early reduction in the volume overload that accompanies univentricular physiology. This allows the systemic ventricular volume load to be reduced to normal, and allows remodeling of the ventricle at lower end-diastolic volume.

An acute reduction of systemic ventricular volume in the univentricular heart results in impaired ventricular compliance because the wall thickness does not regress as quickly as ventricular volume. The result is impaired ventricular diastolic function and elevated end-diastolic pressure. This will impede pulmonary venous return, which is a liability in the Fontan procedure, because this will subsequently reduce pulmonary blood flow. A low cardiac output state will result because systemic ventricular output can only equal the quantity of blood that transverses the pulmonary vascular bed. The impaired ventricular diastolic function that accompanies acute ventricular volume reduction is better tolerated in BDG or hemi-Fontan physiology than in Fontan physiology. When there is impairment of pulmonary venous return after the BDG or hemi-Fontan, blood from the IVC will continue to provide systemic ventricular filling and cardiac output at a lower pressure than that required to traverse the pulmonary bed.

A risk of the staged procedures is the development of pulmonary arteriovenous malformations, which are the result of diversion of hepatic venous blood flow to another capillary bed (systemic) before delivery to the pulmonary capillary bed as occurs in the bidirectional cavopulmonary shunts. This is generally not a problem when the BDG is eventually converted to a Fontan.

## Fenestrated Fontan

With Fontan physiology, an increased impedance to systemic venous blood flow across the pulmonary capillary bed will result in a decreased delivery of blood to the pulmonary venous atrium, systemic ventricle and aorta, producing a low cardiac output state with a normal or near-normal SaO<sub>2</sub>. This increased impedance is not uncommon in the initial days and weeks following Fontan surgery. Attempts to increase cardiac output by increasing systemic venous pressure may result in the development of refractory pleural effusions and ascites. In many institutions, a 4-mm hole or fenestration is intentionally left in the cavopulmonary pathway or baffle. This allows systemic venous blood to ‘pop-off’ into the pulmonary venous atrium and, ultimately, into the systemic ventricle and aorta. This physiologic R-L shunt allows the maintenance of systemic cardiac output at the expense of SaO<sub>2</sub>. The fenestration can be easily closed in the cardiac catheterization laboratory with an occlusion device at a later date following the demonstration of adequate hemodynamics, gas exchange and cardiac output, by using a balloon occlusion of the fenestration.

## Anesthetic Management, Pre-Fontan

### Goals

The principles outlined in the section on management of BDG physiology after CPB generally apply here. At the age of 2–3 years, patients with a superior cavopulmonary shunt (BDG) generally have a stable cardiovascular system with a SaO<sub>2</sub> of 75–80%, unless there are significant decompressing venous collateral vessels from the SVC to either the IVC or pulmonary venous system. These are usually addressed by coil occlusion in the cardiac catheterization laboratory prior to the Fontan. While these patients will tolerate an inhalation induction from a cardiovascular standpoint, it should

be recognized that several factors might make a pure inhalation induction difficult:

- Venous congestion of the head and tongue due to a relatively high SVC pressure.
- Coughing, breath-holding, or any other cause of high intrathoracic pressure will cause almost complete cessation of pulmonary blood flow. Almost immediate arterial hypoxemia will occur.
- With a  $Q_p:Q_s$  of 0.5–0.7:1 the speed of an inhalation induction will be slow.

### Induction and Maintenance

Consideration should be given to premedication, as these patients and their families generally have had multiple hospital exposures for check-ups and procedures. In addition, many of these patients are tolerant to opioids and benzodiazepines following neonatal and subsequent exposure. This should be considered if premedication is planned prior to IV placement.

## Post-CPB Management, Post-Fontan Procedure

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output. In Fontan patients with a fenestration or intra-pulmonary shunt, decreases in cardiac output will reduce  $SvO_2$  and  $SaO_2$ .  $SvO_2$  can be easily determined using a sample drawn from a central venous catheter.
- Low  $PpvO_2$  saturation will produce a low  $SaO_2$ . Maneuvers to reduce V/Q mismatch and intra-pulmonary shunt should be undertaken. A high  $FiO_2$  may be necessary in the presence of significant V/Q mismatch.
- Ventilation and acid–base management should be optimized to keep the PVR low. The mean airway pressure should be kept at the minimal compatible with the delivery of an adequate minute ventilation and lung expansion. A high mean airway

pressure will mechanically limit the non-pulsatile pulmonary blood flow. This can usually be accomplished with a relatively large tidal volume (10–12 ml  $kg^{-1}$ ), slow respiratory rates (10–15 breaths per min), and short inspiratory times (I:E of 1:3 or 1:4). PEEP should be used with caution.

- A central line placed in the IJ will measure caval (baffle) pressure, which equals mPAP following a Fontan. A surgically placed atrial line will measure common atrial pressure. The TPG (mPAP – common atrial pressure) is usually <10 mmHg with appropriate ventilation. A mPAP of 15–18 mmHg is usually seen in the presence of good systemic ventricular function.
- Inotropic support of the systemic ventricle may be necessary due to ventricular dysfunction induced by chronic volume overload and CPB. Dopamine (3–5  $\mu g kg^{-1} min^{-1}$ ) is useful. Milrinone (0.5–1.0  $\mu g kg^{-1} min^{-1}$ ) is useful for those patients who have a high SVR and afterload/contractility mismatch.
- Inhaled pulmonary vasodilators such as NO generally do not improve  $SaO_2$  or reduce the transpulmonary gradient in this patient population. The exception to this may be the subgroup of patients who have repair of partially obstructed pulmonary venous drainage at the time of their Fontan.
- Fontan patients are exceedingly vulnerable to decreases in intravascular volume and to acute increases in venous capacitance (venodilation causing an increased unstressed venous volume) such as those caused by the direct effects of anesthetic and vasodilator agents, or by a diminished central sympathetic output. Acute increases in venous capacitance and/or compliance can result in lower pulmonary perfusion pressures and subsequently lower ventricular filling pressures, resulting in low cardiac output.
- Hydrostatic pulmonary edema in BDG and Fontan patients is unusual because the driving pressure for pulmonary blood flow is limited by systemic venous pressure. Nonetheless, pulmonary lymphatic drainage is impaired in these patients due to the high

**Table 24.3** Management of Fontan physiology.

Physiology	Clinical presentation	Management
<p><b>Low pulmonary blood flow and inadequate preload delivery to systemic (common) atrium</b></p> <p>TPG &gt;10 mmHg</p> <p><i>Causes:</i> Baffle obstruction Pulmonary artery obstruction Pulmonary vein obstruction Premature baffle fenestration closure</p>	<p><b>No fenestration or premature fenestration closure</b> SaO<sub>2</sub> 95–100% Sa-vo<sub>2</sub> &gt; 35–40% Baffle pressure &gt;20 mmHg Common atrial pressure &lt;10 mmHg Hypotension Tachycardia Poor distal perfusion Metabolic acidosis</p> <p><b>Fenestration patent or baffle leak present</b> SaO<sub>2</sub> 75–80% Sa-vo<sub>2</sub> &gt; 35–40% Baffle pressure &gt; 20 mmHg Common atrial pressure &lt;10 mmHg Hypotension Tachycardia Poor distal perfusion Metabolic acidosis</p>	<p>Volume replacement to keep baffle pressure stable Reduce PVR Correct acidosis Inotropic support Afterload reduction Consider catheterization intervention to open or create baffle fenestration</p>
<p><b>Systemic ventricular dysfunction</b></p> <p>TPG = 5–10 mmHg</p> <p><i>Causes:</i> Systolic dysfunction Diastolic dysfunction AV valve regurgitation/stenosis Loss of AV synchrony Afterload/contractility mismatch</p>	<p><b>No fenestration or premature fenestration closure</b> SaO<sub>2</sub> 85–90% Sa-vo<sub>2</sub> &gt; 35–40% Baffle pressure &gt;20 mmHg Common atrial pressure &gt;15 mmHg Pulmonary edema Hypotension Tachycardia Poor distal perfusion Metabolic acidosis</p> <p><b>Fenestration patent or baffle leak present</b> SaO<sub>2</sub> 70–75% Sa-vo<sub>2</sub> &gt; 35–40% Baffle pressure &gt;20 mmHg Common atrial pressure &gt;15 mmHg Pulmonary edema Hypotension Tachycardia Poor distal perfusion Metabolic acidosis</p>	<p>Volume replacement to keep baffle pressure stable Correct acidosis PEEP may be cautiously used for pulmonary edema Inotropic support Afterload reduction Provide AV synchrony (anti-arrhythmics/pacing) Mechanical support (post-cardiotomy support or bridge to transplantation) Surgical intervention (takedown to BDG)</p>

AV, atrioventricular; BDG, bidirectional Glenn procedure; PVR, pulmonary vascular resistance; TPG, transpulmonary pressure gradient.

central venous pressure present and this contributes to accumulation of lung water.

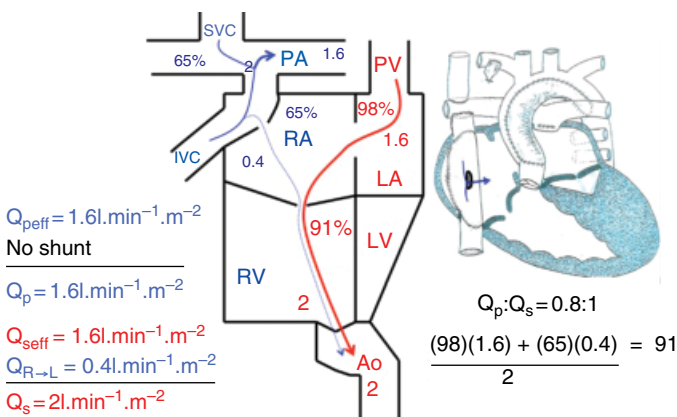
The management goals following the Fontan procedure are summarized in Table 24.3. The systemic and pulmonary blood flow in a Fontan circulation is shown in Figure 24.8.

As with a BDG patient, attention is focused on the transpulmonary gradient (TPG). In Fontan patients the  $mPAP = CVP$ . A central venous pressure in a Fontan patient will measure pressure in the caval portion of the cavopulmonary connection, and is commonly called a baffle pressure. As with a BDG patient, in Fontan patients the equivalent of a LAP is the common atrial pressure. In Fontan patients the pressure in the cavopulmonary connection can be obtained via a percutaneously placed central venous catheter or a surgically placed transthoracic baffle catheter. The common atrial pressure is obtained via a surgically placed transthoracic catheter. Thus in patients with a Fontan, the  $TPG = CVP - \text{common atrial pressure}$ .

Low pulmonary blood flow produces low cardiac output in this series circulation. The systemic ventricle can only pump the volume of blood that is delivered to it across the pulmonary vascular bed. This differs from the

situation after superior cavopulmonary shunts because, in these patients, there is a source of blood supply to the systemic ventricle that does not cross the pulmonary bed. It should be emphasized that in a Fontan patient, low cardiac output will not result in a low  $SaO_2$  unless there are significant sources of intra-pulmonary or intracardiac (fenestration, baffle leak) physiologic R-L shunting. When low cardiac output is due to ventricular dysfunction, common (pulmonary venous) atrial hypertension will lead to the accumulation of lung water and physiologic R-L intra-pulmonary shunting. This situation is analogous to a normal patient with series circulation and no intra-cardiac lesions. Low cardiac output in a normal patient will result in a low  $SaO_2$  only if a significant quantity of intra-pulmonary R-L shunt exists and a low cardiac output produces a low  $SvO_2$ . The presence of a fenestration or baffle leak will exacerbate this  $SaO_2$  decrease in the Fontan patient.

It is commonly stated that early tracheal extubation and spontaneous ventilation enhance pulmonary gas exchange and hemodynamics in Fontan patients. It must be emphasized that low lung volumes, hypercarbia, and hypoxemia will negate any advantage obtained by spontaneous ventilation.



**Figure 24.8** Fenestrated Fontan procedure. Systemic and pulmonary saturations and blood flows. Effective blood flows are shown as solid lines and shunted flows as dotted lines.



## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Non-cardiac surgery for patients following Stage 1 is discussed in Chapter 25.

For Glenn and Fontan patients, the systemic ventricular preload is dependent on pulmonary blood flow. As previously discussed, decreases in intravascular volume such as those associated with prolonged fasting periods should be avoided. Anesthetic agents

should be chosen and administered with the recognition of the vulnerability of these patients to acute increases in venous capacitance. A preinduction fluid bolus of  $10\text{--}15\text{mlkg}^{-1}$  and titration of a drug that decreases venous capacitance (low-dose dopamine) may be beneficial. Factors that increase PVR (e.g., acidosis, atelectasis, hypoxia, severe hypercapnia, hypothermia) need to be controlled, and corrected if needed.

## 25

# Hypoplastic Left Heart Syndrome

## Introduction

Hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) occurs in approximately 1 in 10 000 live births, and is one of the more common complex congenital heart defects. About 40 years ago, comfort care was often the only option offered to parents but over the past few decades a staged surgical approach to repair/palliation of this lesion – the single-ventricle pathway (SVP) – has been developed. It usually involves a first stage repair within a few days after birth, either in form of a classical Norwood procedure with a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt or the alternative right ventricle to pulmonary artery Sano shunt. Following Stage 1 repair, HLHS patients proceed to Stage 2 – the bidirectional Glenn at age 3–8 months followed by the completion of the single-ventricle palliation with the Fontan procedure at 2–5 years of age.

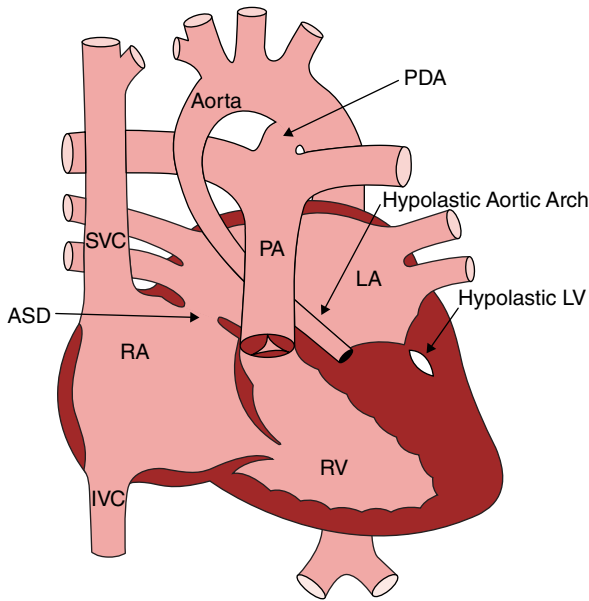
During the first years after introduction of the SVP, less than 30% of patients survived. However, as perioperative management – including anesthetic, surgical and postoperative care – improved, the survival rates increased and many patients will now reach adolescence and adulthood. Studies have shown that the survival rate after Stage 1 increased from 68% in 2002 to more than 80% in 2009. In a subset of infants with mitral stenosis, aortic stenosis, and a suitable left ventricular volume and mass, a staged biventricular repair may be feasible.

## Anatomy

Patients with HLHS have hypoplasia of all left-heart structures. In the most severe form, mitral and aortic atresia with hypoplasia of the left atrium, left ventricle, ascending aorta, and aortic arch (including coarctation) are present. Distal aortic blood flow occurs via the patent ductus arteriosus (PDA). Proximal aortic blood flow and coronary blood flow occur by retrograde filling of a tiny ascending aorta via the PDA (Figure 25.1). This unique variation of single-ventricle physiology in HLHS patients puts them at increased risk for the development of myocardial ischemia.

## Physiology

HLHS is ductal-dependent single-ventricle physiology lesion. These patients are staged to a Fontan procedure. HLHS is a complex shunt with complete obstruction to outflow. There is a communication [atrial septal defect (ASD) or patent foramen ovale (PFO)] and a complete or near-complete obstruction to left atrial outflow (mitral atresia or severe mitral stenosis) and left ventricular outflow (aortic atresia or severe aortic stenosis). This results in an obligatory left-to-right (L-R) shunt at the atrial level, with complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in the right atrium and right ventricle. When the ASD or foramen ovale is



**Figure 25.1** Anatomy of the hypoplastic left heart syndrome. There is severe mitral stenosis/atresia, hypoplasia of the ascending aorta and transverse aortic arch. Pulmonary and systemic blood flows are both delivered via the right ventricle. Aortic blood flow is provided via a large ductus arteriosus. There is antegrade flow from the patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) to the descending aorta, and retrograde flow to the proximal aortic arch and cerebral circulation. The coronaries are perfused retrograde via the tiny aorta.

restrictive, there will be a large left atrial-to-right atrial pressure gradient. This will result in poor decompression of the left atrium, pulmonary venous congestion, and pulmonary hypertension. These patients need emergency decompression of the left atrium (pulmonary venous chamber) and medical stabilization prior to surgery. This usually requires trans-atrial stent placement in the cardiac catheterization laboratory because of the thickness of the intra-atrial septum. The survival of these patients *in utero* is dependent on the presence of a levoatrial cardinal vein decompressing the left atrium to the systemic venous circulation.

Systemic blood flow is provided by a simple downstream shunt (PDA). The shunt at the level of the PDA is a dependent shunt with net systemic and pulmonary blood flow that is determined by the ratio of systemic to pulmonary vascular resistance. A low pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) relative to systemic vascular resistance (SVR) will allow diastolic run-off of blood into the pulmonary circuit compromising systemic perfusion. Flows to the ascending aorta, coronary arteries and arch vessels are supplied entirely (aortic atresia) or almost entirely (severe mitral

and aortic stenosis) retrograde from the PDA. Flow to the descending aorta is antegrade from the PDA. Closure of the PDA in infants with HLHS terminates coronary and systemic blood flow, and results in immediate cardiovascular collapse. Prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> therapy is lifesaving for these patients.

## Surgical Therapy

Patients with HLHS are staged along the single-ventricle pathway to a Fontan procedure (see Figure 24.1). The initial procedure utilizing a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) is commonly referred to as a Norwood stage 1 (see Figure 24.3). The initial procedure utilizing a right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit is commonly referred to as a modified Norwood stage 1 or a Sano procedure. The surgical intervention must incorporate procedures to meet the objective necessary at each stage in the single-ventricle pathway:

- A Damus–Kaye–Stansel (DKS) anastomosis in conjunction with an aortic arch reconstruction/coarctation repair utilizing

homograft or pericardial tissue is necessary to provide an unobstructed systemic ventricle-to-aortic connection.

- An atrial septectomy is performed to allow unobstructed delivery of pulmonary venous blood from the left atrium to the systemic right ventricle via the right atrium.
- A mBTS (usually 3.5 mm GoreTex conduit) or right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit (usually a 5- or 6-mm valveless GoreTex conduit) is created to provide pulmonary blood flow.

The physiology of the mBTS and of the right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit as a source of pulmonary blood flow differs in some important aspects:

- With a mBTS blood is distributed to the pulmonary circulation after it has entered the systemic arterial tree (from the innominate artery to the pulmonary artery), while with a Sano conduit, blood is distributed to the pulmonary circulation before it has entered the systemic arterial tree (from the right ventricle to the pulmonary artery; much like a double-outlet right ventricle). As a result, for a given cardiac output and  $Q_P:Q_S$ , the pulse pressure is wider and the aortic diastolic blood pressure lower in patients with a mBTS. The higher diastolic blood pressure obtained with the Sano shunt may provide better cerebral, coronary, and splanchnic perfusion.
- The Sano shunt requires the creation of a small right ventriculotomy. The right ventricle is the systemic ventricle, and the long-term functional consequences of this ventriculotomy are unknown.
- The Sano conduit is typically valveless, resulting in some pulmonary insufficiency. The volume load on the right ventricle is small and probably offset by the fact that Sano shunt patients have a slightly lower  $Q_P:Q_S$  and volume load than mBTS patients. More recently, surgeons have been utilizing valved Sano shunts to minimize regurgitation.

Following Stage 1 repair, HLHS patients proceed to what is often called Stage 2 – a superior cavopulmonary connection (BDG or hemi-Fontan) – at the age of 3–6 months, and then on to the Fontan procedure at 1–2 years of age. Patients with a right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit generally have their superior cavopulmonary connection at an earlier age than children with a mBTS as they have a lower  $Q_P:Q_S$  and tend to ‘out-grow’ their shunt sooner.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

Patients with HLHS have ductal-dependent systemic blood flow and are particularly vulnerable to myocardial ischemia because the coronary arteries are supplied retrograde from the PDA down a segment of hypoplastic ascending aorta (often 1–2 mm in diameter). These patients are managed according to the principles described in Table 24.2. Subsequent management for the superior cavopulmonary shunt and Fontan procedure is described in later portions of the section on the Management of Single-Ventricle Physiology.

## Post-CPB Management

There are a few subtle differences in the management of patients with a mBTS as opposed to a Sano right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit in the initial postoperative period:

- In patients with a mBTS, a high SVR tends to increase  $Q_P:Q_S$ , increase aortic diastolic run-off, and promote pulmonary overcirculation with compromise of systemic  $O_2$  delivery. Afterload reduction is undertaken with institutional preference dictating the choice of medications such as phenoxybenzamine and/or milrinone.
- High SVR is less disadvantageous to a patient with a Sano right ventricle to

pulmonary artery conduit because pulmonary blood flow is derived from the right ventricle prior to distribution to the arterial circulation, and because of the inherent high resistance through the long right ventricle to pulmonary artery conduit. In these patients, aggressive afterload reduction and a reduced right ventricular pressure may result in a low  $Q_p:Q_s$  and hypoxemia.

## Biventricular Repair

It is now well recognized that there is a wide spectrum of hypoplasia of left-heart structures inherent in the diagnosis of HLHS. Patients with mild left ventricular hypoplasia, mitral stenosis and aortic stenosis are good candidates for a biventricular repair, while patients with severe left ventricular hypoplasia with aortic and mitral atresia continue to be managed with SVP, as described above. However, a subset of HLHS patients are described as having a 'borderline' left ventricle; that is, a sufficient left ventricular volume and adequate mitral and aortic valve function to be considered candidates for a staged approach to a biventricular repair.

### The 'Borderline' Left Heart

There is no strict definition of a 'borderline' left heart. This designation is made based on data regarding left ventricle, mitral valve, and aortic valve size and function, and the extent of endocardial fibroelastosis (EFE) as delineated by magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), echocardiography and cardiac catheterization. MRI is the preferred imaging modality to quantify EFE and left ventricular volumes in patients with borderline left-heart structures. The anatomic features defining 'borderline' left heart include: aortic and mitral valve stenosis, coarctation, small left ventricular cavity volume, globular or elongated and apex forming left ventricle, ventricular restriction caused by the presence of EFE,

and Z scores for left-heart structures between  $-5$  and  $-0.5$ .

### The Left Heart Rehabilitation

Left heart rehabilitation consists of a variety of interventions to relieve inflow and/or outflow tract obstructions, either by catheter-based balloon dilation of the aortic valve or surgical repair of coarctation of the aorta and EFE resection. These interventions are based on the concept that the myocardium in infants and children can potentially grow. In fact, the growth potential of the left ventricle has been demonstrated in neonates. Balloon dilation of critical aortic stenosis in neonates with associated left ventricular hypoplasia is associated with near-normalization of left ventricular dimensions.

### Staged Left Ventricular Recruitment

A 'staged left ventricular recruitment' strategy is applied for patients at high risk of failure with primary biventricular repair. Persistent left atrial hypertension, pulmonary edema, and pulmonary hypertension may occur despite relief of anatomic obstructions in patients with EFE and impaired systolic and diastolic myocardial function.

Candidates for the staged left ventricular recruitment are patients with left ventricular Z scores between  $-5$  and  $-0.5$ , and usually include those with unbalanced AV canal defects, variants of HLHS and Shone's complex.

This strategy is designed to improve blood flow and loading conditions for the left ventricle in an effort to stimulate flow- and load-mediated growth. The circulation is initially supported via the SVP with a Stage 1 procedure, followed by superior cavopulmonary anastomosis, while the left heart is rehabilitated.

Surgical techniques for rehabilitation of the left ventricle include: (i) endocardial fibroelastosis resection, which implies removal of the non-compliant, restrictive, membrane-like lining of the left ventricle by sharp dissection; (ii) mitral valvuloplasty; (iii) redistribution of the atrioventricular valve in an

unbalanced canal; (iv) aortic valvuloplasty; (v) atrial septal defect restriction; and occasionally (vi) the creation of an additional source of pulmonary blood flow (aortopulmonary shunt or right ventricle-pulmonary artery conduit) in order to further augment left ventricular preload. Left-heart dimension Z-scores increase significantly over time after the left ventricular recruitment strategy, whereas they decline after traditional SVP.

### Biventricular Conversion

The term 'biventricular conversion' is used for patients who initially underwent SVP palliations and are later 'surgically converted' to a biventricular circulation with the goal of avoiding the previously described long-term complications associated with SVP. Typical candidates are SVP patients with characteristics such as tricuspid regurgitation, right ventricular dysfunction, genetic syndromes, non-cardiac comorbidities, and elevated PVR historically associated with poor outcomes. The biventricular conversion procedure following staged SVP and staged left ventricular recruitment includes: (i) takedown of the aortopulmonary anastomosis; (ii) re-establishment of separate left and right ventricles; and (iii) the establishment of separate outflow tracts from the left and right ventricles.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery

Stage I patients present for non-cardiac surgeries including, but not limited to, laparoscopic gastrostomy, peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC) line or central venous line placement, imaging studies, or airway evaluations. Preoperative echocardiography is important for risk assessment. The presence of tricuspid (systemic atrioventricular valve) regurgitation, reduced right ventricular function, aortic arch obstruction, and stenosis of the right ventricle-pulmonary artery conduit or mBTS, all contribute to the risk of perioperative hemodynamic instability. The judicious use of inotropic support may be necessary to maintain systemic oxygen delivery. There should be a low threshold to employ invasive blood pressure monitoring. Laparoscopic procedures are increasingly being utilized, and it is important to recognize the effects of abdominal insufflation of CO<sub>2</sub> on both hemodynamics and the reliability of end-tidal CO<sub>2</sub> as a surrogate measure of PaCO<sub>2</sub>.

Extubation in the operating room is possible, but a postoperative intensive care unit bed should always be available in the event that postoperative ventilatory or hemodynamic support is necessary.

## 26

# Interrupted Aortic Arch

## Introduction

Interrupted aortic arch (IAA) is a complete interruption of the aorta, and is a relatively rare disorder constituting approximately 1% of congenital heart lesions. Some 50% of patients with IAA have 22q11 microdeletions, with a subset of these patients meeting the criteria for DiGeorge syndrome.

## Anatomy

IAA is classified into three types (A, B, and C) depending on the site of aortic interruption:

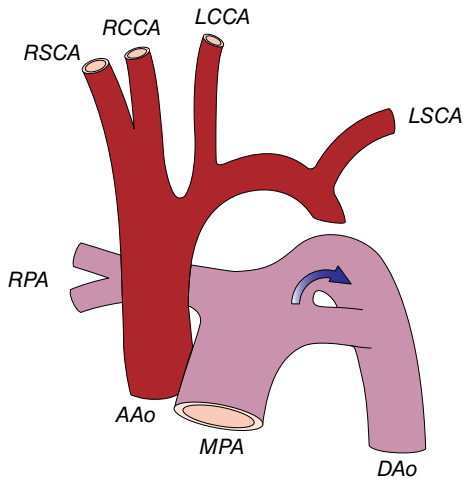
- Type A: the arch is interrupted distal to the left subclavian artery at the level of the aortic isthmus (similar to very severe coarctation). This type comprises 15% of IAAs (Figure 26.1).
- Type B: the arch is interrupted between the left common carotid and left subclavian arteries. The origin of the right subclavian artery is commonly aberrant, arising from the descending aorta distal to the interruption. This is the most common presentation of IAA and comprises 80% of all IAAs (Figure 26.2).
- Type C: the arch is interrupted between the innominate and the left common carotid artery. This is the least common presentation of IAA and comprises 5% of all IAAs (Figure 26.3).

In all cases the aorta distal to the interruption is supplied by the ductus arteriosus. In

the setting of two ventricles there is invariably a large conoventricular septal defect with posterior malalignment (deviation) of the conal septum. IAA is commonly associated with left ventricular outflow tract (LVOT) obstruction. This is due to combinations of hypoplasia of the aortic annulus and subaortic area, the posterior deviation of the conal septum into the LVOT, and the presence of a bicuspid aortic valve due to commissural fusion. IAA can also occur in conjunction with single-ventricle lesions, truncus arteriosus, and double-outlet right ventricle.

## Physiology

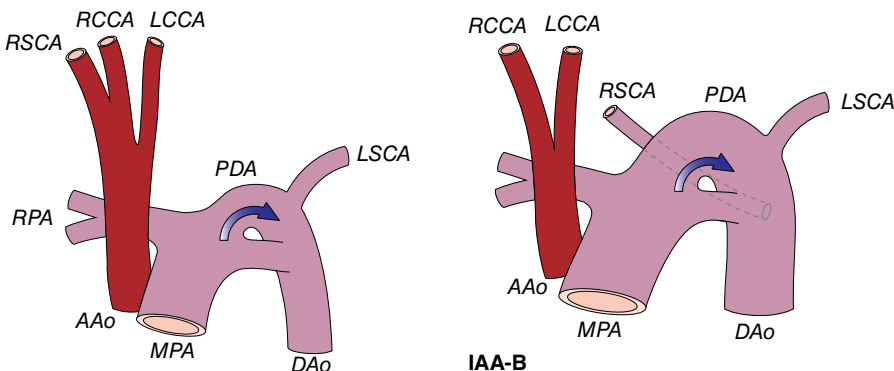
IAA is a ductal-dependent lesion, and is a complex shunt with complete obstruction to aortic outflow at the level of the interruption. A simple downstream shunt (patent ductus arteriosus; PDA) provides aortic flow distal to the interruption. Flow to the aorta proximal to the obstruction is supplied by the left ventricle. In addition, there is a simple shunt (ventricular septal defect; VSD) and there may be fixed obstruction due to LVOT obstruction. There is a physiologic left-to-right (L-R) shunt at the level of the VSD. In the presence of significant LVOT obstruction, there may be a compromise of proximal aortic perfusion due to a large L-R shunt. There is predominantly a physiologic right-to-left (R-L) shunt at the level of the PDA. As a result there will be differential cyanosis with a lower SaO<sub>2</sub> in the lower body and arch

**IAA-A**

**Figure 26.1** Type A interrupted aortic arch. The interruption is distal to the left subclavian artery (LSCA). The descending aorta (DAo) is supplied via the arterial duct. The ascending aorta (AAo) gives rise to all brachiocephalic arteries. LCCA, left common carotid artery; MPA, main pulmonary artery; RCCA, right common carotid artery; RPA, right pulmonary artery; RSCA, right subclavian artery. Reproduced from Marek J, Fenton M, Khambadkone. (2009) Aortic Arch Anomalies: Coarctation of the Aorta and Interrupted Aortic Arch, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 1st edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

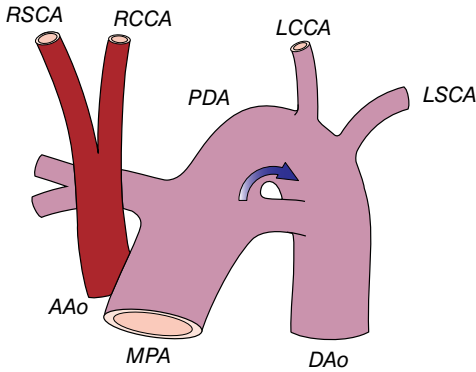
vessels distal to the interruption than in the arch vessels proximal to the interruption. The oxygen saturation difference between right upper and lower extremities is described in Table 26.1.

The shunt at the level of the PDA is a dependent shunt with net systemic and pulmonary blood flow determined by the ratio of systemic to pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). A low PVR relative to systemic vascular resistance (SVR) will allow diastolic run-off of blood into the pulmonary circuit (increased physiologic L-R shunting at the PDA). A unique feature of IAA is that the diastolic hypotension associated with diastolic run-off of blood into the pulmonary arteries occurs only in the aorta distal to the interruption. The diastolic blood pressure will be lower and the pulse pressure wider in the distal as compared to proximal aorta. Consequently, coronary perfusion is preserved while splanchnic perfusion is potentially compromised. Closure of the PDA in infants with IAA terminates the distal aortic flow, severely compromising splanchnic perfusion, and usually results in immediate cardiovascular collapse. Prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> (PGE<sub>1</sub>) therapy is lifesaving for these patients.

**IAA-B****IAA-B  
+ aberrant RSA**

**Figure 26.2** Type B interrupted aortic arch, in which the interruption is between the left carotid artery (LCCA) and left subclavian artery (LSCA). The descending aorta (DAo) and LSCA are supplied via the arterial duct (arrow) and brachiocephalic trunk (RCCA, RSCA), and the LCCA is supplied from the ascending aorta (AO). Also shown is a type B interruption with an aberrant RSCA with its origin off the descending aorta. LPA, left pulmonary artery; PA, pulmonary trunk; RCCA, right common carotid artery; RPA, right pulmonary artery; RSCA, right subclavian artery; PDA, Patent ductus arteriosus. Reproduced from Marek J, Fenton M, Khambadkone. (2009) Aortic Arch Anomalies: Coarctation of the Aorta and Interrupted Aortic Arch, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 1st edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva) Chapter 21, Figure 21.22–21.23.





**IAA-C**

**Figure 26.3** Type C interrupted aortic arch, in which the interruption is between the right common carotid artery (RCCA) and left common carotid artery (LCCA). The descending aorta (DAo), LCCA and left subclavian artery (LSCA) are supplied by the arterial duct (arrow). The ascending aorta (AAo) supplies only the right subclavian artery (RSCA) and right carotid artery (RCCA). MPA, pulmonary trunk; PDA, Patent ductus arteriosus. Reproduced from Marek J, Fenton M, Khambadkone. (2009) Aortic Arch Anomalies: Coarctation of the Aorta and Interrupted Aortic Arch, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 1st edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

**Table 26.1** Anatomy and oxygen saturation in IAA.

Classification	Anatomy	Oxygen saturation
Type A	Isthmus: Distal to the left subclavian artery.	Both upper extremity (UE) > Lower extremities (LE)
Type B	Distal arch: Distal to the origin of the left common carotid artery.	Right UE > Left UE and LE
Type C	Proximal arch: Proximal to the origin of the left common carotid artery.	Right UE > Left UE and LE

**Surgical Management**

The surgical repair is performed as a one-stage repair in the neonatal period via a median sternotomy. The repair involves direct

arch re-anastomosis; and augmentation of the arch with graft material is commonly necessary. In order to reduce tension on the arch anastomosis, it may be necessary to divide and ligate the left subclavian artery during the repair of Type B lesions. In addition, it may be necessary to divide and ligate an aberrant right subclavian artery if present to reduce tension on the descending aortic portion of the anastomosis.

Arterial cannulation for cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) must be modified to provide total body perfusion. Both, the ascending aorta and the pulmonary artery are cannulated and connected with a Y-connector to the arterial line of the CPB circuit. Tourniquets are then placed around the right and left pulmonary arteries, ensuring perfusion of the distal aorta via the ductus arteriosus. This allows total body perfusion and hypothermia to be achieved. The procedure can then be carried out under deep hypothermic circulatory arrest or with regional cerebral perfusion.

Additional intracardiac defects (VSD, ASD) are also repaired at the time of surgery. When LVOT obstruction is severe, additional procedures are necessary in addition to IAA repair. One approach is to perform a Ross/Konno procedure (Ross procedure in conjunction with patch enlargement of the aortic annulus and LVOT in the area of the interventricular septum). Alternatively, a Yasui (Norwood/Rastelli) procedure can be performed. This approach involves closing the VSD by baffling it to the pulmonary annulus, performing a Damus–Kaye–Stansel anastomosis (proximal pulmonary artery to aorta), and recreating right ventricle to pulmonary artery continuity with a conduit.

**Catheterization Laboratory Intervention**

There are no indications for catheterization in the neonatal period prior to surgical intervention. Patients may present for balloon angioplasty postoperatively for stenosis at the site of aortic arch anastomosis.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate, contractility, and preload to maintain cardiac output.
- Continuation of PGE<sub>1</sub> therapy (0.01–0.05 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) to maintain ductal patency is necessary.
- A reduction in the PVR:SVR ratio should be avoided as this will increase pulmonary blood flow and compromise somatic oxygen delivery.
- Avoid increases in SVR.

Arterial monitoring sites must be chosen carefully. The right radial artery pressure will reflect distal aortic pressure in the presence of an aberrant right subclavian artery. If the left subclavian artery is divided and ligated during repair, a left radial arterial line will be of little use post-repair. Ideally, the arterial line should be in the right arm. The surgeon may also request that a femoral arterial catheter be placed to assess the adequacy of the repair by way of comparison of proximal and distal blood pressures. At a minimum, a pulse oximeter probe and a non-invasive blood-pressure (NIBP) cuff should be applied to a lower extremity. A pulse oximeter probe should also be placed on the right hand. The use of cerebral near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS) may be helpful in assessing the adequacy of cerebral blood flow, while flank NIRS may be used to indirectly assess somatic blood flow.

### Induction and Maintenance

Neonates and infants presenting for IAA repair are PGE<sub>1</sub>-dependent with pulmonary congestion and potentially compromised distal perfusion. A technique using high-dose fentanyl in combination with a benzodiazepine, or a low inspired concentration of an inhalation agent is well tolerated by these patients.

## Post-CPB Management

Determining whether there is a residual arch obstruction is a priority following the termination of CPB. This requires use of transesophageal or epicardial echocardiography and/or accurate simultaneous measurements of both upper and lower aortic blood pressures, obtained with either percutaneously or surgically placed catheters. A significant gradient may necessitate surgical revision. Bleeding from the arch suture lines may be significant. Residual LVOT obstruction may produce left ventricular contractility/afterload mismatch. An elevated PVR due to left atrial hypertension, and reactive pulmonary vasoreactivity due to high Q<sub>P</sub>:Q<sub>S</sub> preoperatively, may also result in right ventricular contractility/afterload mismatch. In addition, the long CPB and deep hypothermic circulatory arrest/regional cerebral perfusion times necessary to complete this procedure may further compromise left ventricular and right ventricular functions and produce myocardial edema.

### Goals

- Maintain heart rate (preferably sinus rhythm) at an age-appropriate value. Cardiac output is likely to be more heart-rate-dependent during the post-CPB period.
- Reduce PVR when necessary through ventilatory interventions.
- Inotropic support of the left and right ventricles may be necessary for the reasons addressed previously. Dopamine (5–10 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) is useful in this instance because it provides potent inotropic support without increasing the PVR. Milrinone (0.5–1.0 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup>) should be considered for its lusitropic effects and its effect on PVR.

## 27

### Vascular Rings

#### Introduction

A vascular ring is a rare disorder comprising less than 1% of congenital cardiac lesions. It results from persistence or failure of regression of embryonic structures of the aortic arch during fetal development (see Chapter 1).

#### Anatomy

Vascular rings can be complete rings encircling both trachea and esophagus (e.g., double aortic arch and right aortic arch with a left ligamentum arteriosum), and incomplete rings that compress the trachea and esophagus (pulmonary artery sling and innominate artery compression syndrome) (Figures 27.1–27.6). Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and contrast computerized tomography (CT) are the diagnostic techniques of choice, as they are non-invasive and demonstrate the complex relationships of vascular and non-vascular structures (systemic, pulmonary arteries and veins, the heart, the tracheobronchial tree, and thorax) allowing a three-dimensional reconstruction and precise anatomic delineation.

The different types of vascular anomalies associated with airway compression are detailed in Table 27.1. It is important to be familiar with mirror image branching of the aortic arch vessels as this term appears frequently in discussion of these lesions. A right aortic arch is characterized by the

aortic arch coursing to the right of the trachea. Mirror image branching of the aortic arch vessels occurs in conjunction with a right aortic arch and is characterized by the brachiocephalic trunk (innominate artery) giving rise to the left subclavian and left carotid arteries.

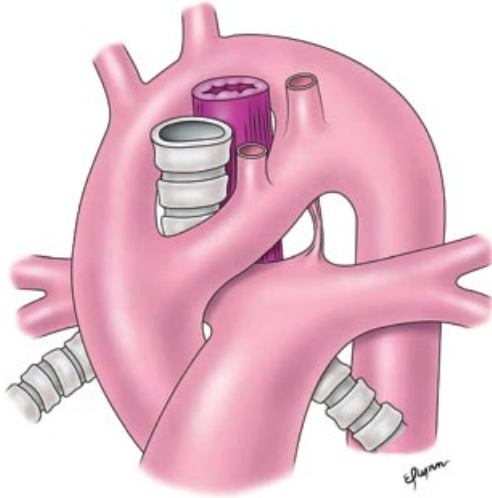
#### Physiology

Patients with vascular rings may present with wheezing, stridor, respiratory distress, aspiration, and cyanotic or apneic episodes. Patients with esophageal compression can present with dysphagia, feeding difficulties and failure to thrive.

The association of cardiac defects and vascular tracheobronchial compression is important, since delayed diagnosis and treatment can significantly increase morbidity and mortality.

#### Surgical Management

The surgical approach to most vascular rings is via a left posterolateral thoracotomy. However, a right or left arch with a right ligamentum arteriosum will necessitate a right thoracotomy. A sternotomy is indicated when an intracardiac defect exists and cardiac surgical repair is planned. The recurrent laryngeal nerve is at risk of injury during surgical repair.



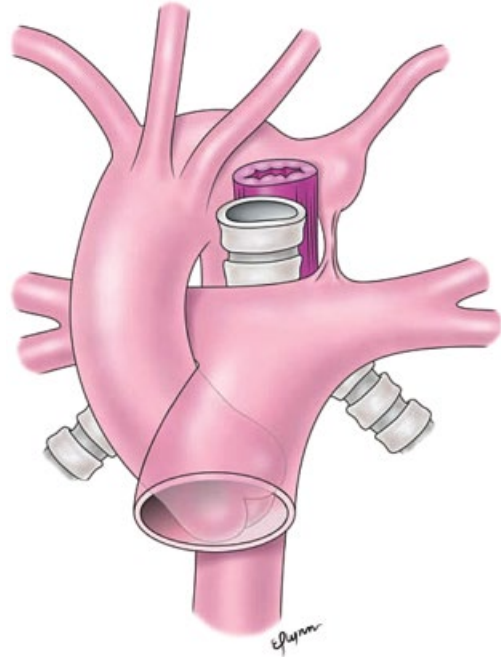
**Figure 27.1** Double aortic arch. The ring encircling the trachea and esophagus comprises the right and left aortic arches, and the ductal ligament. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

## Catheterization Laboratory Intervention

Cardiac catheterization and angiography is rarely performed given the superior imaging capabilities of CT and MRI. A cardiac catheterization may be necessary to define associated intracardiac defects.

## Anesthetic Management

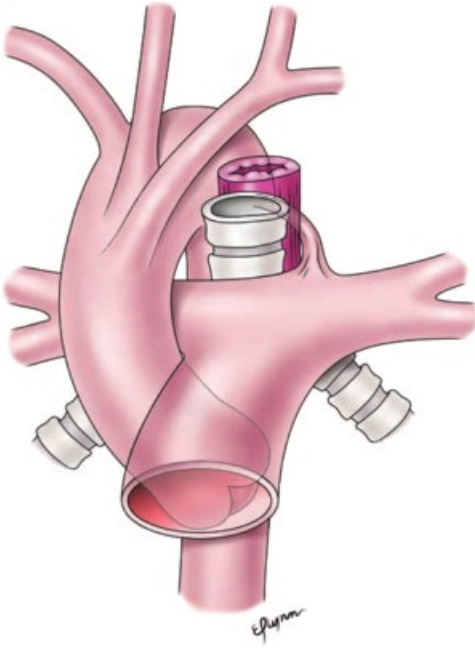
Ventilation and securing the airway is critical. Therefore, it is important to understand the cause, degree, and location of airway compromise. Communication with the surgical team regarding the need for controlled versus spontaneous ventilation, the need for preoperative bronchoscopy, and single-lung ventilation is a must. Optimal positioning of the endotracheal tube may require bronchoscopy



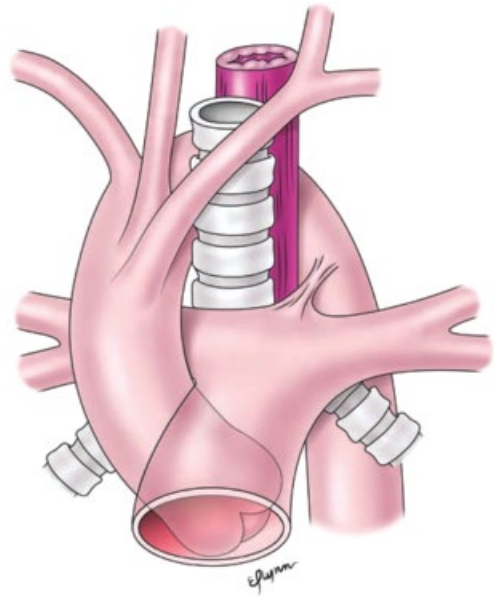
**Figure 27.2** Right aortic arch with mirror image branching and an aberrant origin of the left subclavian artery. The ring encircling the trachea and esophagus comprises the right aortic arch, base of the left subclavian artery (diverticulum of Kommerell) and the left-sided ductal ligament. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

when tracheal narrowing is present. In cases with significant airway narrowing, an induction technique that confirms the ability to ventilate with positive pressure without air-trapping prior to administration of muscle relaxants may be prudent. In addition, the possibility that the otolaryngology team and rigid bronchoscopy may be needed to secure the airway should be considered.

It is important to remember that successful repair of the ring may not immediately relieve airway obstruction. Residual anatomic obstruction and dynamic obstruction related to tracheobronchial malacia may be observed immediately on extubation or postoperatively following surgical repair.

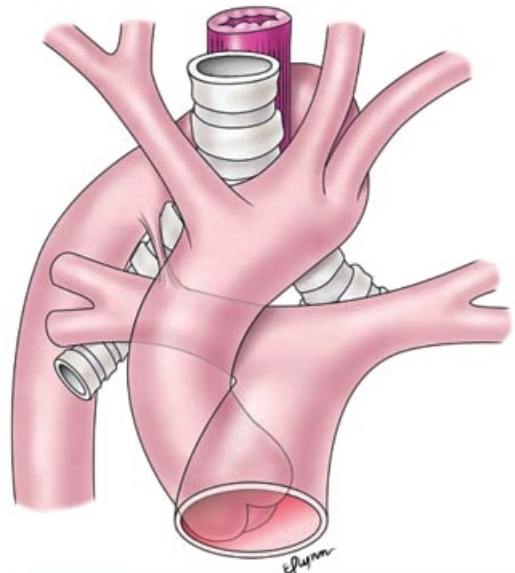


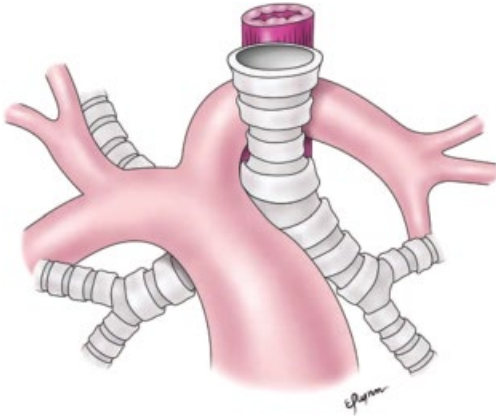
**Figure 27.3** Drawing of a right aortic arch with mirror-image branching and a left ductal ligament. The ring encircling the trachea and esophagus comprises the right aortic arch, retro-esophageal ductal diverticulum and left-sided ductal ligament. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).



**Figure 27.4** Right aortic arch with mirror-image branching, a left descending aorta and a left ductal ligament. The ring encircling the trachea and esophagus comprises the right aortic arch, retro-esophageal right-sided dorsal aorta, and left-sided ductal ligament. Here, unlike the typical right aortic arch, where the aorta descends to the right of the spine for some distance before gradually crossing to the left of the spine at the level of the diaphragm, the descending aorta is positioned leftward within the thorax. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

**Figure 27.5** Left aortic arch with normal branching, a right descending aorta and a right ductal ligament. The ring encircling the trachea and esophagus comprises the left aortic arch, retro-esophageal left-sided dorsal aorta, and right-sided ductal ligament. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).





**Figure 27.6** Left pulmonary artery sling. The left pulmonary artery arises aberrantly from the proximal right pulmonary artery and courses posterior to the trachea and anterior to the esophagus toward the left hilum. Reproduced from Powell AJ. (2016) Vascular Rings and Slings, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

**Table 27.1** Classification of vascular anomalies associated with airway and/or esophageal compression. Modified from Kussman, B.D., Geva, T., McGowan, F., Jr Cardiovascular causes of airway compression. *Pediatr. Anaesth.*, 2004; **14**(1): 60–74.

- 
- I) Double aortic arch
  - II) Right aortic arch
    - Aberrant left subclavian artery with left ligamentum arteriosum
    - Mirror-image branching with right (retro-esophageal) ligamentum arteriosum
  - III) Left aortic arch
    - Aberrant right subclavian artery with right ligamentum arteriosum
    - Right descending aorta and right ligamentum arteriosum
    - Aberrant right subclavian artery with left ligamentum arteriosum
  - IV) Anomalous innominate artery
  - V) Cervical aortic arch
  - VI) Pulmonary artery sling
-

## 28

## Tricuspid Atresia

### Introduction

Tricuspid valve atresia is the third most common cyanotic heart lesion, with an estimated prevalence of 0.5 to 1.2 per 10000 live births. There is no difference in the incidence based on gender.

### Anatomy

In tricuspid atresia (TA), there is agenesis of the tricuspid valve and no communication between the right atrium and the hypoplastic right ventricle (Figure 28.1). The tricuspid valve is embryologically part of the right ventricle. Anatomic classification is based on the presence or absence of transposition of the great arteries (TGA), the extent of pulmonary stenosis or atresia, and the size of the ventricular septal defect (VSD) (Figure 28.2). This classification, and the frequency of the different lesion types, are summarized in Table 28.1. Approximately 70% of patients with TA are Type 1, and 30% are Type 2. Type 3 lesions are very rare. The most common lesion is Type 1B (50%).

### Physiology

TA is single-ventricle physiology lesion, with the patients staged to a Fontan procedure. TA is a complex shunt with complete obstruction to right ventricular inflow and variable obstruction to right ventricular

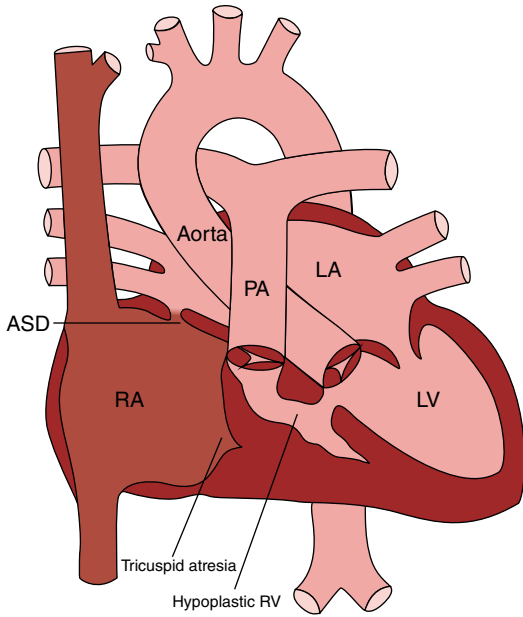
outflow. There is a communication [atrial septal defect (ASD) or patent foramen ovale (PFO)] which results in an obligatory right-to-left (R-L) shunt at the atrial level, with complete mixing of systemic and pulmonary venous blood in the left atrium. When the ASD or foramen ovale is restrictive, there will be a large right atrial to left atrial pressure gradient. This will result in poor decompression of the right atrium and systemic venous congestion.

The quantities of pulmonary blood flow associated with each type of TA are summarized in Table 28.1.

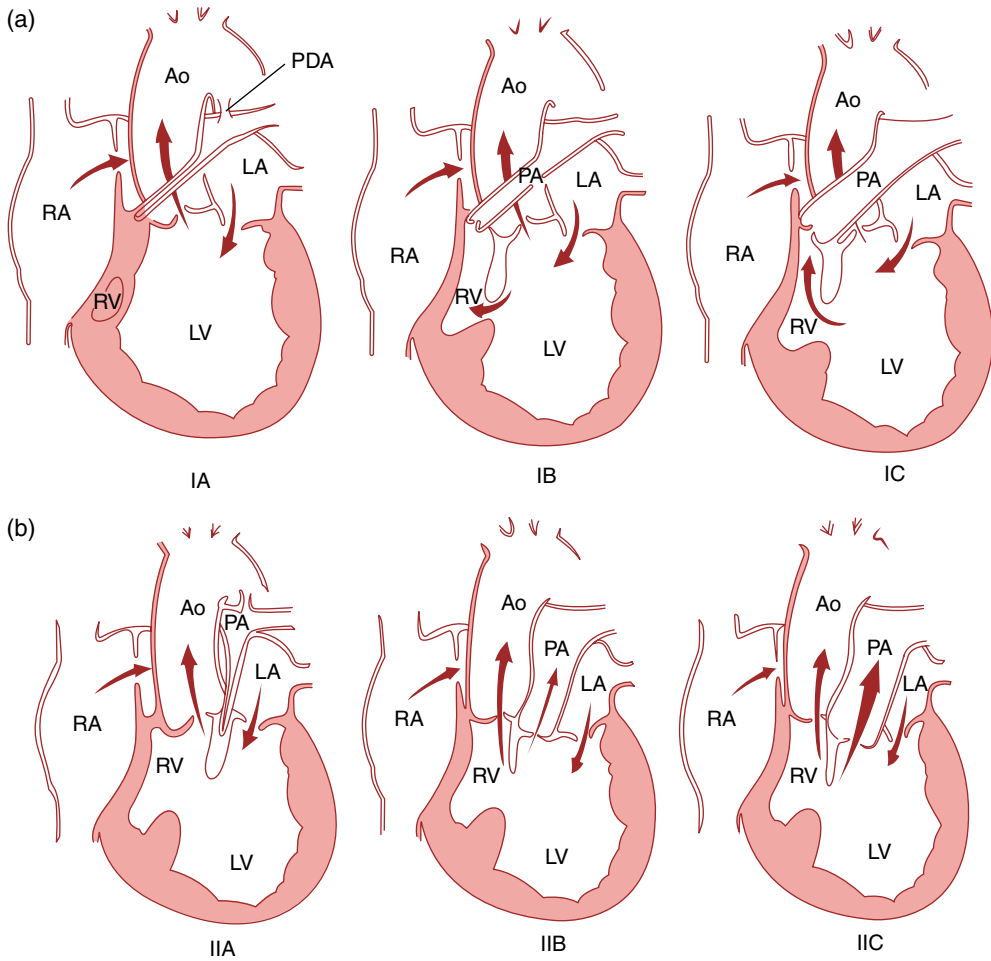
Pulmonary blood flow can be provided by a downstream shunt from one or both of the following sources:

- Intracardiac: the pathways are described in Table 28.1. This downstream shunt may be simple (VSD without pulmonary stenosis), complex (VSD with pulmonary stenosis), or complex with complete obstruction (pulmonary atresia with or without a VSD).
- Extracardiac: this is generally a patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), but in older patients major aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAs) may have developed. When pulmonary atresia exists (types 1A and 2A), these simple shunts are the sole source of pulmonary blood flow.

In single-ventricle lesions the degree of cyanosis will be determined largely by  $Q_P:Q_S$ . Therefore, patients with a  $Q_P:Q_S < 1$  due to stenotic or atretic pulmonary outflow tracts, restrictive VSDs, or both, will be more



**Figure 28.1** Diagram illustrating a tricuspid atresia, atrial septal defect, and hypoplastic right ventricle. RA, right atria; LA, Left atria; LV, left ventricle; RV, right ventricle; PA, pulmonary artery; ASD, atrial septal defect.



**Figure 28.2** Classification of tricuspid atresia. (a) Type 1: tricuspid atresia without transposition of the great vessels. (b) Tricuspid atresia with dextro-transposition of the great vessels. RA, right atria; LA, Left atria; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; LV, left ventricle; RV, right ventricle; Ao, aorta; PA, pulmonary artery.



**Table 28.1** Classification of tricuspid atresia and sources of aortic and pulmonary blood flows.

Type of tricuspid atresia	Frequency (%)	Pulmonary blood flow (amount)	Aortic blood flow	Pulmonary blood flow
<b>Type 1</b>	<b>70</b>			
1A: TA, NREGA, PA	10	Decreased	LV	PDA, MAPCAs
1B: TA, NREGA, restrictive VSD, PS	50	Decreased	LV	LV through VSD to RV
1C: TA, NREGA, non-restrictive VSD, no PS	10	No change or Increased	LV	LV through VSD to RV
<b>Type 2</b>	<b>30</b>			
2A: TA, D-TGA, non-restrictive VSD, PA	2	Decreased	LV through VSD to RV	PDA, MAPCAs
2B: TA, D-TGA, non-restrictive VSD, PS	8	No change or Decreased	LV through VSD to RV	LV
2C: TA, D-TGA, non-restrictive VSD, no PS	20	Increased	LV through VSD to RV	LV
<b>Type 3</b>	<b>&lt;1</b>			
3A: TA, D-loop ventricles, L-TGA, subpulmonic stenosis		Decreased	LV	LV through VSD to RV
3B: TA, L-loop ventricles, L-TGA, subaortic stenosis		Increased	LV through VSD to RV	LV

TA, tricuspid atresia; NREGA, normally related great arteries; PA, pulmonary atresia; LV, left ventricle; PDA, patent ductus arteriosus; MAPCAs, major aortopulmonary collaterals; VSD, ventricular septal defect; RV, right ventricle; PS, pulmonary stenosis; TGA, transposition of the great arteries.

cyanotic than their counterparts with normal or increased pulmonary blood flow. TA imposes a volume load on the left ventricle, and increased pulmonary blood flow produces an even larger left ventricular volume load (Figure 28.3). Therefore, patients with TA and increased pulmonary blood flow are likely to present with congestive heart failure (CHF). Furthermore, patients with increased pulmonary blood flow are at risk to develop pulmonary artery hypertension (PAH).

## Surgical Therapy

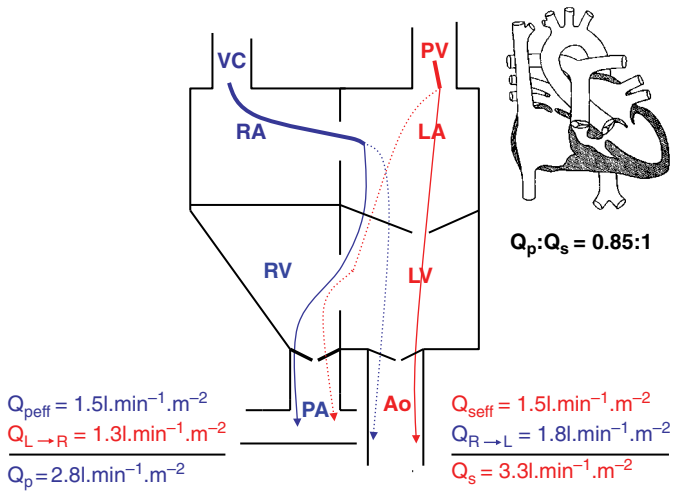
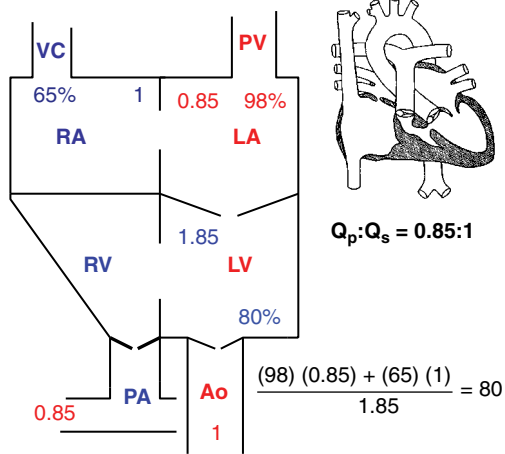
More than 70% of neonates with TA have ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow and require a modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) in association with PDA ligation. This can often be done off-cardiopulmonary

bypass (CPB) through a median sternotomy. In the small subset of patients with increased pulmonary blood flow the initial procedure will be placement of a pulmonary artery band to control pulmonary blood flow. In either instance, following initial repair, TA patients proceed to a superior cavopulmonary connection or bidirectional Glenn at the age of 3–6 months, and then to the Fontan procedure at 2–3 years of age.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

These patients are initially managed according to the principles of single-ventricle physiology, pre-initial repair (see Chapter 24). Subsequent management is similar to the management of the superior cavopulmonary shunt and Fontan procedure.



**Figure 28.3** Depiction of saturations and blood flows in tricuspid atresia type 1B with a mildly restrictive VSD and mild pulmonary stenosis. Effective flows are shown as solid lines and shunted flows are shown as dotted lines.

## 29

## Heart Transplantation

The natural history of end-stage cardiac dysfunction is not well delineated in infants and children, in part because of the heterogeneity of the various congenital lesions. In addition, end-stage cardiac dysfunction may be difficult to define with clinical criteria. Growth failure secondary to severe cardiac dysfunction is useful in identifying end-stage disease. Nonetheless, heart failure (HF) is classified in children as summarized in Table 29.1.

Cardiomyopathy (CM) and complex congenital heart disease (CHD) represent the two major indications for orthotopic heart transplantation (OHT) in pediatric patients. CM is subclassified as dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM), restrictive cardiomyopathy (RCM), and hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM). Specific indications for OHT are summarized in Table 29.2.

Contraindications to OHT are listed in Table 29.3.

Among patients aged less than 1 year, 53% of transplants are performed in children with CHD, with the vast majority (80%) of those procedures performed in children with single-ventricle physiology. In patients aged between 1 and 5 years, the indications for heart transplantation are almost divided equally between CHD (42%) and CM (53%). Most children requiring transplantation for congenital lesions in this age group have had at least one previous cardiac surgical procedure. In patients aged between 6 and 10 years, the indications for OHT are more likely due to CM (56%) than to CHD (36%).

In patients aged between 11 and 17 years, the primary indication (66%) for OHT is CM.

### The Donor

The following guidelines are used to select donors after the diagnosis of irreversible brain death has been made. Echocardiographic assessment of donor ventricular and valvular function is routine. The final decision of whether to accept a donor heart is made by the harvesting surgeon following visual inspection of the heart and an overall assessment of donor suitability and hemodynamic stability. Some important points include:

- No active infection or malignancy with the possibility of metastases.
- ABO compatibility and human lymphocyte antigen (HLA) screening (Table 29.4). The donor and recipient must be ABO blood type-compatible. HLA typing for cardiac transplantation is not routine. The recipient's blood is tested against a standard panel of blood cells containing a diverse human lymphocyte sample. This screen is called the panel reactive antibody (PRA) screen. If the PRA has 5–15% reactivity, most centers will proceed with transplantation based on ABO compatibility. If the PRA is greater than 15%, then a lymphocyte cross-match between donor and recipient blood can be performed. This is a time-consuming process, as

**Table 29.1** Heart failure in children.

Stage	Interpretation
A	Patients with increased risk of developing HF, but who have normal cardiac function and no evidence of cardiac chamber volume overload. Examples: previous exposure to cardiotoxic agents, family history of heritable cardiomyopathy, univentricular heart, congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries.
B	Patients with abnormal cardiac morphology or cardiac function, with no symptoms of HF, past or present. Examples: aortic insufficiency with left ventricular enlargement, history of anthracycline with decreased left ventricular systolic function.
C	Patients with underlying structural or functional heart disease, and past or current symptoms of HF.
D	Patients with end-stage HF requiring continuous infusion of inotropic agents, mechanical circulatory support, cardiac transplantation or hospice care.

HF, heart failure.

**Table 29.2** Indications for orthotopic heart transplantation.

Indications
<p>Class I</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stage D heart failure associated with systemic ventricular dysfunction in pediatric patients with cardiomyopathies or previously repaired/palliated CHD.</li> <li>• Stage C heart failure associated with severe limitation of exercise and activity. If measurable, such patients would have a peak maximum oxygen consumption &lt;50% predicted for age and sex.</li> <li>• Stage C heart failure associated with systemic ventricular dysfunction in patients with cardiomyopathies or previously repaired/palliated CHD when heart failure is associated with significant growth failure attributable to the heart disease.</li> <li>• Stage C heart failure in pediatric heart disease with associated near sudden death and/or life-threatening arrhythmias untreatable with medications or an implantable defibrillator.</li> <li>• Stage C heart failure in pediatric restrictive cardiomyopathy disease associated with reactive pulmonary hypertension.</li> </ul> <p>Class IIA</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stage C heart failure in pediatric heart disease associated with reactive pulmonary hypertension and a potential risk of developing fixed, irreversible elevation of pulmonary vascular resistance that could preclude orthotopic heart transplantation in the future</li> <li>• Certain anatomic and physiological conditions likely to worsen the natural history of CHD in infant patients with a functional single ventricle, which can lead to use of heart transplantation as primary therapy, including: (i) severe stenosis (stenoses) or atresia in proximal coronary arteries; (ii) moderate to severe stenosis and/or insufficiency of the atrioventricular valve and/or systemic semilunar valve(s); and (iii) severe ventricular dysfunction</li> <li>• Several anatomic and physiological conditions likely to worsen the natural history of previously repaired or palliated CHD in pediatric patients with stage C heart failure that may lead to consideration for heart transplantation without severe systemic ventricular dysfunction, including: (i) pulmonary hypertension and a potential risk of developing fixed, irreversible elevation of pulmonary vascular resistance that could preclude orthotopic heart transplantation in the future; (ii) severe aortic or systemic atrioventricular valve insufficiency that is not considered amenable to surgical correction; (iii) severe arterial oxygen desaturation (cyanosis) that is not considered amenable to surgical correction; and (iv) persistent protein-losing enteropathy despite optimal medical/surgical therapy</li> </ul>

CHD, congenital heart disease; AV, atrioventricular.

**Table 29.3** Contraindications to recipient selection for heart transplantation.**Absolute contraindications**

- History of emotional instability, medical non-compliance, or active substance abuse.
- Fixed pulmonary hypertension  $> 5$  Wood units  $m^{-2}$  (for cardiac transplantation, not for lung or heart–lung transplantation).
- Significant cerebral vascular disease.
- Active malignancy or life-limiting coexistent disease.

**Relative contraindications**

- Significant peripheral vascular disease.
- Active peptic ulcer or diverticular disease.
- Severe bronchitis or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (for cardiac transplantation, not for lung or heart–lung transplantation).
- Disease likely to recur in allograft (cardiac amyloidosis or sarcoidosis).
- Irreversible hepatic or renal disease (may be considered for combined cardiac and renal or hepatic transplantation).
- Immunological sensitization to donor antigens.
- Severe osteoporosis.
- Morbid obesity.
- Active infection.
- Diabetes mellitus with end organ dysfunction.

**Table 29.4** ABO compatibility.

ABO of heart recipient	ABO of donor heart	ABO of transfused blood products		
		Plasma	Red cells	Platelets
O	AB	AB	O	AB
O	B	AB or B	O	AB or B
O	A	AB or A	O	AB or A
B	AB	AB	O or B	AB
B	A	AB	O or B	AB
A	AB	AB	O or A	AB
A	B	AB	O or A	AB

donor blood must be transported to the transplant center. Pre- and post-transplant therapy with intravenous IgG or plasmapheresis may be indicated. Recently, some success with ABO-incompatible transplants has been achieved in infants due to the immaturity of infant ABO isohemagglutinins.

- Recipient donor size match. For older children the donor's body weight should be within 60–150% of the recipient's weight,

whereas for infants and small children the donor's weight should be between 80 and 160% of the recipient's body weight. Hearts transplanted into infants and children demonstrate normal cardiac chamber dimensional growth. Most centers prefer donors at the upper limits of size for their patients with pulmonary hypertension, although data to support this practice are lacking.

## Anesthetic Management of the Recipient

### Preoperative Evaluation

Cardiac transplant patients typically undergo extensive medical evaluation. A summary of this evaluation is readily available to the anesthesiologist through the transplant coordinator. The use of an antifibrinolytic should be considered for patients at risk for postoperative bleeding. Additional considerations include: ventricular arrhythmias, thromboembolic phenomena, preoperative mechanical ventricular support and the artificial heart, and previous cardiac surgical procedures. All patients who have undergone previous cardiac surgical procedures are likely to have prolonged dissection times and are at risk for bleeding. Adequate intravenous access is a necessity.

At present, the limiting factor in the number of patients who can be offered a heart transplant is the availability of donor hearts. In the United States, approximately 20% of suitable pediatric transplant candidates die before a donor heart can be found. As a result, mechanical assist devices are increasingly used as a bridge to cardiac transplantation until suitable donor hearts are found.

### Physical Examination

A physical examination should include an evaluation of the limitations to vascular access and monitoring sites imposed by previous surgery and catheterizations. A child who has undergone a palliative shunt procedure may have a diminished pulse or an unobtainable blood pressure in the arm in which the subclavian artery has been incorporated into the shunt. Children who have undergone multiple palliative procedures may have poor peripheral venous access, and previous surgical cut-down sites may exist. Children having multiple cardiac catheterizations may have absent or compromised femoral arterial and venous access. Such

findings have obvious implications regarding arterial and venous catheter placement, non-invasive blood pressure monitoring, the use of pulse oximetry, and the mode of induction.

### Premedication

Most patients will have been called into the hospital on short notice and many will have eaten solid food in the previous 6–8 hours. Premedication with midazolam 0.03–0.05 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> in divided doses works well to reduce anxiety. In older children with previous multiple opioid and benzodiazepine exposures, intravenous ketamine in doses of 0.5–1.0 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> may also be necessary. In children without intravenous access, oral premedication will probably be necessary. Supplemental oxygen should be administered, because hypoxemia will exacerbate existing pulmonary hypertension.

### Preinduction

Some transplant patients will be receiving intravenous inotropic and vasodilator therapy when they arrive for surgery. These agents should be continued via a reliable intravenous route. Sterility is of utmost importance because the patients will be immunosuppressed. All patients should have two large-bore peripheral intravenous lines. Placement of a central large-bore venous sheath for use as a reliable site of rapid fluid administration is warranted if peripheral access is poor. Electrocardiogram (ECG) monitoring should allow assessment of V5, I, II, III, aVR, aVL, and aVF. Normally, two leads (II and V5) are monitored simultaneously intraoperatively. A radial artery catheter is placed after induction in infants and children. Patient size or the presence of complex intracardiac anatomy generally precludes the placement of a pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) in infants and children. Pulmonary artery pressures are monitored post-cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) with a surgically placed transthoracic PAC if needed. The

disadvantages of PAC as they apply to cardiac transplant patients are:

- Technical difficulties in advancing the catheter in patients with a dilated right ventricle and a low cardiac output.
- An increased risk of atrial and ventricular ectopy leading to hemodynamic compromise.
- An increased risk of infection.
- The catheter must be withdrawn into the sterile sheath during excision of the recipient's heart.
- The catheter must be re-advanced across new suture lines into the donor heart as CPB is terminated.

Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is utilized to manage patients pre- and post-CPB. After transplantation, TEE is used to assess left and right ventricular function, to measure pulmonary artery pressures (using a tricuspid regurgitation jet), and to guide the management of pulmonary artery hypertension and right ventricular dysfunction if necessary.

### Induction and Maintenance

The patient's underlying physiology must be appreciated such that an appropriate anesthetic plan can be formulated. In patients with CHD, the individual chapters on each lesion will provide guidance. Patients with CM must be managed with an understanding of the physiologic constraints associated with DCM, RCM, and HCM (Table 29.5).

There is no single best approach to the induction or maintenance of anesthesia. It is important to keep the hemodynamic goals in mind and to titrate the anesthetic agents accordingly. The circulation time will be slow given the low cardiac output state in many of these patients. These patients require an induction that will blunt the hemodynamic response to laryngoscopy and tracheal intubation without undue myocardial depression, vasodilation, and hypotension. Careful titration of etomidate  $0.1\text{--}0.3\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  in combination with  $5\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  of fentanyl is

useful for induction. A full  $0.3\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  dose of etomidate is rarely necessary to induce hypnosis and loss of consciousness. This drug combination has minimal direct effect on heart rate, myocardial contractility, peripheral vascular resistance, or venous capacitance. An overall diminution in central sympathetic tone will also contribute to circulatory depression. Rocuronium  $1.0\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  or succinylcholine  $1\text{--}2\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  can be used to perform a modified rapid sequence induction (cricoid pressure during positive-pressure ventilation) in the patient with questionable nil-by-mouth (NPO) status.

Anesthesia can be maintained with additional doses of opioid in conjunction with a benzodiazepine (usually midazolam in increments of  $0.01$  to  $0.03\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ), or a low inhaled concentration ( $0.5\text{--}0.75$  MAC) of isoflurane or sevoflurane.  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$  is not a good choice as an adjuvant agent; it has a weak myocardial depressant effect that normally is counteracted by the sympathetic outflow it produces. In patients with DCM, where elevated catecholamine levels, down-regulated beta-receptors, and reduced myocardial norepinephrine stores are present, the myocardial depressant effects will predominate.

In the instance of a child without intravenous access, a careful inhalation induction with  $100\%$   $\text{O}_2$  and no more than  $4\%$  sevoflurane following a heavy oral medication (ketamine  $7\text{--}10\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  and midazolam  $1\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) can be considered. Once intravenous access is obtained, anesthesia can be maintained as described above. An alternative for induction and maintenance in infants and children with intravenous access is a high-dose opioid technique (fentanyl  $50\text{--}75\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  or sufentanil  $5\text{--}7.5\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$ ) in conjunction with a benzodiazepine (usually midazolam), or a low inhaled concentration of isoflurane or sevoflurane and rocuronium. Caution must be used when benzodiazepines are used in conjunction with synthetic opioids, as they are synergistic in their effects on venous capacitance and systemic vascular resistance (SVR). This technique is a good choice in infants and children as postoperative

**Table 29.5** Pathophysiology characteristics of cardiomyopathies.

	<b>Dilated cardiomyopathy (ischemic and non-ischemic)</b>	<b>Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (obstructive and non-obstructive)</b>	<b>Restrictive cardiomyopathy</b>
Diastolic function and atrial transport function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Biventricular diastolic dysfunction</li> <li>• Reduced biventricular compliance</li> <li>• Bi-atrial enlargement</li> <li>• Increased atrial pressures</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• LV diastolic dysfunction</li> <li>• Reduced LV compliance</li> <li>• Left atrial enlargement</li> <li>• Increased left atrial pressure</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Severe biventricular diastolic dysfunction</li> <li>• Severely reduced biventricular compliance</li> <li>• Bi-atrial enlargement</li> <li>• Increased atrial pressures</li> </ul>
Ventricular systolic function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Decreased biventricular contractility; usually limited to LV in ischemic form</li> <li>• Exhausted preload reserve</li> <li>• Afterload mismatch</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preserved or hyperdynamic LV contractility</li> <li>• Normal RV contractility</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Preserved biventricular contractility</li> </ul>
Pulmonary vasculature	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Elevated LAP initially leads to passive elevation of PAP</li> <li>• Chronic elevation of LAP leads to reversible then irreversible elevation of PVR</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Elevated LAP initially leads to passive elevation of PAP</li> <li>• Chronic elevation of LAP leads to reversible then irreversible elevation of PVR</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Elevated LAP initially leads to passive elevation of PAP</li> <li>• Chronic elevation of LAP leads to reversible then irreversible elevation of PVR</li> </ul>
Effect of preload alterations on hemodynamics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Exhausted preload reserve; little or no ability to recruit SV with preload augmentation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Retained preload reserve but reduced LV compliance results in elevated LAP with preload augmentation</li> <li>• In obstructive form reduced LV volumes will worsen obstruction</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Baseline LV and RV EDV are low</li> <li>• Severely reduced biventricular compliance results in markedly elevated atrial pressures with minimal preload augmentation</li> </ul>
Effect of rate alterations on hemodynamics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid bradycardia; fixed SV due to exhausted preload reserve</li> <li>• Tachycardia unlikely to reduce LV filling but subendocardial perfusion may be compromised in ischemic form</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid tachycardia; with retained preload reserve, LV filling will be compromised, subendocardial perfusion may be compromised</li> <li>• Bradycardia is well tolerated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid bradycardia; fixed SV due to severely reduced LV compliance</li> <li>• Tachycardia may reduce LV filling resulting in reduced SV</li> </ul>
Effect of afterload alterations on hemodynamics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid increases in SVR; large reduction in SV will occur due to reduced contractility</li> <li>• SVR reduction is mainstay of medical management</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid decreases in SVR particularly in obstructive form; reduced LVESV will worsen obstruction</li> <li>• Increases in SVR well tolerated</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Avoid decreases in SVR; with fixed SV, hypotension will result</li> <li>• Increases in SVR well tolerated</li> </ul>



ventilation for at least 24 hours is usually necessary.

Regardless of the choice of induction and maintenance agent, episodes of hemodynamic compromise must be treated promptly. Atropine should be used cautiously. Atropine administration may initiate tachycardia, and unlike beta<sub>1</sub>-adrenergic agents, it increases the heart rate without any reduction in the duration of systole. Therefore, for equal increases in heart rate, atropine will cause a greater reduction in the duration of diastole and will compromise subendocardial perfusion to a greater degree than a beta<sub>1</sub>-adrenergic agent. Ephedrine (a direct- and indirect-acting beta- and alpha-agonist) dosed at 0.03–0.07 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> is a reliable agent to increase heart rate without compromising diastole. In addition, the augmentation in diastolic blood pressure obtained is beneficial when hypotension accompanies bradycardia.

Tachycardia is detrimental for patients with ischemic DCM and patients with HCM; it should be treated to avoid subendocardial ischemia and hemodynamic compromise. The first strategy should be to terminate noxious stimuli and then increase the depth of anesthesia as necessary. The use of a short- or long-acting beta-blocker is not recommended considering the presence of severely depressed systolic function. If hypotension due to reduced SVR occurs, small doses of phenylephrine (0.5–1.5 μg kg<sup>-1</sup>) and volume infusion (5 ml kg<sup>-1</sup>) to increase preload to preinduction levels will usually correct the problem. Phenylephrine reliably increases the SVR. Caution must be exercised when alpha-adrenergic agonists are administered to patients with severe systolic dysfunction such as those with DCM. The goal should be to normalize SVR. An overzealous use of phenylephrine will increase afterload, induce afterload mismatch, and severely reduce stroke volume (SV). If the patient fails to respond with a prompt increase in aortic blood pressure, an inotropic agent should be started to avoid a downward spiral of ventricular dilatation, increased wall

stress, reduced SV and further hypotension. Dopamine 3–5 μg kg<sup>-1</sup> min<sup>-1</sup> is a reasonable choice.

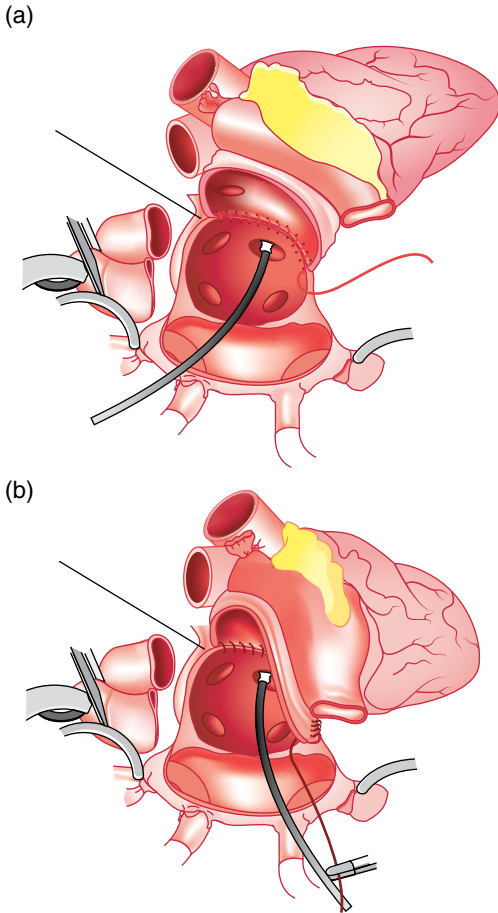
## Operative Procedure

Three surgical techniques exist for OHT: the biatrial technique; the bicaval technique; and the total technique (Figures 29.1–29.3). These procedures are performed through a median sternotomy with hypothermic CPB, bicaval cannulation, and aortic cross-clamping.

After commencement of CPB using the biatrial technique, the recipient's heart is excised to just above the atrioventricular groove, leaving a large cuff of the left atrium containing all four pulmonary veins, a large cuff of the right atrium containing the superior vena cava (SVC) and inferior vena cava (IVC), the ascending aorta just distal to the aortic valve, and the main pulmonary artery just distal to the pulmonic valve. The donor left and right atria are anastomosed to the cuffs of the recipient left and right atria, while the donor and recipient aorta and pulmonary artery are anastomosed. This technique creates large atrial cavities with abnormal geometry. This results in a less than optimal contribution of atrial systole to ventricular filling. In addition, the distorted anatomy contributes to the development of functional mitral and tricuspid regurgitation. It is also associated with the development of atrial septal aneurysms, atrial thrombus, and sinus node injury.

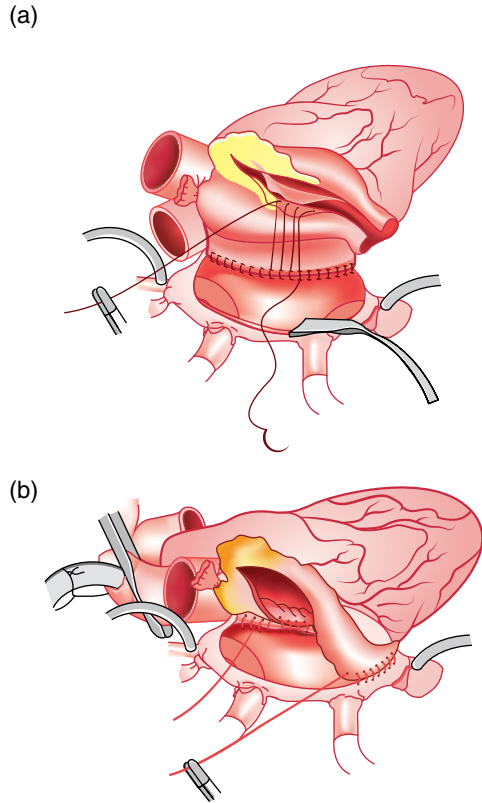
These problems have led to the application of more anatomic bicaval and total techniques. Currently, the bicaval technique is the most common technique used. These techniques result in better atrial function, a lower incidence of early and late atrial arrhythmias, and less tricuspid regurgitation. Whether they will result in long-term freedom from pacemaker implantation and better cardiac function remains to be determined.

In the bicaval technique, the recipient's atria are completely excised, leaving the SVC, the IVC, and a small cuff of left atrium



**Figure 29.1** Operative technique for biatrial orthotopic heart transplantation. (a) The recipient heart has been excised leaving a cuff of right atrium containing the superior vena cava (SVC) and inferior vena cava (IVC), and a cuff of left atrium containing all four pulmonary veins. The beginning of the left atrial anastomosis is depicted. The sinoatrial (SA) node of the donor heart is depicted by the dashed oval in the right atrium. The donor SVC is ligated. (b) Details of the anastomosis between the recipient and donor left atria. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

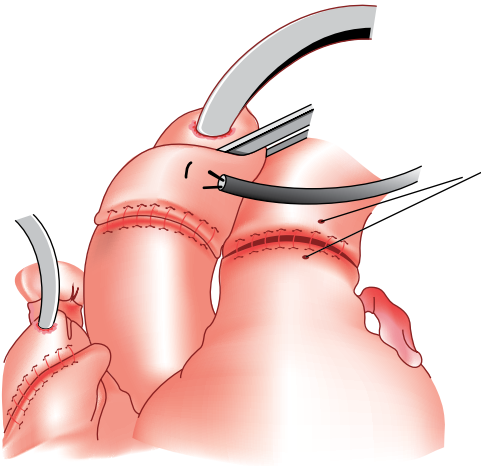
containing all four pulmonary veins. In the total technique, the recipient's atria are completely excised, leaving the SVC, the IVC, and two small cuffs of the left atrium; one containing the two right pulmonary veins and the other the two left pulmonary veins. In the bicaval technique, there are five anastomoses: the donor SVC, IVC, and posterior



**Figure 29.2** (a) The left atrial anastomosis is complete and the new intra-atrial septum is being completed. (b) The right atrial anastomosis is being completed using a portion of the donor IVC. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

left atrium are anastomosed to the recipient SVC, IVC, and one pulmonary vein cuff, while the donor and recipient aorta and pulmonary artery are anastomosed. In the total technique there are six anastomoses: the donor SVC, IVC, and posterior left atrium are anastomosed to the recipient SVC, IVC, and two pulmonary vein cuffs, while the donor and recipient aorta and pulmonary artery are anastomosed.

For children with congenital heart lesions, the technical aspects of the surgical procedure are more challenging. These patients may require extensive aortic, pulmonary artery, and caval reconstructions to create anatomically unobstructed connections to the donor heart.



**Figure 29.3** Details of the completed aortic and pulmonary artery anastomoses. The aortic cannula and cross-clamp are depicted. In an effort to reduce the ischemic interval the surgeon may release the aortic cross-clamp after completion of the atrial and aortic suture lines and complete the pulmonary artery anastomosis while the heart is being re-perfused. Reproduced from DiNardo, J.A., Zvara, D.A. (2008) *Anesthesia for Cardiac Surgery*, 3rd edition. Blackwell, Massachusetts.

## Post-CPB Management

### Goals

- Maintain sinus rhythm at 100–120 bpm in older children and at 130–150 bpm in neonates and infants. Atrial or atrioventricular sequential pacing may be required.
- Avoid pulmonary artery hypertension by treating hypercarbia, hypoxemia, and acidosis.
- Aggressively treat pulmonary artery hypertension with vasodilator therapy to avoid right ventricular failure. If right ventricular failure does occur, inotropic support of the right ventricle and pulmonary vasodilation may be necessary.
- Maintain right and left atrial pressures to optimize SV in the setting of increased ventricular stiffness.
- Inotropic support of the left ventricle may be necessary if the ischemic interval is long.

### Preparation for Termination of CPB

The following issues need to be considered when formulating a plan for the termination of CPB in a patient with a newly transplanted heart.

#### Impaired Systolic Function

Systolic dysfunction in the donor heart may occur for a variety of reasons:

- Ischemia–reperfusion injury. This is the most common cause of allograft systolic dysfunction post-CPB. Preservation of the donor heart involves application of the aortic cross-clamp and delivery of cold cardioplegia to induce arrest in diastole, followed by cold storage at 4°C. The ischemic interval – the time from when the aortic cross-clamp is applied in the donor until the aortic cross-clamp is removed after implantation of the heart in the recipient – is extremely important. The longer this ischemic interval, the more likely there is to be biventricular systolic dysfunction secondary to myocardial fibrosis. Because there is an incremental increase in mortality with ischemic times more than 3.5 hours, it is desirable to keep the interval to less than 4 hours. In an effort to reduce the ischemic interval, the surgeon may release the aortic cross-clamp after completion of the atrial and aortic suture lines and complete the pulmonary artery anastomosis while the heart is being re-perfused. Prolonged and excessive inotropic support of the donor heart before cross-clamping also is undesirable because it contributes to post-transplant ischemic dysfunction.
- Brain death. Abrupt increases in intracranial pressure as the source of brain death result in a greater degree of myocardial ischemia and necrosis (particularly of the right ventricle) than gradual increases in intracranial pressure. There is evidence that early survival following heart transplantation is reduced in patients receiving hearts from donors dying of gunshot wounds to the head and from donors dying

from spontaneous intracranial hemorrhage. Donors who experience brain death as the result of a sudden rise in intracranial pressure exhibit a hyperdynamic cardiovascular response, massive increases in plasma epinephrine, and histological evidence of severe myocardial ischemia and necrosis.

- Hyperacute rejection. This rare event is caused by ABO blood group incompatibility or cytotoxic recipient antibodies directed against donor lymphocytes. It presents as cyanosis and mottling of the allograft, in conjunction with profoundly impaired systolic function. It is impossible to separate these patients from CPB for any extended period of time. The only therapy available is excision of the allograft with placement of a total artificial heart. This type of rejection is preventable by careful donor and recipient ABO typing and PRA screening.
- Myocardial contusion. Patients with severe myocardial contusions are excluded as donors. Patients with lesser degrees of dysfunction from blunt trauma may exhibit impaired systolic function in the post-CPB period.

#### **Right Ventricular Afterload Mismatch**

Impaired right ventricular performance is a particular risk in the presence of recipient pulmonary hypertension. Right ventricular afterload mismatch may occur as the result of severely depressed right ventricular systolic function and normal pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) and pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) or, more commonly, as the result of less severely depressed right ventricular systolic function and elevated PAP and PVR. This may result in acute allograft right ventricular dysfunction severe enough to prevent the termination of CPB. Therapy in this setting will need to be directed towards inotropic support of the right ventricle and selective reduction of PVR. Fontan patients receiving OHT are at particular risk of right ventricular afterload mismatch because chronic pulsatile flow deprivation in the

pulmonary bed leads to impaired endothelial function and NO release, reduced vascular recruitment, and impaired lung growth; all of which serve to elevate PVR. Patients late after the Fontan procedure have elevated basal PVR and exhibit a decrease in PVR with exogenous inhaled NO.

#### **Sinus and Atrioventricular Node Dysfunction**

Ischemic injury to the sinus node and atrioventricular node may produce bradycardia, nodal rhythm, or heart block. Sinoatrial node dysfunction is much more common, and approximately 10–20% of patients need permanent atrial pacing. In some instances, an appropriate sinus rate can be obtained with isoproterenol. In other instances, atrial or atrioventricular sequential pacing is necessary.

#### **Impaired Diastolic Function**

The post ischemic state of the transplanted heart is characterized by increased ventricular stiffness and limited preload reserve, resulting in a fixed stroke volume. Increases in heart rate obtained with pacing will reduce diastolic filling time. This, in turn, will produce reductions in end-diastolic volume (EDV) and SV for a given end-systolic volume (ESV). The net result will be little or no change in cardiac output. Atrial or atrioventricular sequential pacing is likely to be superior to ventricular pacing due to the presence of an appropriately timed atrial systole. For a given right or left atrial pressure, atrial pacing or atrioventricular sequential pacing will provide a higher ventricular EDV than ventricular pacing.

Inotropic support is useful for patients with limited preload reserve in both sinus and paced rhythms because the SV can be augmented at a given afterload by reducing ESV. Inotropic agents allow SV to be maintained as the heart rate increases, thereby producing increases in cardiac output. This occurs because the reductions in EDV produced by reduced diastolic filling time are offset by the reductions in ESV produced by

enhanced contractility. The optimal heart rate is 100–110bpm for older children, whereas 130–150bpm is optimal for neonates and infants. Higher heart rates result in progressive reductions in SV such that cardiac output remains constant, or falls.

### Termination of CPB

Particular attention must be paid to de-airing the heart. Severe ventricular dysfunction may follow the ejection of air down the coronary arteries. The right ventricle is particularly at risk because of the anterior location of the right coronary ostia. TEE is valuable in guiding the de-airing process.

A dose of methylprednisolone (usually  $10\text{mgkg}^{-1}$ ) will be given after aortic cross-clamp removal. In some institutions, the dose will be given after termination of CPB.

The need for additional inotropic support can be determined with either TEE or a PAC. TEE will reveal ventricular dilatation and global hypokinesis. The advantage of the PAC is that it allows the measurement of PAP and calculation of PVR and SVR. PAP can be estimated with TEE using a tricuspid regurgitation jet and the central venous pressure (CVP) measurement.

Epinephrine  $0.05\text{--}0.3\mu\text{gkg}^{-1}\text{min}^{-1}$  (children) or dopamine  $5\text{--}10\mu\text{gkg}^{-1}\text{min}^{-1}$  are used as inotropic support if needed.

When right ventricular afterload mismatch exists with preserved left ventricular systolic function, there will be a low cardiac output, low systemic blood pressure, elevated CVP, elevated PAP, and low pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP). TEE will reveal a dilated right atrium and ventricle with an underfilled, hyperkinetic left ventricle. Tricuspid regurgitation will be likely.

Therapy for right ventricular failure involves inotropic support and pulmonary vasodilatation. Pulmonary vasodilatation with intravenous agents is problematic because a simultaneous reduction of SVR occurs. The use of the inhaled selective pulmonary vasodilator nitric oxide (NO) has revolutionized treatment of pulmonary

hypertension and associated right ventricular afterload mismatch. Aerosolized, inhaled  $\text{PGI}_2$  has a similar profile to that of inhaled NO. These agents are selective for the pulmonary circulation as no substantial concentrations are delivered to the systemic circulation following inhalation. NO delivered at 20ppm selectively reduces PVR in all heart transplant recipients. Evidence suggests that the peak effect in reducing PVR with NO occurs at 20–40ppm. Continuous aerosolized  $\text{PGI}_2$  is delivered at  $5\text{ to }50\text{ngkg}^{-1}\text{min}^{-1}$ .

In addition to pharmacologic methods, efforts to reduce PVR with ventilatory interventions are essential. A combination of a high inspired  $\text{FiO}_2$ , an arterial  $\text{PaO}_2 > 60\text{mmHg}$ , an arterial  $\text{PaCO}_2$  of 30–35mmHg, a pH of 7.50–7.60, and low inspiratory pressures without high levels of positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), will produce reliable reductions in PVR.

Finally, it is important to rule out two mechanical causes of increased impedance to right ventricular ejection:

- When right ventricular dysfunction exists in the presence of low pulmonary artery pressures, mechanical obstruction of the pulmonary artery anastomosis due to kinking must be ruled out. Kinking may be observed directly by the surgeon. Alternatively, it may be detected using TEE. It also is diagnosed readily by the direct measurement of a pressure gradient between the right ventricle and pulmonary artery.
- Mechanical obstruction of one or more of the pulmonary vein anastomoses can produce pulmonary hypertension which will be unresponsive to pulmonary vasodilator therapy. Echocardiography – either transesophageal or epicardial – is the best modality to rule out this possibility.

When univentricular or biventricular failure is severe and refractory to inotropic and vasodilator agents, a ventricular assist or circulatory assist device may be necessary to support circulation until the ventricles can recover.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery in the Post-Cardiac Transplant Patient

The success of heart transplantation makes it likely that anesthesiologists will encounter patients with transplanted hearts for a variety of non-cardiac surgical procedures.

### Physiology of the Transplanted Heart

#### Autonomic Nervous System

Regardless of the surgical technique used, the orthotopically transplanted heart is devoid of sympathetic and parasympathetic innervation. The most important consequence of this is an altered baroreceptor response.

In the transplanted heart, no direct sympathetic stimulation of the heart is possible. Response to activation of baroreceptors in the patient with a transplanted heart is dependent on the generation of circulating catecholamines for inotropic and chronotropic response. It normally takes several minutes to generate appropriate levels of circulating catecholamines. Although systemic catecholamine generation in response to arterial hypotension is enhanced, reflex systemic catecholamine release in response to reduced atrial and ventricular volumes is impaired due to atrial and ventricular vagal de-afferentation. As a result, abrupt decreases in blood pressure will not be compensated for quickly.

The response of baroreceptors to endogenous and exogenous vasopressors in heart transplant patients is normal, but feedback to the donor heart is absent. Therefore, increases in blood pressure will be accompanied by a reflex decrease in recipient atrial rate, but not in donor atrial rate. As a result, there will be no reflex decrease in the transplanted heart rate in response to phenylephrine or norepinephrine-induced hypertension. Likewise, Valsalva or other vagal maneuvers will not elicit a heart rate response.

Early in exercise, increases in cardiac output are acquired by increases in SV, with EDV

increasing and ESV unchanged. As exercise progresses, cardiac output increases as the result of systemic catecholamine-induced increases in heart rate with maintenance of SV. Cardiac denervation produces pre-synaptic super-sensitivity due to denervation-associated loss of neuronal catecholamine uptake. As a result, there is an increased sensitivity to catecholamines that are taken up by adrenergic nerve terminals (epinephrine, norepinephrine) with no increase in sensitivity to catecholamines that are not taken up (isoproterenol).

Some degree of re-innervation of the left ventricle with efferent sympathetic fibers is present in 80% of transplant patients three years after transplantation. Re-innervation seems to be progressive but is likely not complete until 15 years after transplantation. Patients with re-innervation have improved heart rate and contractile response to exercise, and better exercise tolerance than patients without re-innervation. The ability of some transplant patients to experience angina is consistent with re-innervation with sympathetic afferents. Re-innervation of cardiac vagal afferents is unlikely, however. There is some evidence that over time the recipient (old) atrioventricular node may affect the donor (new) atrioventricular node via conduction over the suture line. In summary, sympathetic efferent and afferent re-innervation may occur in some patients during the years after cardiac transplantation. When re-innervation occurs, it has physiologic importance.

#### Heart Rate

The resting atrial rate of the transplanted human heart is approximately 90–110 bpm. This is significantly greater than the resting atrial rate of the innervated human heart, and demonstrates that the predominant effect on sinus rate in humans is a slowing effect of the parasympathetic system. The heart rate increase with exercise in heart-transplant patients is achieved through the stimulation of cardiac beta<sub>2</sub>-receptors by circulating catecholamines. The increase in

heart rate does not occur until after several minutes of exercise, and it parallels the increase in serum catecholamines. Despite this, the heart-rate response with exercise in transplanted hearts is attenuated relative to that seen in normal hearts due to the lack of efferent innervation of the sinoatrial node.

#### **Left Ventricular Systolic Function**

The left ventricle of the transplanted heart exhibits normal contractile function. The left ventricular EDV (LVEDV) and left ventricular ESV (LVESV) are reduced, whereas the SV and ejection fraction remain normal or low normal due to the parallel reductions in EDV and ESV. The left ventricular mass is increased due to concentric hypertrophy as the result of the arterial hypertension, which can accompany calcineurin inhibitor immunosuppression.

#### **Right Ventricular Systolic Function**

The right ventricle exhibits normal systolic function. The right ventricular EDV (RVEDV) and right ventricular ESV (RVESV) are larger than normal, and right ventricular wall thickness is increased. This will be exacerbated in the presence of persistent tricuspid regurgitation. In patients with preoperative pulmonary hypertension, the persistence of right ventricular dilatation and tricuspid regurgitation is the result of remodeling of the donor right ventricle in response to recipient pulmonary circulation. The dilation and tricuspid regurgitation may persist despite the resolution of pulmonary hypertension.

#### **Atrial Function**

Following the biatrial technique, both right and left atrial areas are larger than normal. These patients have reduced right and left atrial emptying compared with normal subjects; the portion of total atrial emptying contributed by the recipient atrium is much less than that contributed by the donor atrium. In addition, the asynchronous contraction of donor and recipient atria results in wide variations in diastolic flow. Following the bicaval technique, patients have right

atrial emptying comparable to that of normal subjects. Left atrial emptying, although reduced compared with normal subjects, is superior to that seen in biatrial technique patients. In addition, the left and right dimensions are smaller in patients with the bicaval or total technique as compared with the biatrial technique.

#### **Diastolic Function**

Left ventricular diastolic dysfunction occurs immediately after orthotopic cardiac replacement, and is related to the post-ischemic state. This dysfunction is characterized by a restrictive ventricular filling pattern that improves during the first several months after transplantation. This restrictive pattern may manifest clinically as a reduced preload reserve in response to exercise and afterload increases. The etiology of this continued dysfunction is unclear. It may be inherent to the small allograft LVEDV. Whether patients who receive hearts from donors smaller than themselves may be at particular risk for reduced preload reserve is debatable. Rejection episodes are known to impair diastolic function, but it is unclear whether recurring rejection episodes produce progressive left ventricular and right ventricular diastolic dysfunction in the form of a restrictive/constrictive pattern.

There also is a deficient acceleration of left ventricular relaxation during exercise which, along with restrictive inflow, contributes to the elevations in LVEDP and left atrial pressure seen during exercise. This impairment of relaxation may be caused by a loss of adrenergic tone due to denervation, ischemic injury at the time of harvest, or immunosuppression-induced arterial hypertension.

#### **Issues Unique to Heart Transplant Patients**

Cardiac transplant patients have a unique set of management issues, in addition to those associated with the denervated heart. These are outlined as follows.

### **Cardiac Allograft Vasculopathy (CAV)**

This is currently the late survival-limiting factor after heart transplantation. In children, it accounts for 40% of the deaths between three and five years after transplantation. The incidence of CAV in pediatric cardiac transplant patients is approximately 10% per year post transplant, with an incidence of approximately 50% at five years.

The pathogenesis of cardiac allograft vasculopathy is complex, multifactorial, and incompletely understood. It is believed that immunologic mechanisms (number of HLA mismatches and the number and duration of rejection episodes), in conjunction with non-immunologic risk factors [cytomegalovirus (CMV) seropositivity, hyperlipidemia, hypertension, older age at transplantation, diabetes) produce endothelial injury with subsequent myointimal hyperplasia. Unlike atherosclerotic coronary artery disease (CAD), CAV is associated with concentric, diffuse lesions that do not disrupt the elastic lamina and that progress rapidly. Focal, traditional atherosclerotic plaques also are seen in cardiac allografts.

Surveillance for CAV is difficult. Patients with heart transplants may not experience angina or typical ECG changes with myocardial ischemia and infarction due to afferent sympathetic denervation. Non-invasive testing has poor sensitivity and specificity. Intravascular ultrasound (IVUS) is the 'gold standard' for the detection of CAV, but it is technically demanding, expensive and limited by the size of the catheter to investigation of vessels of 1 mm in diameter or more. Considering these limitations, transplant centers currently use yearly coronary angiography as a screen for CAV. More frequent angiograms may be indicated to monitor progression in individual patients.

Therapeutic options are limited. More invasive approaches involve angioplasty and coronary stent placement. With this approach, short-term morbidity and success is similar to that seen in atherosclerotic disease, but the restenosis rate is high and long-term prognosis remains poor. Drug-eluting stents may

prove to be more effective in the long term. Finally, in the most severe cases, coronary artery bypass surgery and re-transplantation have been used. The diffuse nature of the coronary lesions makes bypass surgery an option only in selected cases. The survival rates for re-transplantation are significantly less than for initial transplantation, and the incidence of malignancy is twice that of first transplants.

### **Hypertension**

Arterial hypertension is present in 75% of transplant patients at long-term follow-up. This is not related to the conventional risk factors associated with hypertension, but rather to immunosuppression-mediated increases in SVR and the denervation of cardiac volume receptors. Immunosuppression with calcineurin inhibitors (particularly cyclosporine versus tacrolimus), and corticosteroids are implicated. Therapy is necessary to prevent severe left ventricular hypertrophy and impaired ventricular function. This usually requires treatment with multiple classes of antihypertensive agents. Calcium entry blockers and angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors often are used as first-line therapeutic agents.

### **Atrial and Ventricular Arrhythmias**

The incidence of atrial and ventricular arrhythmias during initial hospitalization after transplantation is 55% and 79%, respectively. At late follow-up, the incidence of atrial and ventricular arrhythmias is 40%. In general, atrial arrhythmias during the initial hospitalization are benign, except for atrial fibrillation. The development of atrial fibrillation is associated with a threefold increase in the risk of death. The risk of death is particularly high in patients who develop atrial fibrillation more than two weeks after transplantation.

Permanent atrial pacing is required in approximately 10–20% of pediatric recipients with both symptomatic and asymptomatic bradycardia. The development of bradycardia seems to be related to a longer ischemic interval for the donor heart.



### Subacute Bacterial Endocarditis (SBE)

#### Prophylaxis

Bacterial endocarditis is a rare complication in heart transplant patients. Nonetheless, because of the extent of the suture lines and the immunosuppressed status of the patient, SBE prophylaxis is recommended the American Heart Association (AHA).

#### Rejection

Most patients have at least one acute rejection episode, despite adequate immunosuppression. These episodes usually occur within the first three months after transplantation, with decreasing incidence thereafter. Surveillance during the first year is accomplished with endomyocardial biopsies of the right ventricle via the right internal jugular vein every week for the first four to eight weeks. Some centers do not perform biopsies in children aged less than 6 months or less than 5 kg in weight, unless it is to confirm suspected rejection. Biopsies are graded from 0 to 4 based on histologic criteria. No rejection is 0 R, mild rejection is 1 R, moderate rejection is 2 R, severe rejection is 3 R, and very severe rejection is 4 R. After the first year, an annual biopsy is performed in most institutions in conjunction with coronary angiography to evaluate CAV. If clinical evidence of rejection exists, more frequent biopsies may be indicated to document rejection and to assess regression of histologic changes with treatment.

Mild rejection frequently resolves spontaneously and is not treated. Mild rejection by biopsy usually is not associated with clinical evidence of allograft dysfunction such as hypotension, elevated jugular venous pressure, rales, sinus rate >110, atrial fibrillation, bradycardia, or systolic dysfunction by echocardiography. Moderate or more severe rejection is accompanied by evidence of allograft dysfunction, and is treated. Although normal allografts have maintained a coronary vasodilator reserve, moderate allograft rejection is associated with an impaired reserve. Normal reserve returns after treatment of rejection. Rejection also is

**Table 29.6** Complications of immunosuppression that may require operative intervention.

- 
- Gingival hyperplasia – cyclosporine.
  - Pancreatitis- azathioprine, corticosteroids.
  - Cholelithiasis and cholecystitis – cyclosporine.
  - Malignancies.
  - Complications of corticosteroid use: cataracts, retinal detachment, aseptic bone necrosis, perforated viscus, and gastrointestinal hemorrhage.
  - Complications of infection.
- 

accompanied by an attenuated coronary vasodilatory response to nitroglycerin.

First-line therapy for moderate rejection is oral or intravenous pulsed steroids. In the approximately 10% of cases in which mild rejection by biopsy is associated with allograft dysfunction, pulsed steroid therapy is necessary. Severe rejection is usually treated with steroids and a lympholytic agent such as polyclonal antithymocyte globulin (ATG) or murine monoclonal antibody (OKT3). Immunosuppressive agents are listed in Table 29.7; and their complications that may require operative intervention are listed in Table 29.6.

#### Response to Drugs

The response to various drugs is altered in heart transplant patients secondary to the denervated state of the allograft:

- Digoxin. Digoxin prolongs AV node conduction in a biphasic manner. The initial effect is mediated vagally and is absent in the transplanted heart. The chronic effect is mediated directly and is present in the transplanted heart. The inotropic properties also are directly mediated and present.
- Muscarinic antagonists. Atropine, glycopyrrolate, and scopolamine produce competitive inhibition of acetylcholine at the muscarinic receptors of postganglionic cholinergic nerves such as the vagus. As a result, these drugs will not increase heart rate in the denervated transplanted heart. The effects of these drugs on other organs

**Table 29.7** Immunosuppressive agents.

Agent	Classification	Mechanism of action	Clinical use
Prednisone Methylprednisolone	Corticosteroid	Non-specific blockade of T-cell cytokine and cytokine receptor production	Maintenance therapy Treatment of rejection
Cyclosporine	Calcineurin inhibitor	NFAT (nuclear factor) - mediated inhibition of IL-2 promoter gene	Maintenance therapy
Tacrolimus (FK506)	Calcineurin inhibitor	NFAT (nuclear factor) - mediated inhibition of IL-2 promoter gene	Maintenance therapy
Azathioprine	Antimetabolite, 6-mercaptopurine derivative	Inhibitor of T-cell proliferation	Adjuvant therapy
Mycophenolate mofetil (MMF)	Inhibitor of de novo purine synthesis	Inhibitor of T-cell proliferation	Adjuvant therapy in lieu of azathioprine
Sirolimus	Anti-proliferative agent (rapamycin inhibitor)	Blocks G1 to S phase of the cell cycle; inhibitor of T-cell proliferation	Adjuvant therapy in lieu of azathioprine or MMF
Everolimus	Anti-proliferative agent (rapamycin inhibitor)	Blocks G1 to S phase of the cell cycle; inhibitor of T-cell proliferation	Adjuvant therapy in lieu of azathioprine or MMF
OKT3	Monoclonal antibody	Antibody to T-cell receptor complex (native and activated T cells)	Induction therapy
Basiliximab	Monoclonal antibody	Antibody to IL-2 receptor (activated T cells)	Induction therapy
Daclizumab	Monoclonal antibody	Antibody to IL-2 receptor (activated T cells)	Induction therapy
Rabbit antithymocyte $\gamma$ -globulin (RATG)	Polyclonal antibody	Antibody to T cells (native and activated T cells)	Induction therapy

with muscarinic cholinergic innervation will remain.

- Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors. The contention that agents such as neostigmine and edrophonium have no cardiac effects while they continue to have systemic muscarinic effects has been challenged recently. Bradycardia after administration of neostigmine, which is reversed with atropine, has been demonstrated in heart-transplant patients. In addition, sinus arrest after the administration of neostigmine and glycopyrrolate for reversal of neuromuscular blockade reversal has been reported in heart-transplant patients. Neostigmine produces direct stimulation of cholinergic receptors on

cardiac ganglion cells with subsequent release of acetylcholine. In addition, there is allograft denervation hypersensitivity of both the postganglionic neurons and the muscarinic myocardial receptors. Parasympathetic re-innervation of the donor heart may also play a role. These factors, combined with intrinsic allograft sinoatrial (SA) node dysfunction, may produce severe SA node dysfunction or sinus arrest after acetylcholinesterase inhibitor administration in heart-transplant patients.

- Beta-adrenergic agonists. There is increased sensitivity to catecholamines that are taken up by adrenergic nerve terminals (epinephrine, norepinephrine) with

no increase in sensitivity to catecholamines that are not taken up (isoproterenol). Improvements in systolic function with beta-adrenergic agents are obtainable during acute rejection episodes.

- Beta-adrenergic antagonists. These agents retain their usual activity. The sinus rate of both the donor and recipient slow equally, demonstrating that the predominant effect is caused by the blockade of circulating catecholamines. There also will be a normal increase in the refractoriness of the AV node.
- Calcium-entry blockers. These agents directly suppress the sinus and AV nodes and, thus, should have normal activity. Nonetheless, the negative chronotropic and dromotropic effects of verapamil have been demonstrated to be more pronounced in the transplanted heart. There will be no reflex tachycardia from agents with strong vasodilator properties such as nifedipine.
- Vagolytic and vagotonic agents. Drugs with vagolytic activity (pancuronium, demerol) will not increase heart rate, whereas drugs with vagotonic activity (fentanyl, sufentanil) will not decrease heart rate.
- Adenosine. The magnitude and duration of adenosine's negative chronotropic and dromotropic effects is three- to fivefold greater in the transplanted heart.
- Ephedrine. Cardiac drugs that are both direct- and indirect-acting will have a diminished effect because only the direct effect will be present.

### Anesthetic Considerations for Non-Cardiac Surgery in Patients Post Heart Transplantation

A variety of regional and general anesthetic techniques have been used safely and successfully in the anesthetic management of

patients with heart transplants. In patients without evidence of allograft dysfunction, the following principles are useful:

- 1) Aseptic technique is essential.
- 2) Appreciate that compensation for acute alterations in preload, afterload, and contractility are incomplete and delayed; postural effects are magnified.
- 3) Heart rate and blood pressure increases due to inadequate anesthesia will be delayed until circulating catecholamine levels increase.
- 4) Bradycardia will compromise cardiac output. Baseline stroke volume is reduced and any reflex increase in stroke volume in response to bradycardia is delayed. Atropine will not increase heart rate. Isoproterenol and ephedrine will increase heart rate.
- 5) Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors (neostigmine, edrophonium) for reversal of neuromuscular blockade may have cardiac effects. Anticholinergic agents (atropine, glycopyrrolate) must be given to block the peripheral muscarinic effects.
- 6) Central venous pressure monitoring, when indicated, may have to be obtained via a route other than the right internal jugular vein to preserve this location for performance of subsequent endomyocardial biopsies.
- 7) Reflex bradycardia will not accompany administration of vasopressor agents (phenylephrine), nor will directly induced bradycardia accompany administration of agents with vagotonic activity.
- 8) Reflex tachycardia will not accompany administration of vasodilator agents (sodium nitroprusside, nifedipine, hydralazine), nor will directly induced tachycardia accompany administration of agents with vagolytic activity.
- 9) Stress-dose steroid coverage should be considered for patients receiving steroids as part of their immunosuppression.

## 30

# Heart–Lung and Lung Transplantation

## Introduction

Heart–lung transplantation (HLT) can be considered for patients with end-stage cardiopulmonary disease that is unresponsive to maximal medical therapy and for which no surgical options exist except combined heart–lung replacement. Increasingly, in an effort to make maximum use of donated organs, double-lung transplantation (DLT) and single-lung transplantation (SLT) are being used for patients with pulmonary disease without secondary severe cardiac dysfunction. According to the Registry of International Heart and Lung Society data, the number of pediatric heart–lung transplants peaked in 1989 (at approximately 60) and has continued to decline (seven in 2010) as the result of the increased use of DLT and SLT.

The numbers of pediatric lung transplants reported to the Registry of the International Heart and Lung Transplant Society have gradually increased during the past decade, from 73 in 2000 to 93 in 2012. The majority (77%) of lung transplants are performed in older children aged 11–17 years. The indications for lung transplantation are age-dependent. In children and adolescents aged 11–17 years, about 70% receive transplants for cystic fibrosis (CF), whereas in children aged 6–10 years CF is the indication in 53% of patients. In the age group of 1–5 years, idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension is the leading diagnosis, accounting for 22% of transplants (Table 30.1). In infants, surfactant B deficiency, congenital heart disease,

and idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension (IPAH) remain the three most frequent indications.

Contraindications for heart-lung transplant are listed in Chapter 29.

## Single-Lung Transplantation

Single-lung transplantation (SLT) can be considered for patients with end-stage lung disease without significant cardiac dysfunction. Generally, patients with a left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF) >35% and a right ventricular ejection fraction (RVEF) >25% are considered candidates. SLT is used much less frequently in children than in adults, and is used for patients with Eisenmenger's syndrome in conjunction with the repair of intracardiac lesions.

## Double-Lung Transplantation

Double-lung transplantation (DLT) is also considered for patients with end-stage pulmonary disease without significant cardiac dysfunction. Two approaches to DLT exist, namely bilateral sequential single-lung transplantation (BSSLT) and en-bloc DLT. Patients with LVEF >35% and RVEF >25% are suitable candidates. The trend has been to reserve DLT for patients in whom SLT is not an option.

**Table 30.1** Indications for lung transplant by age group (January 1990–June 2012).

Variable	Diagnosis age group			
	<1 year No. (%)	1–5 years No. (%)	6–10 years No. (%)	11–17 years No. (%)
Cystic fibrosis	1 (1.0)	6 (4.8)	140 (53.0)	916 (70.6)
Idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension	12 (12.5)	28 (22.4)	23 (8.7)	101 (7.8)
Re-transplant				
Obliterative bronchiolitis	–	7 (5.6)	9 (3.4)	39 (3.0)
Not obliterative bronchiolitis	3 (3.1)	4 (3.2)	8 (3.0)	30 (2.3)
Congenital heart disease	16 (16.7)	10 (8.0)	4 (1.5)	11 (0.8)
Idiopathic pulmonary fibrosis	10 (10.4)	21 (16.8)	15 (5.7)	43 (3.3)
Obliterative bronchiolitis (not re-transplant)	–	10 (8.0)	18 (6.8)	55 (4.2)
Interstitial pneumonitis	1 (1.0)	2 (1.6)	2 (0.8)	1 (0.1)
Pulmonary vascular disease	8 (8.3)	7 (5.6)	4 (1.5)	1 (0.1)
Eisenmenger’s syndrome	1 (1.0)	5 (4.0)	3 (1.1)	9 (0.7)
Pulmonary fibrosis, other	7 (7.3)	11 (8.8)	14 (5.3)	29 (2.2)
Surfactant protein B deficiency	16 (16.7)	3 (2.4)	...	...
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease/emphysema	4 (4.2)	2 (1.6)	2 (0.8)	10 (0.8)
Bronchopulmonary dysplasia	3 (3.1)	3 (2.4)	6 (2.3)	3 (0.2)
Bronchiectasis	1 (1.0)	...	3 (1.1)	17 (1.3)
Other	13 (13.5)	6 (4.8)	13 (4.9)	32 (2.5)

Reproduced from Benden, C., Edwards, L.B., Kucheryavaya, A.Y., *et al.* for the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation (2013) The Registry of the International Society for Heart and Lung Transplantation: Sixteenth Official Pediatric Lung and Heart-Lung Transplantation Report – 2013; Focus Theme: Age. *J Heart Lung Transplant.*, 32 (10), 989–997.

## Living Donor Lobar Lung Transplant (LDLLT)

In the subset of patients deemed too ill to survive long enough to receive a cadaveric SLT or BSSLT, this somewhat controversial procedure can be considered. It requires two donors: one donor provides the right lower lobe the other donor the left lower lobe. The recipient’s native lungs are excised. The majority of these transplants (85%) are in patients with CF. In these patients their small stature allows two lobes from ordinary-size donors to provide adequate lung tissue.

Absolute contraindications to lung transplant include: severe scoliosis or thoracic

cage deformity; irreversible, significant respiratory muscle dysfunction; numerous transpleural systemic to pulmonary artery collateral vessels; severe tracheomegaly or tracheomalacia; and *Burkholderia cepacia* genovar-3 lower-respiratory tract infection in CF patients.

## The Donor

Only 5% to 20% of all solid organ donors are suitable lung donors. Potential lungs are rejected because of blunt thoracic trauma, the potential of aspiration during resuscitation, overaggressive fluid resuscitation, and neurogenic pulmonary edema. The guidelines used

to select donors for lung transplantation are summarized below:

- 1) Age younger than 65 years.
- 2) Adequate gas exchange. The donor should have a  $\text{PaO}_2 > 250$  mmHg on  $\text{FiO}_2 = 1.0$  and  $\text{PEEP} = 5$  cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , or  $\text{PaO}_2 > 100$  mmHg on  $\text{FiO}_2 = 0.4$  and  $\text{PEEP} = 5$  cm  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . Pulmonary compliance should be normal, with static pressure  $< 20$  mmHg and peak pressure  $< 30$  mmHg at a tidal volume of  $15 \text{ ml kg}^{-1}$ .
- 3) Normal bronchoscopic examination.
- 4) Normal serial chest radiographs.
- 5) No history of pulmonary disease. A smoking history is acceptable at some centers.
- 6) Donor recipient size match. Some programs compare donor and recipient lung size using chest radiography measurements. A growing practice is to compare the donor and recipient total lung capacity from nomograms based on age, height, and sex. In patients with obstructive lung disease, an allograft with a 15–20% greater volume than that predicted for the recipient can be used, as these patients have huge pleural cavities.
- 7) No active severe infection or malignancy with the possibility of metastases.
- 8) Negative serologies for human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) or hepatitis B or C.
- 9) ABO compatibility and human lymphocyte antigen (HLA) screen.

The guidelines used to select donors for HLT are a combination of those for heart transplantation and those for lung transplantation.

Harvest of the lungs usually is accomplished in conjunction with harvest of the heart. The vena cavae are transected, an incision is made in the left atrial appendage, and the aorta is cross-clamped and cold cardioplegia is given. At this point, the pulmonary artery is injected directly with  $500 \mu\text{g}$  of PGE1 followed by infusion of 3–4 liters of iced preservative solution which is vented out through an incision in the left atrial appendage. The lungs are partially inflated (60%) with  $\text{FiO}_2$  of 0.4, and the trachea or

bronchi is stapled and divided. The heart–lung block is then removed. When the heart and lungs are to be used for separate recipients, adequate portions of pulmonary artery and left atrial–pulmonary vein cuff must be allocated to each recipient. The lungs are immersed in a cold crystalloid solution at  $4^\circ\text{C}$  and transported. Although the maximum ischemic time is 6–8 h, the optimal ischemic time should not exceed 5–6 h because short- and intermediate-term patient survival may be affected.

## Operative Procedure and Patient Positioning

HLT is performed through a median sternotomy with hypothermic cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), bicaval cannulation, and aortic cross-clamping. The recipient undergoes resection of the heart–lung block, leaving only a right atrial cuff in continuity with the inferior vena cava (IVC) and superior vena cava (SVC), the cut end of the distal trachea, and the cut end of the proximal ascending aorta. The donor heart–lung block is implanted with anastomoses of the right atrium, distal trachea, and ascending aorta.

SLT is performed through a standard thoracotomy with the patient in the lateral thoracotomy position. The donor lung block contains a cuff of left atrium with two pulmonary veins, the bronchus, and the branch pulmonary artery. The other donor lung and the donor heart can be used for two other recipients. One-lung ventilation (OLV) is established and a pneumonectomy is performed, followed by implantation of the donor lung with anastomoses at the left atrium, bronchus, and branch pulmonary artery. This procedure often can be performed without CPB.

Two very different surgical procedures are used for DLT. The en-bloc procedure is performed on CPB with hypothermia, bicaval cannulation, aortic cross-clamping, and cardioplegic arrest of the recipient heart. A median sternotomy is used. The

donor double-lung block consists of the two lungs, the distal trachea, the main pulmonary artery, and a large left atrial cuff with all four pulmonary veins. The donor heart can be used for another recipient. The block is implanted with anastomoses at the trachea, posterior left atrium, and main pulmonary artery after bilateral recipient pneumonectomies. This procedure is associated with poor healing of the tracheal anastomosis and reduced long-term survival compared with BSSLT, and has been largely abandoned.

BSSLT is the other approach to DLT. This procedure often can be performed without CPB, which is considerably more challenging for the anesthesiologist. This procedure is performed with the patient supine, through a sternal bithoracotomy. Proper positioning is necessary to provide adequate exposure for the thoracotomy portion of the incision. One approach is to position the patient's arms suspended over the head. This is cumbersome and consumptive of the small amount of space available at the head of the table. In addition, it exposes the patient to an increased risk of brachial plexus injuries. With proper positioning of two rolls – one on either side of the patient's spine extending from the cervical to the lumbar region – the arms can remain tucked at the patient's side. Each donor lung block contains a cuff of left atrium with two pulmonary veins, the bronchus, and the branch pulmonary artery. The donor heart can be used for another recipient. OLV is established and a pneumectomy is performed, followed by implantation of the donor lung with anastomoses at the left atrium, bronchus, and branch pulmonary artery. The procedure is then repeated for the next donor lung.

### Use of CPB

#### HLT and En-Bloc DLT

HLT and en-bloc DLT both require hypothermic CPB with aortic cross-clamping, as described previously.

#### SLT and BSSLT

Elective CPB is used for SLT and BSSLT for the following subsets of patients:

- Infants and small children.
- Patients with pulmonary hypertension.
- Patients undergoing lung transplantation and simultaneous repair of intracardiac defects.

For all other patients with SLT and BSSLT, CPB is initiated only when hemodynamic, gas exchange, or technical difficulties are encountered during the course of the procedure. Most SLT and BSSLT patients without pulmonary hypertension can be managed without CPB. There is a higher incidence of need for CPB in patients with restrictive lung disease.

Intraoperative criteria that predict the need for use of CPB in patients with restrictive lung disease include an  $\text{SaO}_2 < 90\%$  with an  $\text{FiO}_2$  of 1.0, baseline mean pulmonary artery (PA) pressure  $> 40$  mmHg, mean PA pressure  $> 50$  mmHg with the PA clamped, severe systemic hypotension, and a cardiac index  $< 2.0 \text{ l min}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-2}$ . Avoiding cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) when possible is important, because the use of CPB contributes to postoperative graft dysfunction in the form of an increased arterial/alveolar oxygen ratio, increased severity of radiographic pulmonary injury, and prolonged postoperative intubation. It does not appear that use of CPB affects long-term outcome.

Full CPB is used for infants and small children, and for all patients undergoing simultaneous repair of an intracardiac lesion. Aortic cross-clamping and cardioplegic arrest are only necessary when intracardiac defects are repaired. Normothermic partial CPB is used for all other cases of SLT and BSSLT. Cannulation of the ascending aorta and the right atrium is used for bilateral SLT and right SLT. For patients undergoing left SLT, descending aorta and pulmonary artery cannulations have been used. Alternatively, femoral vein and artery cannulations can be used.

## Anesthetic Management

### Goals

- With the initiation of positive-pressure ventilation, patients with obstructive lung disease may exhibit air trapping and auto-positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) with progressive increases in lung volumes leading to high intrathoracic pressure and hemodynamic compromise. This is particularly likely if a short expiratory time interval and/or a high respiratory rate are present. Ventilatory interventions will be necessary.
- Pre-existing left ventricular or right ventricular dysfunction requires that contractility be maintained or enhanced.
- Avoid hypercarbia, hypoxemia, and acidosis, which will exacerbate pulmonary hypertension and may result in acute right ventricular decompensation.
- Avoid increases in the pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR): systemic vascular resistance (SVR) ratio in patients with Eisenmenger's syndrome. This will increase right-to-left (R-L) shunting and worsen hypoxemia

### Preoperative Evaluation

Lung transplant patients typically undergo extensive medical evaluation. A summary of this evaluation is readily available to the anesthesiologist through the transplant coordinator.

### Premedication

Most patients are called into the hospital on short notice, and many will have eaten solid food during the previous 6–8 h. To reduce the risk of aspiration in older children, a non-particulate antacid such as bicitra (30 ml) can be given in addition to intravenous metoclopramide (10 mg) and an intravenous H<sub>2</sub> receptor blocker such as ranitidine (50 mg). For infants and smaller children, a period of 2–3 h of NPO status is sufficient and usually transpires before induction.

Premedication for children is most safely and effectively titrated by the anesthesiologist before induction and while lines are placed and the history and physical examination are completed. Midazolam 0.03–0.05 mg kg<sup>-1</sup> in divided doses works well to reduce anxiety. Supplemental oxygen should be administered because hypoxemia will exacerbate existing pulmonary hypertension.

### Preinduction

Some transplant patients will be receiving intravenous inotropic and vasodilator therapy when they arrive for surgery. These agents should be continued via a reliable intravenous route. Sterility is of utmost importance because the patients will be immunosuppressed. Patients with bronchospastic disease should receive bronchodilator therapy before induction. Likewise, patients with CF should receive nebulized acetylcysteine or rDNase to help break up tenacious secretions.

Placement of an intravenous catheter before induction is optimal. Patients with preserved ventricular function, an appropriate NPO interval, and cardiopulmonary stability will likely tolerate an inhalation induction. Electrocardiogram monitoring should allow the assessment of V5, I, II, III, aVR, aVL, and aVF. Baseline recording of all seven leads should be obtained for comparative purposes. Normally, two leads (II and V5) are monitored simultaneously intraoperatively. If a left thoracotomy incision is used, V5 is not an option because the lead will be in the operative field. A radial or femoral artery catheter is placed after the induction of anesthesia. Central venous pressure monitoring is placed after induction. For older children undergoing SLT or BSSLT with or without CPB, a PA catheter may be placed in some institutions. Alternatively, an appropriately sized double-lumen central venous line is placed; the right internal jugular vein is the preferred site. A transthoracic PA catheter can be placed by the surgeon



directly into the PA, or advanced out to the PA via the right atrium if postoperative PAP monitoring is desired. A pediatric transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) probe can be used for children weighing less than 15–20 kg, and the adult TEE probe for children weighing more than 20–30 kg to help manage the patient pre- and post-CPB.

### **Management of One Lung Ventilation (OLV)**

In procedures performed with full CPB, lung isolation and OLV are not necessary. These procedures can be managed with a standard single-lumen endotracheal tube. The anesthetic plan for SLT and BSSLT in adults and older children must include a method of lung isolation and OLV because these procedures are being performed increasingly without CPB or with partial CPB. When partial CPB is used, OLV to the perfused, non-operative lung is necessary. A number of methods of lung isolation and OLV are available. The advantages and disadvantages of the various methods are summarized in Table 30.2.

### **Endobronchial Intubation**

A standard endotracheal tube (ETT) is used, with a bronchoscope being employed to direct the ETT down the main stem bronchus of the lung that is to be ventilated.

### **Single-Lumen Endotracheal Tube Plus a Bronchial Blocker**

This technique involves use of a Fogarty catheter or an Arndt blocker and a standard ETT. Laryngoscopy is performed and the blocker is placed in the trachea, followed by placement of the endotracheal tube. Alternatively, the blocker can be placed within the lumen of the ETT. In either case, a fiberoptic bronchoscope is then used to guide the bronchial blocking catheter down the appropriate bronchus. Fogarty catheters with balloon sizes from 0.5 to 3 ml are available. Arndt blockers are available in three sizes. When using a pediatric (3.4-mm) fiberoptic bronchoscope to position the catheter,

the 5 Fr catheter can be placed in a 4.5-mm ETT, the 7 Fr catheter can be placed in a 6.5-mm ETT, and the 9 Fr catheter can be placed in a 7.5-mm ETT. Arndt blockers have a small central lumen which can be used for lung deflation and continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) application.

### **Single-Lumen Endotracheal Tube Plus an E-Z Bronchial Blocker**

The E-Z blocker is a Y-shaped catheter with a low-pressure balloon bronchial blocker on each arm. Each arm has a small central lumen which can be used for lung deflation and CPAP application. Placement involves intubation with a 7.0-mm ETT or larger. A multiport adaptor is attached and a fiberoptic bronchoscope is used to confirm that the ETT is 4 cm above the carina to allow sufficient space for deployment of the bifurcated arms of the blocker. The E-Z blocker is then inserted through the adaptor until the bifurcated arms each enter a bronchus. The bronchoscope is used to verify the position and to confirm that the cuff of the bronchus to be blocked is inflated properly.

### **Univent Tube**

This is a standard endotracheal tube with a 3-mm outer-diameter bronchial blocker, which passes through a 4-mm channel incorporated within the lumen of the ETT. The bronchial blocker has a 2-mm internal-diameter lumen. These tubes are available with internal diameters ranging from 6.0 to 9.0 mm in 0.5-mm increments, and in a 3.5-mm uncuffed and 4.5-mm cuffed version. Because of the presence of the enclosed bronchial blocker, the external diameter of these tubes is considerably larger. The external diameter of the 8 mm Univent tube is 13 mm, which is the same as the external diameter of a 39 Fr DL tube. The external diameter of the 3.5-mm Univent tube is the same as a 6-mm ETT or a 26 Fr DL tube. These tubes have a small central lumen in the blocker which can be used for lung deflation and CPAP application. Optimal placement of the bronchial blocker requires the use of a fiberoptic bronchoscope.

**Table 30.2** Advantages and disadvantages of one-lung ventilation (OLV) techniques.

Type of OLV	Advantages	Disadvantages
<b>Endobronchial intubation</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Any size patient.</li> <li>• Use of appropriate-sized fiberoptic bronchoscope.</li> <li>• Suctioning is possible.</li> <li>• Use the same ETT at the end of the procedure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deflation of the non-ventilated lung will occur passively.</li> <li>• Suctioning of the non-ventilated lung and application of CPAP to the non-ventilated lung is impossible.</li> <li>• In taller patients, a standard ETT may not be long enough to extend far enough into the main stem bronchus to provide isolation.</li> </ul>
<b>Bronchial blocker (Fogarty catheter or Arndt blocker)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Applicable to any size patient with use of an appropriate-sized ETT and bronchial blocker.</li> <li>• Suctioning of secretions via the ETT before placement of the blocker.</li> <li>• When the procedure is completed, the ETT does not have to be replaced and the blocker can be removed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Fogarty catheter balloon is a high-pressure, low-volume balloon that may compromise bronchial mucosal blood flow. There is no internal lumen to allow lung decompression or suctioning.</li> <li>• The internal lumen of the Arndt blocker is too small to allow adequate suctioning of secretions.</li> <li>• Occlusion of the RUL bronchus by the balloon of the blocker may occur due to the high takeoff of the RUL bronchus. Maintaining the position of the blocker in the main stem bronchus during surgical manipulation may be difficult or impossible.</li> </ul>
<b>Univent</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The blocker being an integral part of the ETT provides better stability of the blocker.</li> <li>• The internal lumen of the blocker will allow some decompression of the non-ventilated lung and will allow the application of CPAP.</li> <li>• When the procedure is completed, the Univent tube does not have to be replaced with a standard ETT.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Due to the large external diameter, these tubes are useful only for adult patients and older children.</li> <li>• The internal lumen of the blocker is too small to allow adequate suctioning of secretions.</li> <li>• As with a standard bronchial blocker, occlusion of the RUL bronchus by the balloon of the blocker may occur.</li> </ul>
<b>EZ-Endobronchial blocker</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It is securely placed at the carina without the need for navigation of the cuff into either of the bronchi.</li> <li>• Cuff inflation can be performed just before lung isolation, which minimizes the need to manipulate the catheter after placement and reduces the potential for the cuffs to become dislodged.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bronchial blocker balloon is a high-pressure, low-volume balloon that may compromise bronchial mucosal blood flow.</li> <li>• Only one size (7 Fr) is available.</li> </ul>
<b>Double-lumen endotracheal tubes</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Deflation and suctioning of the non-ventilated lung is easily accomplished.</li> <li>• Application of CPAP to the non-ventilated lung is easy.</li> <li>• The endobronchial tube is not dislodged easily with surgical manipulation.</li> <li>• Visualization of the RUL bronchus with the DL tube in place is accomplished easily with a fiberoptic bronchoscope.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Alignment of the RUL lumen of a right-sided DL tube with the patient's RUL can be difficult, particularly in the presence of thick secretions.</li> <li>• The smallest available DL tube is appropriate for children aged 7–8 years.</li> <li>• Suctioning tenacious secretions through the small lumens of the DL tube is more difficult than through the lumen of a standard ETT.</li> <li>• When the procedure is completed, the DL tube must be exchanged for a standard ETT.</li> </ul>

### Double-Lumen Endotracheal Tube

DL tubes are available in sizes from 26, 28, 32, 35, 37, 39, 41, and 43 Fr. The outer diameter of a 26 Fr DL tube is equivalent to a 6.0-mm ETT, and thus is an appropriate size for a patient weighing approximately 30 kg or aged 8–10 years. Both, right- and left-sided tubes are available. Right-sided tubes have a side lumen in the bronchial tube that must be positioned over the right upper lobe (RUL) bronchus so that the balloon of the bronchial lumen does not occlude the RUL bronchus. Fiberoptic bronchoscopy is necessary to ensure proper positioning of both right- and left-sided DL tubes.

### Induction and Maintenance

Anesthetic techniques should allow for early postoperative extubation. Many patients with end-stage pulmonary disease will be unable to lie flat due to severe dyspnea. These patients are induced in the sitting position and, as they lose consciousness, they are slowly placed supine. For patients in whom there is a risk of aspiration, induction is performed with the patient in a slightly head-up position and cricoid pressure is applied until the trachea is intubated.

Difficult mask ventilation can have disastrous consequences for these patients. Careful titration of etomidate ( $0.1\text{--}0.3\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) in combination with fentanyl  $5\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  or sufentanil  $1\text{--}2\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}$  is useful for induction. A full dose of etomidate  $0.3\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$  is rarely necessary to induce hypnosis and loss of consciousness in these patients. This drug combination has minimal direct effect on heart rate, myocardial contractility, peripheral vascular resistance, or venous capacitance. An overall diminution in central sympathetic tone will also contribute to circulatory depression. These drugs in combination with rocuronium ( $1.0\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) or succinylcholine ( $1\text{--}2\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) can be used to perform a modified rapid-sequence induction (cricoid pressure during positive pressure ventilation) in the patient with questionable NPO status.

Anesthesia can be maintained with additional doses of opioid in conjunction with a benzodiazepine (usually midazolam in increments of  $0.01\text{--}0.03\text{ mg kg}^{-1}$ ) or a low inhaled concentration ( $0.5\text{--}0.75\text{ MAC}$ ) of isoflurane or sevoflurane.  $\text{N}_2\text{O}$  is not a good choice as an adjuvant agent; it has a weak myocardial depressant effect that normally is counteracted by the sympathetic outflow it produces.

For patients with obstructive lung disease (emphysema,  $\alpha_1$ -antitrypsin deficiency, CF), induction and positive-pressure ventilation may produce profound hypotension. The possibility that a pneumothorax is present must always be considered. This cardiovascular compromise is secondary to air-trapping or auto-PEEP. This auto-PEEP reduces the stroke volume and cardiac output through the following:

- Reductions in venous return to the right ventricle resulting in a decrease in right ventricular end-diastolic volume (RVEDV).
- Increased impedance to right ventricular ejection by mechanical compression of the pulmonary arterial system, resulting in an increase in right ventricular end-systolic volume (RVESV).
- Shift of the interventricular septum into the left ventricle, which reduces left ventricular compliance and reduces left ventricular end-diastolic volume (LVEDV).

This combination is particularly detrimental for patients with compromised right ventricular systolic function and right ventricular afterload mismatch. Treatment requires volume administration ( $10\text{--}15\text{ ml kg}^{-1}$  of a balanced salt solution) to normalize RVEDV, and inotropic support to improve right ventricular systolic function and normalize RVESV. Dopamine  $5\text{--}10\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$  or epinephrine  $0.05\text{--}0.3\text{ }\mu\text{g kg}^{-1}\text{ min}^{-1}$  are effective for inotropic support. In addition, ventilation with a rapid initial inflation followed by an inspiratory hold or pause and a long expiratory time is necessary [low inspiration:expiration (I:E) ratio]. This may require hand ventilation, although

pressure-controlled ventilation with an intensive care unit ventilator works well. PEEP should not be used.

TEE is extremely valuable in assessing ventricular filling and contractile function in this setting, because filling pressures will not provide an accurate measure of ventricular volumes.

In the most severe instances, intermittent periods of apnea may be necessary. This apneic oxygenation may exacerbate pre-existing pulmonary hypertension via CO<sub>2</sub> retention and hypoxemia. Evaluation of pulmonary artery pressures and cardiac output with a PA catheter, right and left ventricular functions with TEE, and arterial saturation with pulse oximetry, are necessary to determine the extent of hypoventilation that can be tolerated. Marked acidosis (pH of 6.94) and hypercarbia (PaCO<sub>2</sub> of 150 mmHg) can be tolerated during lung transplantation as long as systemic blood pressure and oxygen delivery are maintained. In some instances, the initiation of CPB may be necessary.

Blood loss may be impressive during dissection for pneumonectomy in HLT, SLT, and DLT patients with dense adhesions from previous thoracic surgery, or for patients with cystic fibrosis or bronchiectasis. A rapid transfusion device may be necessary in some cases. Some centers use antifibrinolytics when CPB is used or when there are dense adhesions, regardless of whether CPB is used. In addition to red cells, component therapy with fresh-frozen plasma and platelets is often necessary, particularly when CPB is used. Manipulation of the lungs in patients with CF or bronchiectasis may result in the release of endotoxins with a subsequent decrease in SVR, hyperpyrexia, and increased metabolic rate. Management of the recipient without use of CPB under these conditions is extremely difficult.

After one or both of the lungs have been implanted and perfused, most centers administer methylprednisolone (10 mg kg<sup>-1</sup>). After lung implantation has been completed, PEEP of 5–10 cm H<sub>2</sub>O is applied and the FiO<sub>2</sub> selected is the lowest necessary to obtain a

PaO<sub>2</sub> of 90–100 mmHg. This is done because the post-ischemic lung is vulnerable to oxygen-free radical toxicity. In some institutions, inhaled nitric oxide or a prostacyclin analogue is routinely used because they can reduce PVR, improve V/Q mismatch, and mitigate ischemia/reperfusion injury. At the termination of the procedure, patients with DL tubes have the DL tube replaced with a large single-lumen ETT. A large tube size should be used to allow easy access for post-operative fiberoptic bronchoscopy.

### Special Considerations for SLT and BSSLT

Management of OLV and pulmonary artery clamping for recipient pneumonectomy and allograft implantation in SLT and BSSLT patients without CPB is a challenge. The task is made easier for patients undergoing SLT if the lung with the poorest ventilation and perfusion is removed and replaced. For patients undergoing BSSLT, the lung with the poorest ventilation and perfusion should be removed first and replaced.

Maintenance of body temperature is difficult when CPB is not used. A warming blanket under the patient, an actively humidified breathing circuit, a fluid/blood warmer, and a forced warming air blanket over the patient are necessary.

### One-Lung Ventilation

Collapse of the operative lung and OLV is likely to exacerbate air-trapping and the subsequent hemodynamic compromise and CO<sub>2</sub> retention. Treatment with volume administration, inotropes, and ventilatory interventions is warranted, as described previously. Marked hypercarbia with acidosis is likely and is generally well tolerated. Aggressive suctioning may be necessary to facilitate collapse of the operative lung. PaO<sub>2</sub> also is likely to decrease, due to intrapulmonary shunting, until the ipsilateral pulmonary artery is clamped. Administration of CPAP to the non-ventilated lung, insufflation of O<sub>2</sub> to the non-ventilated lung, or high-frequency jet

ventilation (HFJV) of the non-ventilated lung may improve oxygenation.

### **Clamping of the PA**

Recipient pneumonectomy requires clamping of the ipsilateral PA. Before clamping, the PA catheter is withdrawn into the main PA. Palpation by the surgeon will confirm its position proximal to the proposed cross-clamp site. After the ipsilateral PA has been clamped the catheter is advanced into the contralateral PA. Clamping of the PA may compromise right ventricular function due to afterload mismatch. This is most likely in patients with mild to moderate pre-existing pulmonary hypertension, and in those with impaired right ventricular function. This is the primary reason why patients with severe pulmonary hypertension require elective CPB. If there is any doubt regarding the ability of the patient to tolerate PA clamping, a trial of clamping is recommended. TEE is used to assess right ventricular function. In addition, increased PAP and central venous pressure (CVP), falling cardiac index, and  $S_vO_2$  may occur.

### **Allograft Implantation**

Immediately after allograft implantation and washout of the preservative solution and prostaglandin, there may be profound, transient systemic hypotension. Treatment requires fluid administration and alpha-adrenergic support. After implantation of the donor lung, there usually is an immediate reduction in PA pressures and an improvement in pulmonary compliance and gas exchange. This period may be followed by allograft dysfunction characterized by deteriorating gas exchange, decreasing pulmonary compliance, and elevated PA pressures. This is the result of non-cardiogenic, reperfusion pulmonary edema. Two factors predispose this process: (i) pre-existing pulmonary hypertension which results in over-perfusion of the donor lung; and (ii) a long ischemic interval, which enhances capillary permeability.

PEEP (5–15 cm  $H_2O$ ) usually is necessary to maintain adequate gas exchange when allograft dysfunction occurs. Increased capillary permeability and the lack of pulmonary lymphatic drainage in the allograft dictate judicious crystalloid administration. Excessively large tidal volumes should be avoided because overinflation of the allograft will contribute to elevated PA pressures through mechanical compression of the pulmonary vasculature.

If allograft dysfunction is severe, implantation of the second lung in BSSLT patients may require CPB. If CPB is not used, implantation of the second lung is managed as described for the first lung.

### **Indications for CPB**

The decision to use CPB is individualized for each patient. The use of CPB may become necessary at any time during the procedure. The combination of a cardiac index  $<2 \text{ l min}^{-1} \text{ m}^{-2}$ ,  $S_vO_2 < 60\%$ , mean arterial pressure (MAP)  $< 50\text{--}60 \text{ mmHg}$ ,  $SaO_2 < 85\text{--}90\%$ , and  $pH < 7.00$ , despite aggressive ventilatory and pharmacologic intervention, is an indication for use of CPB. The latter process is not necessary for increased PA pressures unless there is evidence of deteriorating right ventricular function. TEE assessment of right ventricular function is supplemented by use of CVP determinations. Increasing CVP, right ventricular distension, worsening global hypokinesia, and new or worsening tricuspid regurgitation, despite inotropic support with epinephrine, norepinephrine, or dopamine in combination with inhaled NO (20–40 ppm) or intravenous pulmonary vasodilation (milrinone  $0.5\text{--}1.0 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ , nitroglycerin  $0.5\text{--}5 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ ,  $\text{PGE}_1$   $0.05\text{--}0.2 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ , or  $\text{PGI}_2$   $5\text{--}20 \text{ ng kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ ), are indications for use of CPB. Norepinephrine ( $0.01\text{--}0.1 \mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$ ) is the most effective agent for maintaining coronary perfusion pressure in patients with right ventricular hypertension, but its use must be tempered with the knowledge that it may also increase PVR.

TEE assessment of left ventricular function is supplemented by use of pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP) determinations. Hypoxemia, hypercarbia, and reduced systemic blood pressure can all contribute to left ventricular dysfunction. Progressive deterioration in left ventricular function (new wall motion abnormalities, left ventricular distension, new or worsening mitral regurgitation) despite aggressive pharmacologic and ventilatory interventions is an indication for CPB.

A metabolic acidosis is difficult to treat because sodium bicarbonate administration will produce  $\text{CO}_2$ , which must be eliminated by increased alveolar ventilation. Obviously, increasing alveolar ventilation often is not possible in these patients.

## Post-CPB Management

Particular attention must be paid to de-airing the heart. Severe ventricular dysfunction may follow the ejection of air through the coronary arteries. The right ventricle is particularly at risk due to the anterior location of the right coronary ostia. TEE is valuable in guiding the de-airing process.

Patients undergoing HLT have a denervated heart and are managed during the post-CPB period in the same manner as that described for heart-transplant patients.

Right ventricular function usually improves dramatically after lung implantation due to the immediate reduction in PA pressures. Despite this, patients with en-bloc DLT, BSSLT, or SLT may require inotropic support. Patients requiring aortic cross-clamping and cardioplegic arrest are at particular risk for post-CPB right and left ventricular dysfunction. In addition, the presence of lung allograft dysfunction may contribute to post-CPB right ventricular dysfunction as the result of elevated PA pressures.

## Postoperative Care

In rare instances, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) and independent lung ventilation may be necessary after SLT in patients with pulmonary hypertension secondary to reperfusion pulmonary edema. Postoperative independent lung ventilation with a DL tube has been used for patients with SLT to minimize preferential ventilation and air-trapping in the native lung in patients with obstructive lung disease. For these patients, the native lung has high compliance, and air-trapping can result in hyperinflation with subsequent displacement of the mediastinum and compression of the donor lung.

Differential ventilation with hypoventilation of the native lung has been used successfully to avoid this problem. Preferential perfusion of the donor lung occurs after SLT, especially for patients with pulmonary hypertension. In cases of severe V/Q mismatch, selective hypoventilation of the native lung, combined with positioning the patient in the lateral position with the donor lung in the non-dependent position, may be necessary during the postoperative period. This will minimize overventilation of the native lung and overperfusion of the donor lung. In patients with SLT with a fibrotic native lung, positioning the patient with the donor lung dependent may help equalize ventilation to the both lungs.

## Non-Cardiac Surgery in Lung Transplant Patients

As with heart-transplant patients, lung-transplant and HLT patients may require surgical procedures. Some are purely elective, whereas others are likely to be urgent or emergent. Most surgical procedures are the direct result of complications of immunosuppressive therapy. (Such complications and immunosuppressive agents are listed in

Tables 29.6 and 29.7, respectively.) The incidence of complications requiring general surgical consultation and intervention in lung transplant patients is 16%. In addition, lung-transplant patients suffer airway and vascular anastomotic complications that require operative intervention. The incidence of airway complications in SLT and BSSLT is 12–17% per anastomosis, with an associated mortality rate of 2–3%. Some 9% of non-lethal airway complications require operative intervention. Similar statistics exist in pediatric patients, where the most common intervention required is for the treatment of bronchial stenosis. This usually involves flexible and rigid bronchoscopy for laser excision of granulation tissue, stent placement, or balloon dilatation.

Lung-transplant and HLT patients present a unique set of management issues:

- 1) Loss of cough reflex due to transection of vagal fibers. This makes the patient with a transplanted lung prone to retention of secretions and at risk for pulmonary infections. The risk of aspiration should not be significantly increased, as the innervation of the larynx, epiglottis, and proximal trachea remains normal. However, laryngeal nerve injury during dissection can result in loss of protective airway reflexes.
- 2) Reduction in lung volumes. Mild proportional reductions in all lung volumes are seen long term in patients after HLT, DLT, and SLT. These reductions are not due to reduced elastic properties of the transplanted lung, but are secondary to the volume constraints of the recipient chest cavity and to the strength and efficiency of the thoracic musculature. In fact, the improvement in elastic recoil and the reduced chest wall distention that follow SLT for emphysema substantially reduce the work of breathing and dyspnea.
- 3) Ventilatory response to CO<sub>2</sub>. HLT and DLT patients have total vagal denervation, whereas SLT patients retain vagal innervation to the native lung. HLT, BSSLT, and SLT patients all increase minute ventilation in response to CO<sub>2</sub> rebreathing-induced hypercapnia. However, while SLT patients increase both tidal volume and respiratory rate, HLT and BSSLT patients exhibit an increase in tidal volume with little or no respiratory rate response.
- 4) Ventilatory response to hypoxia. Lung transplant patients have an increase in tidal volume and respiratory rate comparable to that in normal patients in response to hypoxia.
- 5) Rejection. Acute rejection of the transplanted lungs can be diagnosed both clinically and with transbronchial biopsies via a flexible bronchoscope. In the absence of clinical evidence of rejection (dyspnea, fever, diffuse perihilar infiltrate on chest radiography), biopsies are performed at regular intervals postoperatively. Obviously, if clinical evidence of rejection exists, more frequent biopsies may be indicated to document rejection and to assess regression of histologic changes with treatment. Biopsies are graded from 0 to 4 based on histologic criteria. Acute rejection of the lungs is very common; approximately 50% of patients experience an acute rejection episode in the first three to six months post-transplantation. Rejection of the heart in HLT patients, on the other hand, is uncommon. Because rejection of the heart and lungs is not synchronous, heart biopsies are performed in HLT patients only if there is clinical evidence of heart rejection. Rejection is treated with oral or intravenous pulsed steroids. Persistent rejection unresponsive to steroids usually is treated with a lympholytic agent such as polyclonal antithymocyte globulin (ATG) or murine monoclonal antibody (OKT3).
- 6) Bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS) and bronchiolitis obliterans (BO). BOS is a clinical entity characterized by declining FEV<sub>1</sub>, FEF<sub>25–75</sub>, and FEF<sub>50</sub>/FVC. BOS is graded based on the reduction in FEV<sub>1</sub>

compared with the best baseline value. (Grade 0:  $FEV_1 > 90\%$  and  $FEF_{25-75} > 75\%$ ; grade 1:  $FEV_1$  66–80%; grade 2:  $FEV_1$  51–65%; grade 3:  $FEV_1 < 50\%$ ). BO is a pathologic diagnosis based on histologic evidence of fibrous scarring of membranous and respiratory bronchioles with partial or complete obliteration of the lumen. BOS and BO are the main sources of morbidity and mortality after lung transplantation. The prevalence of BOS and BO for HLT, SLT, and BSSLT patients is 25% at one year, 50–60% at three years, 60% at five years, and 80% at 10 years in large series. The survival rate for lung transplant patients is 76% at one year, 60% at three years, 49% at five years, and 24% at 10 years. Once established, BOS and BO follow a progressively worsening course. Patients with BOS and BO ultimately develop severe obstructive pulmonary disease and progressive hypoxemia. Augmented immunosuppression may attenuate this downhill course and improve survival. In severe progressive cases, re-transplantation is the only option. However, the results are not encouraging, with a five-year survival of 45%, as BOS and BO usually re-occur within a short time. The etiology is multifactorial, with rejection and cytomegalovirus infection both implicated. It is believed that an alloimmune injury occurs with subsequent release of immunologic mediators and the production of growth factors that lead to luminal obliteration and scarring of the small airway. Monitoring for BO is accomplished with

transbronchial biopsies or open-lung biopsy when transbronchial biopsies specimens are equivocal.

- 7) Response to drugs. HLT patients have a denervated heart and have drug responses identical to those described for heart-transplant patients.
- 8) HLT patients. These patients will have all of the cardiac problems outlined previously for heart-transplant patients.

#### Anesthetic Considerations for Non-Cardiac Surgery in Patients Post Lung Transplantation

- 1) Sterile technique is essential.
- 2) Patients with stenotic airways and patients with BOS and BO may exhibit air-trapping and auto PEEP.
- 3) Diminished cough reflex makes clearing of secretions difficult. Laryngeal damage will predispose to aspiration.
- 4) Lymphatic interruption necessitates careful fluid administration to avoid interstitial pulmonary fluid accumulation.
- 5) Placement of an ETT must take into account the position of the tracheal or bronchial anastomoses.
- 6) Patients with preoperative  $CO_2$  retention may exhibit  $CO_2$  retention for two to three weeks postoperatively as the central chemoreceptors reset.
- 7) HLT patients will present the same cardiac challenges as heart-transplant patients.
- 8) Stress-dose steroid coverage should be considered for patients receiving steroids as part of immunosuppression.



## 31

### Anomalous Origin of the Left Coronary Artery from the Pulmonary Artery (ALCAPA)

#### Introduction

ALCAPA or Bland–White–Garland syndrome is a rare anomaly occurring in 1 in 300 000 live births. Although it commonly occurs in isolation, it has been reported with other cardiac lesions.

#### Anatomy

The most common origin of the left main coronary artery (LMCA) in ALCAPA is the leftward posterior sinus of the pulmonary artery, followed by the rightward and posterior sinus, the posterior wall of the main pulmonary artery, and the posterior aspect of the origin of the right pulmonary artery.

#### Physiology

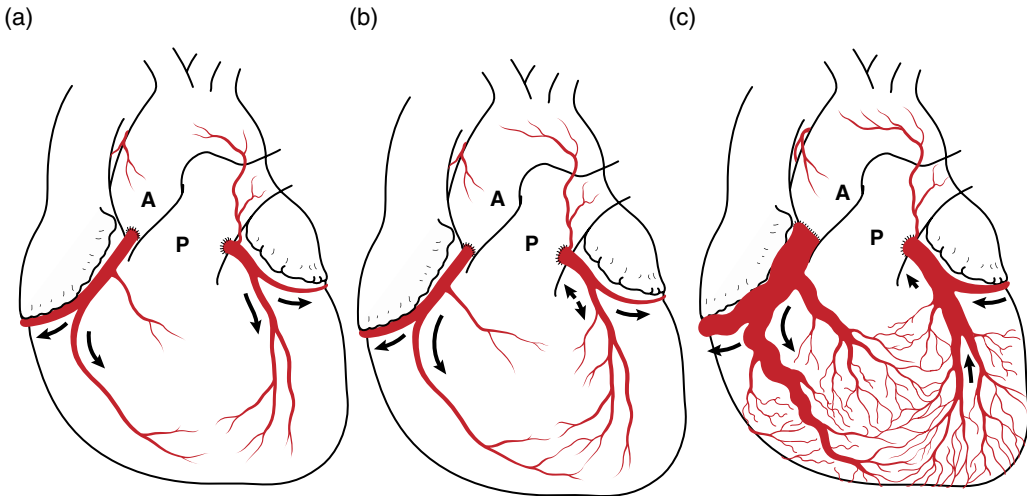
Dramatic changes occur in the coronary circulation in infants with ALCAPA within the first weeks of life. While the fetus remains *in utero*, the heart will develop quite normally. Initially after birth, the relatively high pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) and pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) allow the myocardium supplied by the anomalous artery to remain well perfused. In the few days after birth, as the PVR decreases the

pressure in the pulmonary trunk decreases. This will result in coronary steal and subsequent compromise of the left ventricular subendocardial perfusion. In addition, all antegrade left coronary artery flow is deoxygenated mixed venous blood. Severe left ventricular dysfunction and associated mitral insufficiency generally develop rapidly. Left untreated, 90% of infants will not survive the first year of life. A small subset of patients survives beyond infancy due to the rapid development of collaterals from the right coronary artery to the territory of the LMCA (Figure 31.1).

Echocardiography can be used to delineate the origin of the coronary arteries following presentation. However, cardiac catheterization and angiography remain the 'gold standard.' Increasingly, computed tomography angiography is also being utilized. Once the diagnosis of ALCAPA is made, urgent surgery is indicated.

#### Surgical Treatment

Surgical treatment can be classified into one-coronary and two-coronary system repairs. The one-coronary approach involves ligating the anomalous LMCA at its origin with the pulmonary artery to eliminate the steal phenomenon. This approach has been largely abandoned due to poor outcomes associated



**Figure 31.1** Varying functional states in anomalous origin of the left coronary artery from the pulmonary trunk. (a) During fetal life the aortic (A) and pulmonary arterial (P) pressures are essentially equal. Flow in the anomalous artery is from the pulmonary trunk into the myocardium. (b) In early postnatal life, the pulmonary artery pressure has fallen below levels that pertain during fetal life. Rich intercoronary collateral channels have not yet developed. In this phase, flow through the anomalous coronary artery is probably at a low level. The anomalous vessel may be perfused either from the pulmonary trunk or from the right coronary artery through developing collateral systems. (c) In the final phase, a rich collateral system has developed between the two coronary arteries. Characteristics of an arteriovenous fistula now pertain, with the major contribution to fistulous flow coming from the right coronary artery. Mediastinal arteries, which make communication with the coronary arterial system, may also contribute to such flow. Reproduced from Lopez, L., Geva, T. (2016) Double Outlet Ventricle, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

with inadequate coronary blood flow to the LMCA system via the collateral network from the right coronary. The two-coronary system approach involves one of the following:

- Re-implantation of the LMCA into the aorta using a coronary button technique. This is the preferred technique.
- Creation of an intra-pulmonary artery baffle to establish continuity between the LMCA orifice and the aorta (Takeuchi procedure).
- Ligation of the anomalous LMCA at its origin with the pulmonary artery and placement of a coronary artery bypass graft(s) to the left coronary artery territory (coronary artery bypass grafting; CABG).

## Anesthetic Management

These patients are managed in a manner similar to any patient with a severe dilated cardiomyopathy. The additional management issue in these patients is PVR. The patients generally have systemic or near-systemic PAPs due to passive elevation from a very high left atrial pressure and reactive pulmonary vasoconstriction. In theory, a reduction in PVR will worsen the coronary steal phenomenon by reducing PAP. Left ventricular assist device (LVAD) support may be necessary following repair as an immediate improvement in left ventricular function following revascularization does not occur.

## 32

### Heterotaxy

#### Introduction

Heterotaxy is present in 3% of all congenital heart disease cases, with an incidence of 1 in 10000.

#### Anatomy

Heterotaxy is said to exist when the thoraco-abdominal viscera are abnormally arranged across the right–left axis of the body. Patients with situs solitus (normal arrangement across right–left axis) and with situs inversus (mirror-image arrangement across right–left axis) are not included in this characterization. Heterotaxy is synonymous with ‘visceral heterotaxy’ and ‘heterotaxy syndrome’.

Defining the anatomy in heterotaxy requires a dedicated segmental approach.

#### Position of the Heart in the Chest

The position of the heart in the chest can be determined using chest radiography. The position does not reliably predict segmental anatomy or associated cardiac lesions. Dextrocardia is defined as a right-sided ventricular mass, where the heart is predominantly in the right hemithorax and typically the apex points to the patient’s right (dextroversion) (Figure 32.1). Levocardia is defined as a left-sided ventricular mass, where the heart is predominantly in the left hemithorax

and typically the apex points to the patient’s left (levoverision). Mesocardia is defined as a central/mid- line ventricular mass, where the heart is predominantly midline and typically the apex points to the patient’s midline.

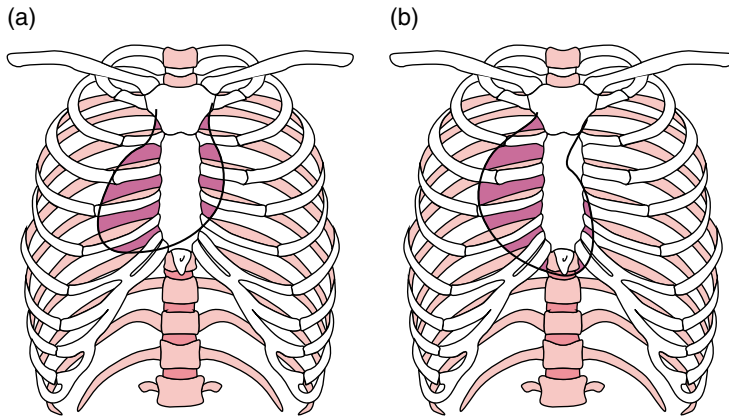
#### Atrial Anatomy

The current level of echocardiographic expertise combined with high-resolution ultrasound systems generally allows the delineation of atrial appendage anatomy, which is a key feature in any description of the anatomy. Heterotaxy patients have either bilateral left atrial anatomy [left atrial isomerism (LAI)] or bilateral right atrial anatomy [right atrial isomerism (RAI)] (Figure 32.2). The right atrial appendage is characterized by a broad junction to the right atrium, a short and blunt shape (Snoopy’s nose), and separation from the smooth walls of the atrium by pectinate muscles.

The left atrial appendage is characterized by a narrow junction to the left atrium, a long, narrow shape (Snoopy’s ear), and the presence of pectinate muscles within the appendage itself.

#### Venoatrial Connections

A wide variety of venoatrial connections exist in heterotaxy. These connections do not define atrial situs; that is defined



**Figure 32.1** (a) Dextrocardia. (b) Dextroposition. Reproduced from Lytrivi ID, Lai WW. (2016) Cardiac Malpositions and Heterotaxy Syndrome, in *Echocardiography in Pediatric and Congenital Heart Disease: From Fetus to Adult*, 2nd edition (eds W.W. Lai, L.L. Mertens, M.S. Cohen, T. Geva).

by appendage anatomy. Several important points deserve discussion:

- SVC – may be unilateral (right or left) or bilateral with or without a connecting vein.
- IVC – LAI is associated with an absence of the suprarenal (between the renal vein and liver) segment of the IVC. In this setting the hepatic veins drain directly into the floor of the atrium and the abdominal inferior vena cava (IVC) drains via the azygos system to either a right or left superior vena cava (SVC).
- Coronary sinus – RAI is associated with an absence of the coronary sinus septum such that no discrete coronary sinus is seen.
- Pulmonary veins – totally and partially anomalous pulmonary venous connections are seen. Purists would say that with RAI the pulmonary venous connection is always abnormal even if all four veins

connect directly to a left-sided atrium because the morphologic connection (to a right atrium) is abnormal.

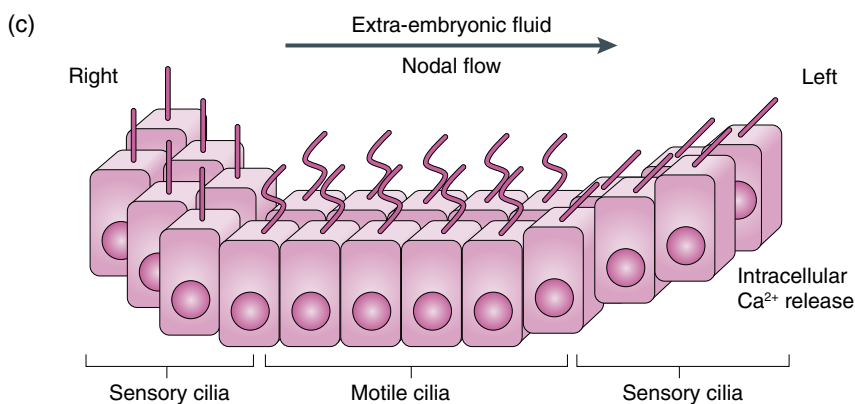
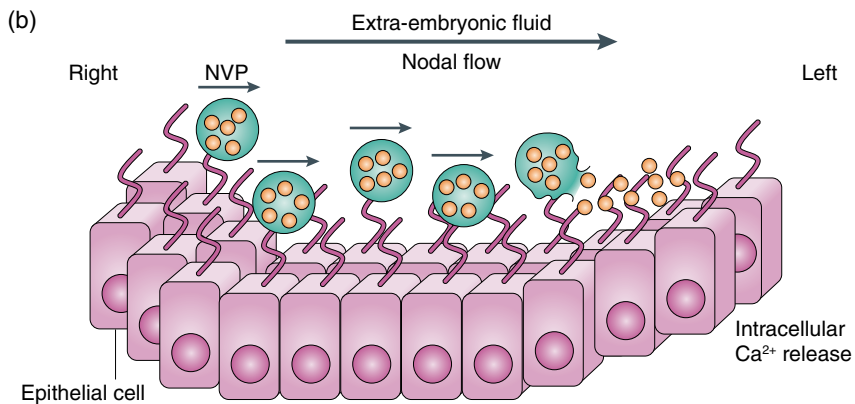
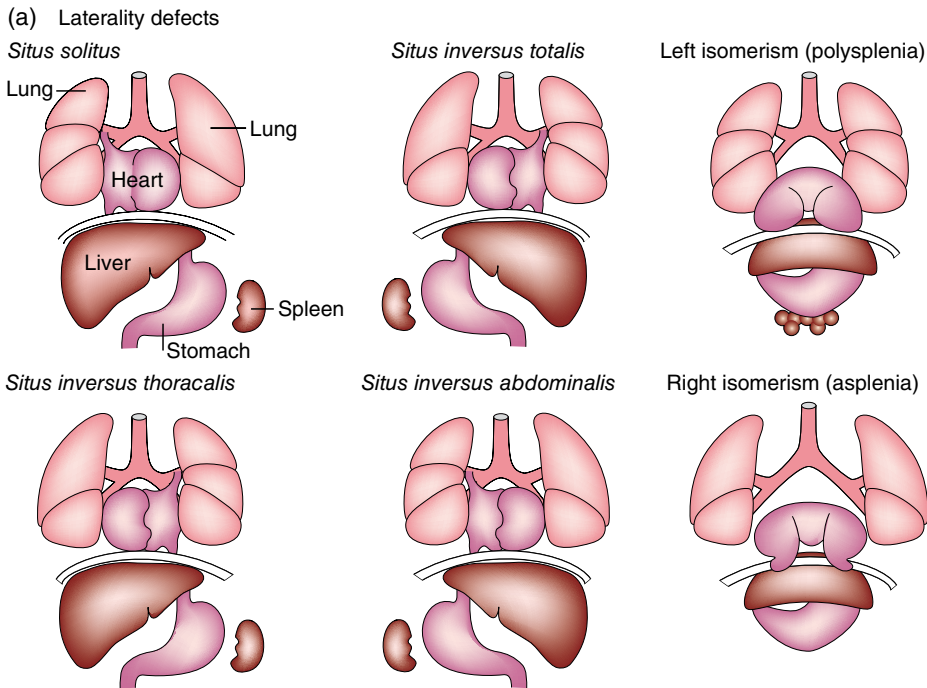
## Ventricular Anatomy

A chamber is considered a ventricle if it receives more than 50% of the ventricular inlet or fibrous ring of an atrioventricular (AV) valve. The AV valve need not be patent for the chamber to be considered a ventricle, as is the case with tricuspid or mitral atresia. Likewise, the chamber does not need to be large to be considered a ventricle, as is the case with hypoplastic left heart syndrome. The right and left ventricles have different morphologies:

- Right ventricle:
  - Tricuspid valve (three leaflets) with one of the leaflets having chordal attachments

---

embryonic node generate a leftward flow of extra-embryonic fluid (nodal flow). (b) The nodal vesicular parcel (NVP) model predicts that vesicles filled with morphogens (such as sonic hedgehog and retinoic acid) are secreted from the right side of the embryonic node and transported to the left side by nodal flow, where they are smashed open by force. The released contents probably bind to specific transmembrane receptors in the axonemal membrane of cilia on the left side. The consequent initiation of left-sided intracellular  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  release induces downstream signaling events that break bilaterality. In this model, the flow of extra-embryonic fluid is not detected by cilia-based mechanosensation. (c) In the two-cilia model, non-sensing motile cilia in the centre of the node create a leftward nodal flow that is mechanically sensed through passive bending of non-motile sensory cilia at the periphery of the node. Bending of the cilia on the left side leads to a left-sided release of  $\text{Ca}^{2+}$  that initiates the establishment of body asymmetry. Reproduced from Fliegauf, M., Benzing, T., Omran, H. (2007) When cilia go bad: Cilia defects and ciliopathies. *Nat. Rev. Mol. Cell. Biol.*, **8**, 880–893.



**Figure 32.2** Human laterality disorders and current models for establishing left–right asymmetry. (a) Schematic illustration of normal left–right body asymmetry (*situs solitus*) and five laterality defects that affect the lungs, heart, liver, stomach and spleen. By their vigorous circular movements, motile monocilia at the

to the septum; there are three papillary muscles that are located apically.

- The septal leaflet of the tricuspid valve inserts slightly lower on the intraventricular septum than the anterior leaflet of the mitral valve.
- Triangular shape and a trabeculated endocardial surface.
- Has the moderator band, a band of tissue that stretches from the lower intraventricular septum to the anterior right ventricle wall.
- Left ventricle:
  - Mitral valve (two leaflets) with, no chordal attachment to the septum; there are two papillary muscles that are located at the junction of the apical and middle two-thirds of the chamber.
  - Ellipsoid shape and a smooth endocardial surface.

The right ventricle wraps around the left ventricle in either a D-loop or L-loop configuration. With D-loop ventricles when an observer's right palm is placed on the patient's chest, the thumb will be positioned in the right ventricle inlet (tricuspid valve) and the other four fingers will represent the right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT). With L-loop ventricles, when an observer's left palm is placed on the patient's chest, the thumb will be positioned in the right ventricle inlet (tricuspid valve) and the other four fingers will represent the RVOT.

### Atrioventricular Junction

The manner in which the atria and ventricles are connected must be described. This connection can be either univentricular (double-inlet right ventricle or left ventricle, mitral or tricuspid atresia), or biventricular (common or separate mitral and tricuspid valve orifices).

### Ventriculoarterial Connections

Normally, the great vessels are oriented at 45° to each other when they leave the heart with the pulmonary artery (PA) anterior to

the aorta. Echocardiographically, when one vessel is observed in the short axis to be circular, the other will have an oblong shape in the same plane. When the great vessels are malposed, they are oriented parallel to each other when they leave the heart. Echocardiographically, both vessels will appear circular in the short axis and tubular in the long axis. The rule of thumb when viewing malposed vessels in the short axis is that the anterior vessel is invariably the aorta. When the vessels are aligned side-to-side, the determination is more difficult and usually requires finding the arch of the aorta, the coronary arteries, or the branch pulmonary arteries to make the determination.

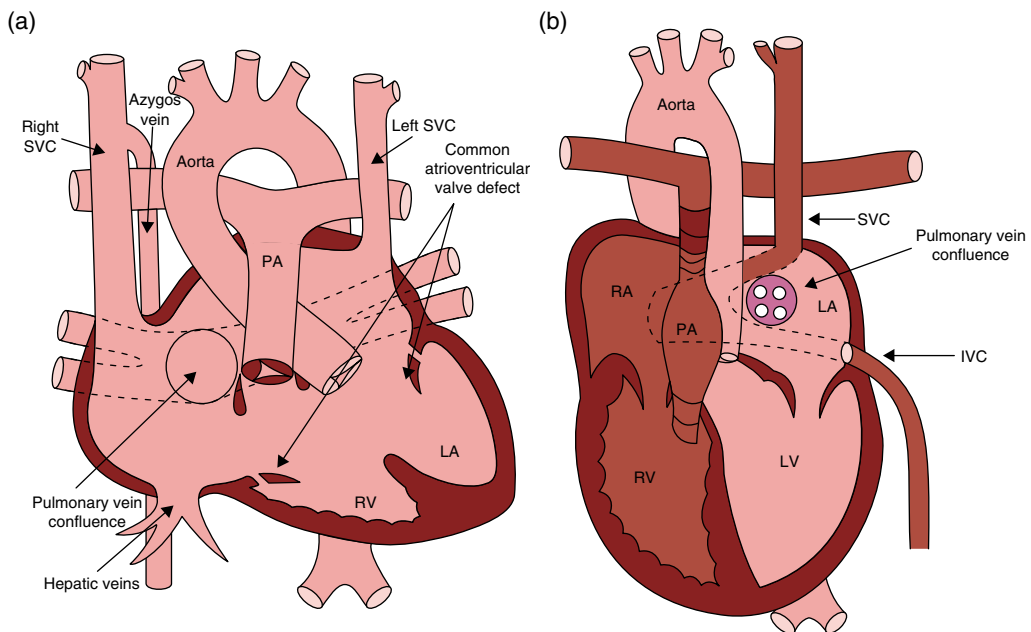
After the great vessel orientation is determined, the relationship of the vessels to the ventricles must be delineated. When the left ventricle is in continuity with the aorta and the right ventricle is in continuity with the PA the ventriculoarterial relationship is concordant. When the left ventricle is in continuity with the PA and the right ventricle is in continuity with the aorta, the ventriculoarterial relationship is discordant. Isomerism of the right atrial appendages is more frequently associated with discordant or double-outlet ventriculoarterial connections and with severe pulmonary stenosis or atresia. Isomerism of the left atrial appendages is more frequently associated with concordant ventriculoarterial connections and with subaortic obstruction and coarctation.

Wide variability in cardiac anatomy is the hallmark of heterotaxy, and while no 'typical' heterotaxy patient exists, the following very general characterizations are helpful:

- RAI (asplenia syndrome or Ivemark syndrome):
  - Bilateral right sidedness (two right lungs and two right atria).
  - Absence of spleen.
  - Midline liver.
  - Bilateral SVC.
  - Bilateral sinoatrial nodes

- Double-outlet right ventricle.
- Complete atrioventricular canal (CAVC) defect, often unbalanced with right ventricular dominance.
- Pulmonary stenosis or atresia.
- Total anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR).
- LAI (polysplenia syndrome):
  - Bilateral left sidedness (two left lungs, two left atria).
  - Multiple spleens.
  - Midline liver.
  - Interrupted IVC with azygos continuation to SVC.
- Hypoplastic or absent SA node and sinus node dysfunction; prone to complete heart block.
- CAVC defect.

Extracardiac anomalies include respiratory abnormalities, gastrointestinal abnormalities, hepatic dysfunction, splenic dysfunction, and associated midline defects. Heterotaxy is associated with ciliary dysfunction. The absence of coordinated cilia-generated waves to clear mucus results in recurrent respiratory tract, sinus, and ear infections. Respiratory complications resulting from ciliary dysfunction can significantly impact postoperative recovery.



**Figure 32.3** Examples of heterotaxy anatomy and repair. (a) Example of complex heterotaxy anatomy. Depicted here is levocardia, normally related great vessels, left atrial isomerism (polysplenia syndrome or bilateral left sidedness), bilateral SVCs without a connecting (innominate) vein, complete atrioventricular canal (CAVC) defect with almost complete absence of the intra-atrial septum and a very large ventricular septal defect, anomalous pulmonary venous connection to the right side of the atrium and drainage of the infra-hepatic portion of the IVC via the azygos vein to the right SVC. (b) Complete repair in a patient with CAVC, double outlet right ventricle (DORV), pulmonary stenosis (PS), total anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR) to the SVC, and drainage of the SVC and IVC to the morphologic left atrium (LA). Repair consists of CAVC repair, ventricular septal defect closure to baffle the left ventricle (LV) to the aorta, placement of a right ventricle (RV) to pulmonary artery (PA) conduit, anastomosis of the pulmonary venous confluence to the posterior wall of the LA, and a Mustard procedure to baffle caval blood across the tricuspid valve to the RV and pulmonary venous blood across the mitral valve to the LV. Also seen are stents placed in the SVC baffle and in the PA postoperatively in the cardiac catheterization laboratory. IVC, inferior vena cava; SVC, superior vena cava.

## Surgical Therapy

Single-ventricle palliation of patients with heterotaxy is challenging due to the constellation of cardiac abnormalities that accompany the syndrome. A subset of patients may

be amenable to biventricular repair. This is a particularly challenging pathway given the constellation of lesions and abnormal venous connections that must be corrected. An example of a typical complicated repair is illustrated in Figure 32.3b.



## 33

# Ebstein Anomaly

## Introduction

Ebstein anomaly is an uncommon disorder occurring in about three to five babies in 100 000 live births, and accounts for 0.38–0.50% of all congenital heart diseases. The incidence of Ebstein anomaly in the fetus is higher due to the fact that the fetal form is generally very severe and easily detected, whereas milder forms may not be detected until late childhood or adolescence. Ebstein anomaly is associated with Wolff–Parkinson–White (WPW) syndrome.

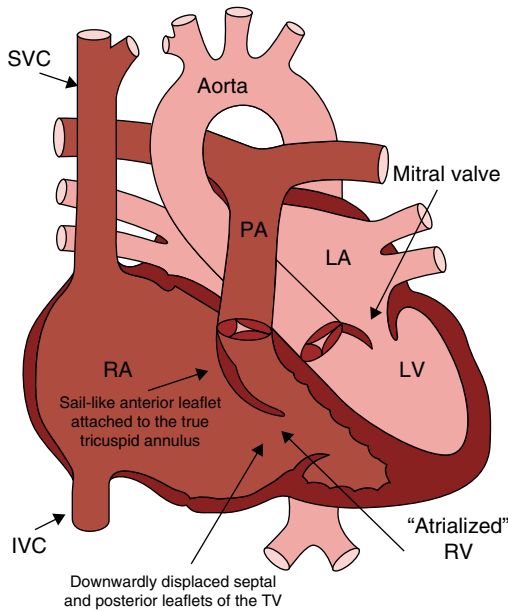
## Anatomy

Ebstein anomaly is characterized by downward displacement of the septal and posterior leaflet hinge points of the tricuspid valve (TV) from the atrioventricular junction into the right ventricular cavity (Figure 33.1). This is the result of adhesion of the leaflets to the underlying ventricular wall, with underdevelopment of the chordae and papillary muscles. The septal leaflet is commonly small and also dysplastic. The anterior leaflet is not adherent and the hinge point is located at the true TV annulus. The anterior leaflet, however, is elongated ('sail-like'), malformed, may have multiple fenestrated orifices, and has abnormal chordal attachments. As a consequence of these changes the true TV annulus is dilated and there is atrialization of the right ventricular cavity. At the severe end of the spectrum the right ventricle consists of

only the trabecular and outflow portions. The TV orifice(s) is typically directed toward the right ventricular outflow tract (RVOT). The TV is usually regurgitant. There is a patent foramen ovale (PFO) or secundum atrial septal defect (ASD). Left ventricular geometry can be altered by leftward bowing of the ventricular septum.

## Physiology

There is a broad spectrum of physiology present in patients with Ebstein anomaly. In the mildest form, mild tricuspid regurgitation (TR), diminished right ventricular function, and/or atrial and re-entrant arrhythmias lead to disease detection in late childhood or adolescence. As the TR progresses and right ventricular function diminishes, there will be cyanosis due to right-to-left (R-L) physiologic shunting at the PFO or ASD secondary to elevated right atrial pressures. In the severest form, the presence of severe TR and a small poorly contractile functional right ventricle will result in little or no antegrade pulmonary blood flow. These patients present *in utero* or immediately after birth with cardiomegaly, hydrops, and arrhythmia, with mortality rates as high as 48%. Many of these patients have a massive right atrium and atrialized right ventricular enlargement with the size of these two structures equal to or greater than the size of the other three cardiac chambers (left atrium, left ventricle, true right ventricle) combined. The heart can



**Figure 33.1** Ebstein anomaly of the tricuspid valve. RA, Right atria; LA, left atria; LV, left ventricle; RV, right ventricle; PA, pulmonary artery; Ao, aorta, TV, tricuspid valve.

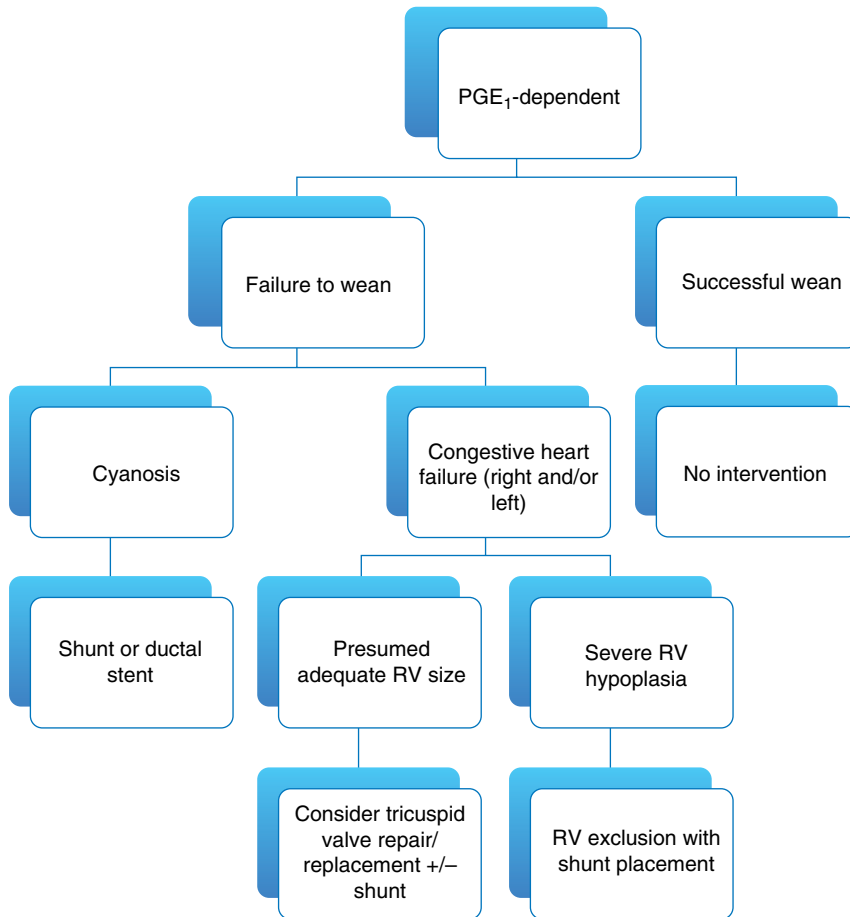
occupy the majority of the thoracic cavity resulting in lung hypoplasia. Pulmonary blood flow will be supplied by the ductus arteriosus and whatever antegrade flow across the RVOT is present; the patients will be prostaglandin E1 (PGE<sub>1</sub>)-dependent. There will be obligatory R-L physiologic shunting at the atria due to a very high right atrial pressure. These patients are cyanotic because the systemic cardiac output will be dependent on blood delivered to the left atrium and left ventricle across the atrial septum from the right atrium (deoxygenated) and from the pulmonary veins (oxygenated). Approximately 30% of patients presenting as neonates will have pulmonary regurgitation (PR). The latter develops as a consequence of severe TR, a lack of antegrade pulmonary valve flow, retrograde ductal flow, low right ventricular pressure, and the high pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) of the newborn. The presence of PR, TR and a ductus arteriosus creates a circular shunt physiology whereby the path of blood flow is aorta to ductus to pulmonary artery to right ventricle to right

atrium to left atrium to left ventricle to aorta. This results in a compromised systemic oxygen delivery and further volume overloading of the right atrium and atrialized right ventricle. This shunt physiology is associated with very high fetal and neonatal mortality.

## Surgical Treatment

Surgical therapy for children and adolescents involves the *cone procedure*, so named because the shape of the TV following the repair resembles a cone. In this procedure the septal, anterior and posterior tricuspid valve leaflets are delaminated from their attachments in the right ventricle, and the chordal attachments to the apical portion of the right ventricle are left. After the three leaflets are sutured together to form a cone-shaped structure that is tethered only by apical and some infundibular chords, they are re-attached at the native atrioventricular (AV) valve annulus. TV inflow will then be directed toward the right ventricular apex rather than the outflow tract. Plication of the thin inferior free wall of the right ventricle (atrialized portion) is also done. A TV annuloplasty ring may also be placed. The PFO or ASD may be left with a 4-mm fenestration if there is concern that a small R-L physiologic shunt will be necessary to augment cardiac output in the presence of right ventricular dysfunction. In instances where TV repair is adequate but right ventricle function or size is insufficient to support adequate cardiac output a 1½ ventricle repair as employed in PA/IVS patients (see Chapter 19) should be considered. This consists of a bidirectional Glenn (BDG) in conjunction with a cone procedure and a fenestrated ASD (R-L ‘pop-off’) or ASD closure. This repair allows all or most IVC blood to cross the tricuspid valve and be ejected by the right ventricle antegrade into the pulmonary bed, while SVC blood is delivered directly to the pulmonary arteries.

The management of neonates is challenging, and there is no clear consensus on



**Figure 33.2** Management algorithm for neonatal Ebstein anomaly. PGE<sub>1</sub>, prostaglandin E; RV, right ventricular.

optimal management strategy. An example of a decision tree used in the management of neonates who are PGE<sub>1</sub>-dependent to maintain pulmonary blood due to poor antegrade flow from a combination of TR, right ventricular hypoplasia and poor right ventricular function is illustrated in Figure 33.2.

### Anesthetic Management in Ebstein Anomaly

For children presenting for an elective cone procedure the primary management issues are TR, reduced right ventricular function, potential for R-L physiologic shunting at the

atrial level and, in some patients, dysfunction from an abnormal left ventricular geometry.

#### Goals

- Maintain sinus rhythm when possible.
- Maintain heart rate at a faster rate, better than slower rate.
- Decrease right ventricular afterload; increases are poorly tolerated. Decreasing the afterload will improve cardiac output by decreasing regurgitation, but the preload must be maintained.
- Maintain contractility; there may be significant right ventricular dysfunction.
- When pulmonary vascular resistance is high, or when right ventricular systolic dysfunction exists, the right ventricular

afterload reduction will improve the right ventricular and subsequently the left ventricular output. The concurrent systemic vasodilation also will directly reduce regurgitation.

- Avoid hypercarbia, hypoxemia and acidemia, which tend to cause pulmonary hypertension and may result in acute right ventricular decompensation.
- Cardiac output can be maintained at the expense of cyanosis in the presence of poor antegrade pulmonary blood flow (right ventricular dysfunction or high PVR) if there is significant R-L physiologic shunting at the atrial level.

Neonates with Ebstein anomaly presenting for surgery are critically ill. In the absence of antegrade pulmonary blood flow they have ductal-dependent, single-ventricle physiology that is complicated by the presence of massively dilated, mechanically ineffective right-heart structures (right atrium and atrialized right ventricle). They are dependent on mechanical ventilation managed to minimize mean airway pressure so as not to mechanically impede any antegrade pulmonary blood flow. The presence of lung hypoplasia can make the achievement of adequate alveolar ventilation at a low mean airway pressure difficult. These neonates are usually sedated and paralyzed to facilitate mechanical ventilation and to reduce systemic oxygen consumption in the setting of marginal systemic oxygen delivery. Neonates with ductal-dependent pulmonary blood flow must have ductal patency maintained with PGE<sub>1</sub>. Neonates with antegrade pulmonary blood

flow may be able to be weaned off PGE<sub>1</sub> to allow ductal closure or reduction in ductal size. In all likelihood they will be receiving inhaled NO to reduce PVR and promote antegrade flow.

## Post-CPB Management

Repaired tricuspid valves may exhibit some residual mild TR and tricuspid stenosis (TS). Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) or epicardial echocardiography is essential in evaluating valvular repairs. In the absence of significant residual TR or TS, the management of patients having undergone the cone procedure will be dictated by the size and pressure-generating capacity of the true right ventricle. It is necessary to maintain right ventricular contractile function and to reduce the PVR. Inotropic support may be necessary. Dopamine 5–10  $\mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$  is a reasonable choice, and milrinone 0.5–1.0  $\mu\text{g kg}^{-1} \text{ min}^{-1}$  may also be employed. However, milrinone's weak inotropic properties and its potent effects on systemic vascular resistance (SVR) limit the effectiveness of this drug. Mechanical ventilation should be managed to avoid hypercarbia and to minimize mean airway pressure so as not to mechanically impede antegrade pulmonary blood flow.

Neonates undergoing aortopulmonary shunt insertion (modified Blalock–Taussig shunt) and ductus arteriosus ligation are managed according to the principles outlined in Chapter 24.

## Index

- 22q11.2 deletion syndrome  
24–5, 26, 97, 131, 187  
*see also* DiGeorge syndrome  
definition 24–5, 26
- a**
- Abiomed AB5000 (pneumatic)  
VAD 63
- Abiomed BVS 5000  
(pneumatic) VAD 63
- ABO compatibility  
heart transplants 199–203,  
208, 219  
lung transplants 219
- ACE inhibitors 25, 30, 95–6,  
212
- acetylcholine 6–7, 213–15
- acetylcysteine 221–2
- acid–base status 34, 53–5,  
56–7, 176–80
- acidemia 119–21, 122, 242
- acidosis 4, 19, 80, 109–11,  
134, 151, 164, 178, 180,  
221–8
- ACT *see* activated clotting time
- activated clotting time  
(ACT) 57–8, 61–2
- acyanotic lesions 18
- adenosine 28, 215
- administration, medications  
27–9, 36, 57–8, 70–1,  
95–6, 134, 155
- adult structure correspondences,  
embryologic structures  
4–6
- adult/pediatric differences  
4–8, 53–5
- afterload mismatch, neonatal/  
adult comparisons in  
myocardial performance  
7–8, 208–9, 241
- air entrainment 51–3
- air-trap filters in IV lines 27,  
51–3, 227
- airway equipment 27, 242
- airway management 27,  
35–6, 64–5, 86, 191, 242
- akinetetic areas 42–3
- albumin 137–8
- ALCAPA *see* anomalous left  
coronary artery from the  
pulmonary artery
- alcohol abuse, environmental  
factors causing CHD 3,  
24, 201
- alkalosis 19, 168
- allergies 23
- allograft replacement 115,  
207–9, 212–13, 226
- alpha-stat management 56–7
- alveolar ventilation 4–5, 7,  
20, 60–2, 227–9
- amiodarone 28
- Amplatzer 70
- anaerobic metabolism 8
- analgesics 53–4, 64–5  
*see also* pain management
- anastomosis repairs 100,  
109–11, 134–7, 142–3,  
156, 162–6, 171–2,  
182–3, 189–90, 205–15,  
219–29  
*see also*  
Damus–Kaye–Stansel...
- anatomic coronary artery  
lesions, myocardial  
ischemia 22
- anatomic coronary  
lesions 22, 44–5
- anatomic shunts 9, 10, 12,  
15–18, 41, 46–8, 89–92,  
104–6, 108–11, 149–60  
*see also* complex...; shunts;  
simple...  
background 9, 10, 12,  
15–18, 46–8, 89–92,  
104–6, 108–11, 149–60  
definition 10  
types 9, 15–18, 89
- anatomy  
*see also individual specific  
lesions*  
coronary anatomy 43–5
- anemia 23–4, 25, 54–5
- anesthesiologists  
challenges 9, 27, 39, 220  
psychological  
considerations 27
- anesthetic induction 31,  
36–8, 53–4, 64–5, 70–1,  
75, 81–2, 86, 91, 95–6,  
101, 105–6, 110, 115,  
119–20, 122–3, 137–8,  
155, 167, 171, 176–7, 190,  
202–5, 224–5

- anesthetic induction (*cont'd*)  
*see also individual specific lesions*  
 intramuscular induction 37  
 intravenous induction 36–7  
 masks 36–7  
 ventricular assist devices (VADs) 64–5
- anesthetic maintenance 31, 36–8, 39–50, 70–1, 75, 81–2, 86, 91, 95–6, 101, 105–6, 110, 116, 119–20, 122–3, 137, 155, 167, 171, 176–7, 190, 202–5, 224–5  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- anesthetic management 3, 9, 27–31, 36–8, 53–5, 70–1, 75, 81–2, 86, 91, 95–6, 101, 105–6, 109–10, 114–15, 118–19, 122–3, 129, 137–8, 143, 146, 155, 166–7, 171, 176–7, 180, 183, 190, 192–4, 197, 202–5, 221–9, 232, 241–2  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) 53–5, 64–5, 115, 202–3
- equipment 27, 31–5, 54–5
- goals 81, 86, 91, 105, 109–10, 114–15, 118–19, 122, 129, 137, 155, 166–7, 171, 176–7, 183, 190, 197, 221, 241–2
- heart transplants 202–5, 215, 221–9
- Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) 101, 137–8
- ventricular assist devices (VADs) 62–5
- aneurysms 24, 42–3, 80, 82, 146, 205–7
- angina 28, 210
- angiographic data, interpretation of catheterization data 26, 39–41, 43–5, 46–50, 141, 192
- annuloplasty 122
- anomalous left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery (ALCAPA) 22, 231–2
- anterior leaflets 117–23, 234–6, 239–42
- antibodies 64
- anticoagulation  
*see also activated clotting time; heparin*  
 background 25–6, 57–8, 61, 118  
 protamine reversal 58
- antifibrinolytics 65, 202–5, 225–9
- antihypertensives 212
- antithymocyte globulin (ATG) 213, 228–9
- anxiety 64–5
- aorta 4–5, 9–12, 40–1, 73–5, 77–82, 89–92, 103–6, 113–16, 121, 131–40, 141–6, 147–60, 161–80, 181–5, 187–90, 206–15, 220–9, 236–8, 240–2  
*see also coarctation...; truncus arteriosus*
- aortic aneurysm 24, 42–3, 80, 82, 146, 205–7
- aortic arches 4–5, 12–13, 24–5, 53, 57, 77–82, 103–6, 131–40, 142, 145–6, 150–60, 161, 181–5, 187–90, 191–4  
*see also interrupted...; vascular rings*
- aortic cross-clamps 51–3, 80–2, 123, 156, 159–60, 205–15, 219–29
- aortic diastolic pressure 21, 37–8, 39–41, 70–1
- aortic pressure  
 waveforms 41–3, 70–1
- aortic saturation 12–15, 32–4, 37–8, 45–8, 200–15
- background 12–15, 32–4, 37–8, 45–8, 200–15  
 definition 12, 15
- aortic valve regurgitation (AR) 41, 50, 114, 121
- aortic valve stenosis (AS) 113–16, 161, 181–5, 200–15
- aortography 50
- aortopulmonary shunt 185, 242
- aortopulmonary window (AP) 73–5
- aortotomy 116
- AP *see* aortopulmonary window
- apnea 150–1
- AR *see* aortic valve regurgitation
- Ardnt blockers 222–4
- arrhythmias  
 background 24, 25, 28, 92, 96, 139, 157, 175–80, 202–5, 212–13  
 heart transplants 202–5, 212–13
- arterial blood, fetal circulation 4–5
- arterial (Jatene) switch operation (ASO) 151–3, 156
- arterial line catheter  
 sizes 31–2, 54–5
- arterial line filters 52–3
- arterial saturation (SaO<sub>2</sub>)  
 background 12–15, 32–4, 37–8, 45–6, 47–8, 109–11, 132–40, 164–80, 187–90, 198, 200–15, 220–9  
 definition 12, 14–15
- arteries  
*see also individual types*  
 background 3–5, 21, 31–5, 45, 51–8, 59–65, 97–101  
 types 31, 45
- artificial hearts 202
- AS *see* aortic stenosis
- ascites 23

- ASDs *see* atrial septal defects
- ASO *see* arterial (Jatene) switch operation
- asphyxia 59
- aspiration risks 221
- associated abnormalities, congenital heart disease (CHD) 23–5
- atelectasis 19, 26, 65, 180
- ATG *see* antithymocyte globulin
- atrial anatomy, heterotaxy syndrome 233, 234
- atrial fibrillation 213
- atrial function, heart transplants 190, 211, 212
- atrial hypertension *see also individual specific lesions*  
background 35, 80, 190, 212  
heart transplants 190, 212
- atrial kick, definition 39, 139
- atrial septal defects (ASDs) 12, 13, 16, 18, 24, 25, 36, 38, 40–1, 80–2, 83–7, 93–6, 108–9, 125–9, 147–60, 170–80, 181–5, 195–8, 239–42  
*see also individual specific lesions; intraatrial septum; left...; right...*
- anatomy 83–5
- anesthetic management 86
- background 12, 13, 16, 18, 24, 25, 36, 38, 40–1, 80–2, 83–7, 93–6, 108–9, 125–9, 147–60, 170–80, 181–5, 195–8, 239–42
- catheterization 85–6
- definition 83, 108
- non-cardiac surgery 87
- physiology 85, 108
- post-CPB management 86–7
- surgical therapy/management 85, 185
- types 83–5, 93–6, 125, 239
- atrial septectomy 183
- atrial thrombus 205–7
- atrial-level switch procedures 153–4, 158–60  
*see also* Mustard...; Senning...
- atrioventricular canal defects (AVCs) 16, 25, 93–6, 97, 100, 121  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- anatomy 93–4
- anesthetic management 95–6
- background 93–6, 97, 100, 121
- definition 93
- non-cardiac surgery 96
- physiology 94–5, 99–100
- post-CPB management 96
- Rastelli attachments 93–5, 100
- surgical therapy/management 95
- atrioventricular groove (AV) 43–5, 49–50, 83–5, 89–96, 100, 116, 139, 158, 175–80, 184–5, 200–15, 234–8, 239–42
- atrioventricular valves (AVs) 93–6, 100, 116, 158, 184–5, 200–15, 234–8, 239–42
- atropine 28, 213–14
- autonomic nervous system heart transplants 210  
neonatal/adult comparisons in myocardial performance 7–8
- AV *see* atrioventricular groove
- AVCs *see* atrioventricular canal defects
- axillary arteries 40–1, 62
- azathioprine 213–14
- azygous veins 12, 171, 234–8
- b**
- B-natriuretic peptide (BNP) 63
- balloon angioplasty 26, 189
- balloon atrial septostomy (BAS) 150–60, 163–6
- balloon coarctation interventions 80–1
- balloon dilation/ stenting 111, 114, 127–8, 136, 184–5, 241
- balloon septostomy 26, 150–60
- balloon valvuloplasty 26, 185
- baroreceptor responses, transplanted hearts 210
- barotrauma 27
- BAS *see* balloon atrial septostomy
- basiliximab 214
- benzodiazepines 37–8, 70–1, 81–2, 120, 167, 171, 190, 202–5  
*see also* midazolam
- Berlin Heart EXCOR VAD 62–3, 64
- Berlin Heart Incor. (axial) 63
- berry aneurysms 82
- beta-adrenergic antagonists 214–15
- beta-adrenergic catecholamines 7–8, 134, 203–5, 210–15
- beta-blockers 82, 115
- biatrial heart transplant technique 205–7, 211
- bicaval cannulas 205–7
- bicaval heart transplant technique 205–7, 219–20
- bicitra antacid 221
- bidirectional Glenn shunt (BDG) 36, 127–8, 161–2, 169–73, 176–80, 181, 183, 197  
*see also* hemi-Fontan procedure; superior cavopulmonary shunt
- bidirectional shunting 15–16, 36, 47–8, 94–6, 104–6, 127–8, 161–2, 169–73, 176–80, 181

- bilateral sequential single-lung transplants (BSSLTs) 217, 220–9
- BiVAD 62, 65
- biventricular conversion 185
- biventricular repairs 12, 65, 101, 128, 161, 184–5, 238
- bladder 5
- bladders 59–62
- Blalock–Taussig shunt (BTS) 16, 24, 31, 51–3, 127–8, 135–6, 143, 160–6, 181–3, 197–8, 242  
definition 24, 135
- Bland–White–Garland syndrome *see* anomalous left coronary artery from the pulmonary artery
- blood bank 63–4
- blood gas  
management 55–7, 101  
*see also* electrochemical neutrality
- blood pressure 23–4, 31, 36–7, 54–5, 65, 70–1, 81–2, 115–16, 168–80, 185, 190, 215  
*see also individual specific lesions*  
age-related effects 23, 90  
congestive heart failure 23
- blood pressure cuffs 31, 54–5, 81, 190
- blood pressure  
monitoring 23–4, 31, 54–5, 65, 70–1, 81–2
- blood urea nitrogen (BUN) 63
- blood viscosity 25–6
- blood volumes 25, 53–5, 166–80
- BO *see* bronchiolitis obliterans
- body surface area (BSA) 46
- body weight factors  
heart transplants 201, 222  
lung transplants 219, 222
- 'borderline' left heart 184–5
- BOS *see* bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome
- bovine jugular veins, Melody valve 136
- brachial arteries 31–5, 40–1, 220–9
- brachiocephalic trunk 191–4  
*see also* innominate artery
- bradycardia 36, 114–15, 122, 162, 204–5, 214, 215
- bradykinin 7
- brain death, donors 207–8
- brain emboli 34–5, 60–2, 85–6, 143
- bridge-to-bridge indications, ventricular assist devices (VADs) 62
- bronchial blockers 222–3
- bronchial vein blood 51–8
- bronchiolitis obliterans (BO) 228–9
- bronchiolitis obliterans syndrome (BOS) 228–9
- bronchitis 201
- bronchopulmonary dysplasia (BPD) 69, 218
- bronchoscopes 222–3
- bronchoscopies 192–4
- BSA *see* body surface area
- BSSLTs *see* bilateral sequential single-lung transplants
- BTS *see* Blalock–Taussig shunt
- bulboventricular foramens (BVF) 13
- bulbus cordis 4–5
- C**
- C-TGV *see* congenitally corrected transposition of the great vessels
- calcineurin inhibitors,  
background 212, 214
- calcium 20, 212–15
- calcium gluconate 28
- calcium-entry  
blockers 212–15
- cAMP *see* cyclic adenosine monophosphate
- canal-type VSDs 89–92
- cancers 199, 201, 213, 219
- cannulas 51–8, 59–65, 189–90, 205–15, 220–9  
gravity drainage 51–3  
problems 61
- capnography 54–5
- carbohydrates 8
- carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>) 31–2, 51–8, 59–65, 185, 225–7, 229
- cardiac allograft vasculopathy (CAV), heart  
transplants 212–13
- cardiac amyloidosis 201
- cardiac index (CI) 48, 226–9
- cardiac looping,  
embryology 3
- cardiac MRI scans 25, 26, 50, 100, 141, 184–5, 191–2
- cardiac output determination (CO)  
background 45–6, 48, 63–4, 90–2, 109–10, 114–15, 134, 177, 179, 203–15, 224–9, 242  
definition 114–15
- cardiac shunts'  
evaluations 46–8
- cardiac sidedness/asymmetry,  
embryology 3
- cardinal venous  
system 107–11
- cardiomegaly 25–6
- cardiomyopathy (CM) 24, 59, 199–215  
*see also* dilated...; heart transplants;  
hypertrophic...;  
restrictive...  
background 24, 59, 199–215  
physiology 199, 204, 210–12  
stages 199–200  
subclasses 199
- cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) 19, 25, 29, 31–5, 37, 51–8, 60, 64–5, 73–5, 80–2, 86–7, 91, 96, 105–6, 115, 135, 155,



- 162–3, 167–8, 189,  
202–7, 208–10, 219–29  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- adult/pediatric  
differences 53–5
- anesthetic  
management 53–5,  
64–5, 115, 202–3
- anticoagulation 57–8
- background 19, 25, 29,  
31–5, 37, 51–8, 60, 73–5,  
80, 86–7, 91, 96, 105–6,  
115, 135, 155, 162–3,  
167–8, 189, 202–7,  
208–10, 219–29
- blood gas  
management 55–7, 101
- CPB circuit 51–3, 54, 60,  
86–7
- flow rates 53–5
- gravity drainage 51–3, 57
- heart transplants 202–7,  
208–10
- indications 226–7
- monitoring 54–5, 57,  
209–10
- cardiopulmonary resuscitation  
(CPR) 59
- cardiotomy suction 52–3, 58
- cardiovascular  
development 3–8  
*see also congenital heart disease*
- cardiovascular  
physiology 3–21  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- carotid arteries 4–5, 57,  
59–62, 82, 103–6, 187–90
- catecholamines 7–8, 82,  
203–5, 210–15
- catheterization 23–4, 25–6,  
30–3, 39–50, 63–5, 70,  
74–5, 80–2, 85–6, 91,  
101, 105, 110–11, 114–15,  
118, 122, 126–8, 136, 143,  
151, 185, 189, 192, 202–5,  
209, 222–9
- see also individual specific lesions; interpretation...;*  
intravenous catheters  
needs 26  
placement 23–4, 30,  
31, 39–50, 70–1, 185,  
202–5, 221–2  
sizes 31–2  
studies 25, 26
- Tetralogy of Fallot  
(TOF) 136
- CAV *see* cardiac allograft  
vasculopathy
- CAVC *see* common  
atrioventricular canal;  
complete AVC
- CBC 25–6
- central cannulas 62, 202–5
- central line catheters 31–2,  
62, 75, 172, 202–5
- central shunts 135–6, 137
- central venous line, heparin  
administration 58
- central venous pressure  
(CVP)  
background 32–3, 48,  
54–5, 65, 138–9, 179–80,  
209, 215, 221–9  
monitoring 32–3, 54–5,  
65, 209, 215, 226
- CentriMag 62
- cerebral autoregulation  
56–7
- cerebral infarction and  
hemorrhage 61, 65, 208
- cerebral oxygen  
saturation 33–4, 56–7
- cerebral vascular disease 201
- CF *see* cystic fibrosis
- cGMP *see* cyclic guanosine  
monophosphate
- CHARGE association  
24–5, 73
- CHD *see* congenital heart  
disease
- chest X-rays 25–6, 39–50,  
219, 233
- Chiari network 4–5
- Children's Hospital  
Boston 69
- chordal shortening  
repairs 122
- chordal transfer repairs 122
- chronic obstructive  
pulmonary disease  
(COPD) 201, 224, 227,  
229
- ciliary dysfunction 237–8
- cineangiograms 26
- circuit thrombosis 60–1
- circumflex artery (CIRC) 45
- cis-atracurium 36–7
- cleft closure repairs 122
- clinical history, preoperative  
evaluations 23, 25,  
27, 30
- clubbing, congestive heart  
failure 23
- CM *see* cardiomyopathy
- coagulation profiles 25
- coarctation of the  
aorta 77–82, 103,  
182–5, 187–90  
anatomy 77–9  
anesthetic  
management 81–2  
background 77–82, 103,  
182–5, 187  
catheterization 80–2  
definition 77  
non-cardiac surgery 82  
physiology 77–80  
surgical therapy/  
management 80–2,  
182–3
- coils 70
- Collett and Edwards  
classifications, truncus  
arteriosus (TA) 103–4
- common atrioventricular  
canal (CAVC) 16, 25,  
179
- complete AVC  
(CAVC) 93–6, 237–8
- complete-obstruction  
complex anatomic  
shunts 15–17

- complex anatomic  
 shunts 15–17, 141–3,  
 148–60  
*see also* anatomic shunts;  
 Tetralogy of Fallot  
 definition 15–17
- conal morphology  
*see also* distal...  
 double-outlet right ventricle  
 (DORV) 97–101
- conduction defects 92
- cone procedure 240–1
- congenital diaphragmatic  
 hernia 59
- congenital heart disease  
 (CHD) 3–38, 48–50, 59,  
 69, 77, 83, 89, 91, 93, 97,  
 103, 107, 125, 131, 136,  
 145, 147, 181, 187, 195,  
 199–215, 217–18, 233,  
 239  
*see also* intraoperative  
 management;  
 preoperative evaluations  
 associated  
 abnormalities 23–5  
 diagnosis 23–30  
 environmental factors 3  
 etiology 3  
 genetic predisposition 3  
 important concepts 9–22  
 pathophysiology 3–22, 26  
 pregnancy tests 26  
 statistics 3–7, 9, 69, 77, 83,  
 89, 93, 97, 103, 107, 125,  
 131, 136, 145, 147, 181,  
 187, 195, 199–203, 233,  
 239  
 types 9–22
- Congenital Heart Surgery  
 Nomenclature and  
 Database Project 97
- congenitally corrected  
 transposition of the great  
 vessels (C-TGV)  
*see also* transposition of the  
 great arteries  
 anatomy 157–8  
 background 157–60  
 definition 157  
 physiology 158  
 surgical therapy/  
 management 158–60
- congestive heart failure  
 (CHF) 91, 95, 104–5,  
 121, 132, 151–3, 159–60,  
 197, 241
- conotruncal anomalies  
 24–5  
*see also* Tetralogy of Fallot;  
 truncus arteriosus
- conoventricular  
 septum 97–101, 103
- continuous positive airway  
 pressure (CPAP) 222–9
- conventional ultrafiltration  
 (CUF) 55
- cooling and rewarming 37–8
- cor triatriatum 117–21
- coronary anatomy  
 background 43–5, 97–8  
 coronary arterial supply  
 overview 45
- coronary angiography 43–5,  
 46–50, 141
- coronary arteries 22, 45,  
 97–8, 126–9, 147–60,  
 200–15, 231–2
- coronary artery bypass  
 grafting (CAGB) 232
- coronary collaterals 45,  
 80–2, 103–6, 141–3,  
 148–60
- coronary ostia 21, 43–5,  
 126–9
- coronary perfusion pressure  
 (CPP)  
 background 20, 53–5, 115,  
 164–80, 183–5, 188–90  
 definition 20
- coronary sinus (CS) 4–5,  
 83–7, 99, 107–11, 234–8  
*see also* atrial...; sinus  
 venosus...
- coronary sinus defects 83–5,  
 234–8
- coronary vascular reserve  
 (CVR) 21, 52–3
- corticosteroids 212–15,  
 228–9
- cough reflexes, heart–lung  
 transplants (HLTs) 228
- coventricular VSDs  
 89–92
- CPAP *see* continuous positive  
 airway pressure
- CPP *see* coronary perfusion  
 pressure
- creatinine 63–4
- crux cordis 43–5
- crystalloid priming  
 solutions 54–5, 134
- CS *see* coronary sinus
- CT scans 191, 192
- CUF *see* conventional  
 ultrafiltration
- custom tubing packs 52–8
- CVR *see* coronary vascular  
 reserve
- cyanosis 18, 23, 25–6, 29, 36,  
 104, 113–16, 131–40, 160,  
 191, 200–15, 241  
 background 23, 25–6, 29,  
 36, 104, 113–16, 131–4,  
 160, 191, 200–15, 241  
 diagnosis 23, 104, 241
- cyanotic lesions 18, 36,  
 132–4
- cyclic adenosine  
 monophosphate  
 (cAMP) 20
- cyclic guanosine  
 monophosphate  
 (cGMP) 20
- cyclosporine 212–14
- cystic fibrosis (CF) 217–19,  
 221–2, 224
- cytomegalovirus (CMV) 212,  
 229
- d**
- D-TGA 147–60, 163–6  
*see also* transposition of the  
 great arteries
- DA *see* ductus arteriosus
- daclizumab 214
- Dacron patch aortoplasty 80

- Damus–Kaye–Stansel anastomosis (DKS) 101, 162–6, 182–3, 189
- DCM *see* dilated cardiomyopathy
- de-airing needs, heart transplants 209
- decannulation problems 61–2
- deep hypothermic circulatory arrest (DHCA) 29, 33–5, 57, 167–8, 205–15, 219–20  
*see also* hypothermia
- background 29, 33–5, 57, 167–8, 219–20
- definition 57
- dehydration 29
- demerol 215
- deoxyhemoglobin 23–4
- dependent shunts, definition 15
- desflurane 36
- dextro (D) 13
- dextrocardia, definition 233–4
- dextrose 29
- DHCA *see* deep hypothermic circulatory arrest
- diabetes environmental factors causing CHD 3
- heart transplant contraindications 201
- diagnosis  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- congenital heart disease (CHD) 23–30
- cyanosis 23, 104, 241
- respiratory tract infections 23, 26
- diaphoresis 73
- diastolic function impairments, heart transplants 208–9, 211
- diastolic pressure 21, 26, 36–8, 39–50, 70–1, 90–2, 111, 115, 134–40, 166–80, 183–5, 204–15  
*see also* aortic...; coronary perfusion pressure; pulmonary artery...; ventricular end...
- DiGeorge syndrome 24–5, 73, 131, 187
- digoxin 25, 30, 213–14
- dilated cardiomyopathy (DCM) 199, 203–5
- dilution effects on blood volume 25, 53–5
- DILV *see* double-inlet left ventricle
- distal conus 97–101  
*see also* conal morphology
- distal limb ischemia 31
- diuretics 25–6, 30
- diverticular disease 201
- DLTs *see* double-lung transplants
- dobutamine 138, 156
- donors brain death 207–8
- double-lung transplants (DLTs) 218–20
- heart transplants 199–203, 206–9
- heart–lung transplants (HLTs) 219–20
- living donor lobar lung transplants (LDLLTs) 218
- single-lung transplants (SLTs) 218–20
- dopamine 8, 28, 86, 95–6, 106, 110, 115–16, 119–20, 138, 167, 172–3, 177, 180, 190, 205, 224–5, 226–7, 242
- Doppler probes 34–5, 50, 54–5, 57, 117–18, 120  
*see also* echocardiography
- dorsalis pedis arteries 31–5
- DORV *see* double-outlet right ventricle
- doses, medications 27–9, 36–7, 57–8, 62, 105, 110, 115, 137–8, 203–5, 226–7
- double switch procedure 158–60
- double-inlet left ventricle (DILV) 13
- double-lumen endotracheal tubes 224
- double-lung block 220
- double-lung transplants (DLTs) 217–29  
*see also* heart–lung transplants; single-lung transplants
- anesthetic management 221–9
- approaches 217
- background 217–29
- definition 217
- donors 218–20
- indications 217–18
- non-cardiac surgery 227–9
- operating procedures 219–20
- patient positioning 219–20, 224
- post-CPB management 227–9
- postoperative care 227–9
- preoperative evaluations 221–2
- rejections 228–9
- size issues 219
- statistics 217–18, 228, 229
- double-outlet right ventricle (DORV) 97–101, 147–60, 194, 237  
*see also* Tetralogy of Fallot; transposition of the great arteries
- anatomy 97–9
- anesthetic management 101
- background 97–101, 147–60, 194, 237
- catheterization 101
- conal morphology 97–101

- double-outlet right ventricle (DORV) (*cont'd*)  
 definition 97–8  
 immune system 219, 227–9  
 physiology 99–101  
 post-CPB management 101  
 surgical therapy/  
 management 99–101  
 types 97–9
- drainage 51–3, 57, 107–11, 226
- drugs  
*see also* medications  
 environmental factors  
 causing CHD 3, 201
- Duchenne muscular dystrophy 24
- ductal-dependent circulation, definition 11, 129
- ductus arteriosus (DA) 3–6, 11–12, 14–15, 18, 24, 41, 51–3, 69–71, 73, 77–80, 113–16, 126, 134–6, 141–3, 181–5, 187–90, 240–2  
*see also individual specific lesions*; ligamentum arteriosum; patent...  
 background 3–6, 11–12, 14–15, 41, 69–71, 77–80, 134–6, 141, 181–5, 187–90, 240–2  
 closure 5–6
- ductus venosus 3–6  
*see also* hepatic veins; ligamentum venosum; portal venous system  
 background 3–6  
 closure 6
- dyspnea 23
- dysrhythmias 24, 26, 28, 92, 96
- e**
- Ebstein anomaly  
*see also* tricuspid valve; Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome
- anatomy 239, 240  
 anesthetic  
 management 241–2  
 background 239–42  
 definition 239  
 management algorithm 240–1  
 physiology 239–40  
 post-CPB  
 management 242  
 surgical therapy/  
 management 240–1
- echocardiography 25–6, 35, 50, 63–5, 73, 82, 85–6, 91, 96, 101, 105, 110–11, 114–16, 120–1, 123, 126–8, 139–40, 141, 151–3, 156, 162–6, 171–3, 185, 190, 199–203, 209, 225–7, 233, 236, 242  
*see also* Doppler...; transesophageal...
- ECMO *see* extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
- edema 19, 23, 25, 28, 65, 80, 167–80, 190, 218–19, 226
- EDV *see* end-diastolic volume
- EF *see* ejection fraction
- EFE *see* endocardial fibroelastosis
- effective blood flow, definitions 10, 47–8
- effective pulmonary blood flow 10, 14–15, 35–8, 43, 46–8, 53, 57, 141–3, 150–60, 161–80, 195–8  
 background 10, 14–15, 35–6, 46–8, 53, 57, 150–60, 161–80, 195–8  
 definition 10, 47–8
- effective systemic blood flow 10, 15, 43, 46–8, 53, 108–11, 149–60, 164–80  
*see also* intercirculatory mixing  
 definition 10, 47–8, 108
- Ehlers–Danlos syndrome 24
- Eisenmenger’s syndrome 221
- ejection fraction (EF), definition 41–3
- elastin gene  
 microdeletion 113
- electrocardiograms (ECGs) 25–6, 28, 31, 41–3, 54–5, 86, 202–5, 212, 221–2
- electrochemical  
 neutrality 55–7  
*see also* blood gas management
- electrolytes 25–6
- Ellis–van Creveld syndrome 24
- emboli 34–5, 60–2, 85–6, 143
- embryologic structures 3–6
- embryology 3–4
- emphysema *see* chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
- en-bloc DLTs 217, 219–20
- end-diastolic volume (EDV) 41–3, 105–6, 115–16, 122–3, 208–11, 224–5
- end-organ dysfunction 62–3, 109, 151–60
- end-stage cardiac dysfunction  
 identification, heart transplants 199
- end-systolic volume (ESV) 208–9, 224–5
- end-tidal carbon dioxide (ETCO<sub>2</sub>)  
 background 31–2, 134–40, 167–80  
 monitoring 31–2
- endobronchial  
 intubation 222–4
- endocardial cushion defects  
*see* atrioventricular canal defects
- endocardial fibroelastosis (EFE) 184–5

- endocarditis prophylaxis 87
- endomyocardial biopsies 213, 215
- endothelial NO (eNOS) 20
- endotracheal tubes (ETTs) 27, 36, 192–4, 222–5  
*see also* airway management
- environmental factors causing CHD 3
- ephedrine 28, 215
- epicardial A-V sequential pacing 96, 242
- epinephrine 6, 28, 119–20, 208–15, 224–5, 226–7
- epoprostenol 20
- epsilon-aminocaproic acid 65
- EQUANOX 7600 NIRS 33
- erythrocytosis 25–6, 29
- esmolol 29, 115
- esophageal  
compression 191–4
- esophageal temperatures, monitoring 33, 54–5
- esophagus, vascular rings 191–4
- estimated blood volume (EBV) 53–5
- ESV *see* end-systolic volume
- ETCO<sub>2</sub> *see* end-tidal carbon dioxide
- etomidate 36, 86, 115, 122–3, 203–5, 224
- ETTS *see* endotracheal tubes
- Eustachian valve 4–5
- everolimus 214
- extracorporeal life support (ECLS) *see* extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
- extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62, 65, 134, 151–60, 227–9  
*see also* mechanical support devices  
common terminology 61
- definition 59–60
- device/patient complications 60–1
- indications 59
- intraoperative considerations 61–2
- modes of support 59–62
- relative contraindications 59
- f**
- facial dysmorphism 25
- Fallot, Etienne 131  
*see also* Tetralogy of Fallot
- fasting periods 180
- femoral arteries 31–5, 40–1, 134–40, 220–9
- femoral vein 39–40, 220–9
- fenestrated Fontan 176, 178–9, 181  
*see also* Fontan...
- fentanyl 36, 37, 70, 81–2, 95–6, 105, 110, 115, 138, 155, 214–15, 224
- fetal alcohol syndrome 24
- fetal channels, closure 4–5
- fetal circulation  
cardiovascular physiology 3–5  
course 4–5  
statistics 3–5
- fetal IVC blood 3–5  
*see also* inferior vena cava
- fetal shunts 4–5, 9–10
- fiberoptic bronchoscopes 222–3
- Fick method for cardiac output  
determination 45–6
- FIO<sub>2</sub> 12, 20, 34, 35, 47, 61, 95–6, 105, 166–80, 209, 219–29
- FloLAN 20
- fluid bolus 64–5
- fluid retention 150–1
- fluid therapy, preoperative evaluations 27, 29
- FO *see* foramen ovale
- Fogarty catheter 222–4
- Fontan procedure 12, 18, 36, 127–8, 161, 172–9, 181–3, 195, 197  
anesthetic management 176–7, 197  
fenestrated Fontan 176, 178–9  
post-CPB management 177–9  
schematic 174
- foramen ovale (FO) 5–6, 13, 40–1, 83–5, 108–9, 125–9, 139, 147–60, 181–5, 195–8, 239–42  
*see also* fossa ovalis closure 6
- FORE-SIGHT laser instrument 34
- fossa ovalis 6, 83–7  
*see also* foramen ovale
- Frank-Starling mechanism 7
- Friedreich's ataxia 24
- functional resistance capacity (FRC) 166–7
- functional status, interpretation of catheterization data 25, 26
- g**
- genetic predisposition to CHD 3
- gingival hyperplasia 213
- glomerular filtration rate (GFR) 63
- glucose 29
- glycogen storage disease II 24
- glycopyrrolate 30, 37, 213–14
- Gore-Tex 136, 169–70, 183
- gravity drainage, cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) 51–3, 57
- Gross, Dr Robert 69
- group B streptococcal sepsis 59

growth inhibitions, congestive heart failure 23  
 guanylate cyclase 20

## **h**

halothane 36  
 HCM *see* hypertrophic cardiomyopathy  
 head circumferences, congestive heart failure 23  
 heart blocks 92, 96, 158–60, 208  
 heart failure (HF)  
*see also* cardiomyopathy; heart transplants  
 background 199–215  
 heart murmurs 25, 73  
 heart rates 21–23, 36–7, 45–6, 81–2, 105, 106, 109–10, 114–15, 118–21, 122, 138, 155–6, 190, 203–15, 241–2  
 age-related effects 23, 110, 209  
 heart transplants 210–11, 215  
 myocardial ischemia 21  
 optimal rates 209, 210  
 resting rates 209–11  
 heart transplants 28, 59, 62, 178, 199–215, 217, 221–9  
*see also* cardiomyopathy; heart–lung transplants  
 ABO compatibility 199–203, 208, 219  
 anesthetic management 202–5, 215, 221–9  
 arrhythmias 202–5, 212–13  
 atrial function 190, 211, 212  
 atrial hypertension 190, 212  
 autonomic nervous system 210  
 background 199–215, 217, 221–9  
 body weight factors 201, 222

cardiac allograft vasculopathy (CAV) 212–13  
 cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) 202–7, 208–10  
 catheterization 202–5, 209, 222–9  
 contraindications 199–201, 217  
 de-airing needs 209  
 diastolic function impairments 208–9, 211  
 donors 199–203, 206–9  
 drug responses 213–15  
 end-stage cardiac dysfunction identification 199  
 heart rates 210–11, 215  
 human lymphocyte antigen (HLA) 199–203, 208, 212, 219, 228–9  
 IgG therapy 201  
 immune system 199–203, 208, 212–15, 227–9  
 indications 199, 200  
 left ventricular systolic function 211  
 mechanical support devices 202–5, 209  
 monitoring 202–5, 209–10, 212–15, 221–2, 225–7  
 non-cardiac surgery 210–15, 227–9  
 operating procedures 205–7, 219  
 panel reactive antibody screen (PRA) 199–203, 208  
 physical examinations 202–3  
 physiology of the transplanted heart 210–11  
 post-CPB management 201–5, 207–9, 220, 227–9  
 postoperative periods 200–5, 207–9, 220–1, 227

premedications 202–5  
 preoperative evaluations 202, 221–2  
 pulmonary artery catheters (PACs) 202–3, 209  
 re-innervation issues 210  
 rejections 213–14  
 right ventricular afterload mismatch 208–9  
 right ventricular systolic function 211  
 sinus and atrioventricular node dysfunction 208  
 statistics 199–203, 212–13, 217, 229  
 sterility needs 202–5, 221  
 subacute bacterial endocarditis (SBE) 213  
 suture lines 206–7, 210  
 systolic dysfunction in the donor heart 207–8, 211, 213  
 termination of CPB 209–10  
 heart–lung block 219–29  
 heart–lung machines 52–3  
 heart–lung transplants (HLTs) 201, 217–29  
*see also* double-lung transplants; heart transplants; single-lung transplants  
 anesthetic management 221–9  
 contraindications 199–201, 217, 219  
 cough reflexes 228  
 definition 217  
 donors 219–20  
 indications 217–18  
 lung volumes 228  
 management problems 228–9  
 non-cardiac surgery 227–9  
 operating procedures 219–20  
 patient positioning 219–20, 224

- post-CPB
  - management 227–9
- postoperative care 227–9
- preoperative
  - evaluations 221–2
  - rejections 228–9
  - statistics 217–18, 228, 229
- HeartWare HVAD 62
- heat-exchanger units 52–3, 59–62
- height inhibitions, congestive heart failure 23
- hematocrit (Hct) 25, 54–5, 168
- hematoma 33
- hemi-Fontan procedure 183
  - see also* bidirectional Glenn shunt
- hemodilution 25, 53–5
- hemodynamics
  - background 7–8, 29, 41, 58, 61–2, 64–5, 91, 105–6, 108–11, 115, 122–3, 146, 179, 185, 199–215, 220–9
  - donors 199–203, 220
  - ‘vice’ problems 108
- hemoglobin 20, 23–4, 33–4
- hemolysis 60–1
- heparin 32–3, 52–3, 57–8, 61
  - see also* anticoagulation; unfractionated...
  - background 57–8, 61
  - dose response test (HDR) 57–8
  - protamine reversal 58
- hepatic dysfunction 62–3, 201
- hepatic transplants 201
- hepatic veins 3–5, 11, 107–11, 234–8
- hepatitis viruses 219
- hepatomegaly 23, 25
- Hepcon heparin management system (HMS) 57–8
- heterotaxy syndrome 12, 233–8
  - anatomy 233–5
  - atrial anatomy 233, 234
  - background 12, 233–8
  - definition 233
  - surgical therapy/management 238
  - venoatrial connections 233–4
  - ventricular anatomy 235–6
  - ventriculoarterial connections 236–7
- high-intensity transient signals (HITS) 34–5
- histamine 7
- HITS *see* high-intensity transient signals
- HIV/AIDS 219
- HLA *see* human lymphocyte antigen
- HLHS *see* hypoplastic left heart syndrome
- HLTs *see* heart–lung transplants
- HMS *see* Hepcon heparin management system
- Holt–Oram syndrome 24
- homograft 146
- hormones 4–5
- human lymphocyte antigen (HLA)
  - see also* panel reactive antibody screen
  - heart transplants 199–203, 208, 212, 219, 228–9
  - lung transplants 219, 228–9
- humidification 27
- Hunter, John 125
- hydralazine 29, 215
- hydrogen 55–6
- hydroxyl 56–7
- hyperacute rejection, heart transplants 208–9
- hypercapnia 180
- hypercarbia 4, 18, 19, 105–6, 119–22, 166–80, 221–8, 242
- hypercyanotic episodes (‘Tet spells’), Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) 132–4, 137
- hyperglycemia 29
- hyperinflation 19
- hyperlipidemia 212
- hyperpnea 132–4
- hyperthermia 81
- hypertrophic cardiomyopathy (HCM) 199, 203–5
- hyperventilation 19, 29, 134, 168
- hypocalcemia 25–6
- hypocarbica 19
- hypogastric artery 5
- hypoglycemia 26, 29
- hypokalemia 25
- hypokinesia areas 42–3, 65, 209, 226–7
- hyponatremia 25
- hypoplastic left heart syndrome (HLHS) 11, 13, 21, 32, 113–16, 161–80, 181–5
  - anatomy 181, 182
  - anesthetic management 183
  - background 11, 13, 21, 32, 113–16, 161–80, 181–5
  - ‘borderline’ left heart 184–5
  - definition 181–2
  - non-cardiac surgery 185
  - physiology 181–2
  - post-CPB management 183–5
  - surgical therapy/management 181–3
- hypoplastic ventricles 10–11, 77, 97–8, 113–16, 125–9, 142, 195–8, 240–2
- hypotension 28, 30, 64–5, 82, 110–11, 115–16, 119–20, 122–3, 138, 178–9, 188–90, 203–15, 220–9
- hypothermia 4, 29, 31, 33, 53–5, 56–7, 81–2, 180, 190, 205–7, 219–20
  - see also* deep hypothermic circulatory arrest; temperatures

- hypothermic procedures 29, 33–5, 57, 167–8, 205–15, 219–20
- hypoventilation 26, 36, 65, 168
- hypovolemia 64, 65
- hypoxemia 19, 36, 104, 119–22, 161, 179, 202–15, 221–8, 229, 242
- hypoxia 4, 7, 8, 19, 116, 132–4, 167, 180, 228–9
- hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction 7, 19, 116, 167
- i**
- IAA *see* interrupted aortic arch
- IAS *see* intraatrial septum
- idiopathic pulmonary arterial hypertension (IPAH) 217–18
- IgG therapy, heart transplants 201
- IL-2 214
- iliac artery occlusion 31
- iloprost 20
- imidazole buffering system 55–6
- immature myocardial metabolism, neonatal/ adult comparisons in myocardial performance 7–8
- immune system 64, 199–203, 208, 212–15, 219, 227–9
- immunodeficiency 25
- Impella 62
- incomplete autonomic innervations, neonatal/ adult comparisons in myocardial performance 7–8
- increased intraventricular dependence, neonatal/ adult comparisons in myocardial performance 7–8
- indexed pulmonary flow, definition 46, 48
- indexed systemic flow, definition 46, 48
- indomethacin 6
- infections 23, 26, 61–2, 201, 213, 219, 229
- inferior vena cava (IVC) 3–5, 12, 46–8, 51–8, 84–7, 94–6, 107–11, 128, 169–80, 205–15, 219–29, 234–8
- infundibular stenosis 17, 125, 128, 131–4, 137, 141–3
- inhalation anesthetics, common uses 115, 138, 176, 203–5
- inlet VSDs 89–92, 95–6
- innominate artery 57, 107–11, 187–90, 191–4, 237 *see also* brachiocephalic trunk
- innominate vein 107–11, 237
- inotropes 30, 61–2, 65, 86–7, 91–2, 95–6, 105–6, 110, 115–16, 120–1, 123, 138–9, 167–80, 205, 224–5, 242
- intensive care units (ICUs) 31, 38, 171
- intercirculatory mixing *see also* effective systemic blood flow; transposition of the great arteries background 9, 13–15, 47–8, 148–60 definition 13
- interpretation of catheterization data 25–6, 33–4, 39–50, 63–5, 90–2, 105, 202–5 *see also* catheterization angiographic data 25, 26, 39–41, 43–5, 46–50, 141, 192 background 25–6, 33–4, 39–50, 63–5, 90–2, 105, 202–5 cardiac output determination 45–6, 90–2 cardiac shunts' evaluations 46–8 coronary angiography 43–5, 46–50, 141 functional status 25, 26 intervention effects 26 left ventriculography 41–3, 50 left-heart catheterization 40–1, 50 pressure data 25, 26, 39–50 prior surgical interventions 25, 26 pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH) 18, 49–50, 94–6 pulmonary vascular anatomy assessments 48–50 resistances 48 right-heart catheterization 39–40, 50 saturation data 48 saturations 25–6, 33–4, 39–40, 45–8 valve lesions' assessments 50
- interrupted aortic arch (IAA) 12, 13, 187–90 anatomy 187–9 anesthetic management 190 background 13, 187–90 catheterization 189 definition 187 physiology 187–9 post-CPB management 190 surgical therapy/ management 189 types 187–9
- interstitial pulmonary edema 19, 167–8
- intervention effects, interpretation of catheterization data 26
- interventricular septum (IVS) 93–6, 125–9, 131–40, 147–8



- intra-arterial catheters  
   31–2, 75  
   *see also* catheterization;  
   *individual specific lesions*  
 intraatrial septum  
   (IAS) 83–7  
   *see also* atrial...  
 intracardiac baffles 100–1,  
   136, 153–4, 156, 169–80,  
   232, 238  
 intracardiac shunting 26, 48,  
   100–1, 138–9  
 intramuscular induction 37  
 intraoperative  
   management 27, 31–8,  
   61–2, 86–7, 95  
   *see also individual specific  
   lesions; surgical therapy/  
   management*  
   airway management 27,  
   35–6, 64–5  
   background 31–8, 61–2,  
   86–7, 95  
   definition 31  
   extracorporeal membrane  
   oxygenation (ECMO)  
   61–2  
   monitoring 31–5,  
   54–5, 57  
 intravascular ultrasound  
   (IVUS) 44–5, 212  
 intravenous catheters  
   (IVs) 27–30, 36–8,  
   70–1, 91, 202–5, 221–2  
   *see also* catheterization;  
   *individual specific lesions*  
 intravenous induction 36–7,  
   134, 137–8, 171, 202–5,  
   221–2  
 invasive line  
   placement 23–4, 30, 31,  
   39–50, 54–5, 70–1, 185,  
   202–5, 221–2  
   *see also* catheterization  
 INVOS 5100 NIRS 33  
 IPAH *see* idiopathic  
   pulmonary arterial  
   hypertension  
 iron deficiencies 25
- irritability symptoms,  
   congestive heart  
   failure 26  
 ischemia 9, 21–2, 31, 81,  
   113–16, 129, 138–9, 156,  
   166–80, 181–5  
   *see also* myocardial...; spinal  
   chord...  
 isoflurane 36–8, 71, 86  
 isoproterenol 28, 120–1,  
   210–15  
 Ivalon plug 70  
 IVC *see* inferior vena cava  
 IVUS *see* intravascular  
   ultrasound
- j**
- Jarvik 2000 Flowmaker  
   (axial) 63  
 Jervell and Lange Nielsen long  
   QT syndrome 24  
 JET *see* junctional ectopic  
   tachycardia  
 jitteriness symptoms,  
   congestive heart  
   failure 26  
 jugular thrombosis 32–3  
 jugular vein 32–3, 59–62,  
   172, 213  
 junctional ectopic tachycardia  
   (JET) 138–40
- k**
- ketamine 30, 37, 86, 91,  
   122–3, 138, 155, 202–5  
 kinetic-assisted venous  
   drainage 51–3  
 Konno procedure 189
- l**
- L-arginine 20  
 L-R shunts *see* left-to-right  
   shunts  
 L-TGA *see* levo transposition  
   of the great arteries  
 LA *see* left atrium  
 labetalol 29  
 laboratory data, preoperative  
   evaluations 25–6, 28
- lactate 8, 65  
 LAI *see* left atrial isomerism  
 LAO *see* left anterior oblique  
 laparoscopic gastrostomy  
   185  
 LAPs *see* left atrial pressure  
   waveforms  
 laryngeal nerve injury 71,  
   191–2  
 laryngoscopies 64, 203–15,  
   222–9  
 LDLLTs *see* living donor lobar  
   lung transplants  
 Lecompte maneuver 146,  
   151, 154–5, 157  
 left anterior descending artery  
   (LAD) 45, 148–60,  
   187–90, 194  
 left anterior oblique (LAO)  
   42–5  
 left aortic arch 192–4  
 left atrial isomerism  
   (LAI) 233–8  
 left atrial pressure waveforms  
   (LAPs) 41, 49–50, 96,  
   111, 120–1, 138–9,  
   172–80, 204–15  
 left atrium (LA) 4–5, 9–10,  
   13–14, 32–3, 41, 43–5,  
   46–53, 62, 83–7, 107–11,  
   120–3, 147–60, 181–5,  
   200–15, 219–29, 237–8,  
   240–2  
   *see also* atrial...; oblique  
   vein...; trabeculated...  
 left common carotid artery  
   (LCCA) 187–90  
 left heart  
   rehabilitation 184–5  
 left lung 5  
 left main coronary artery  
   (LMCA) 45, 231–2  
 left main stem  
   bronchus 108–11, 222  
 left posterolateral  
   thoracotomy 191–4  
 left pulmonary artery  
   (LPA) 169–80, 194,  
   231–2

- left subclavian artery  
(LSCA) 187–90, 194
- left superior vena cava  
(LSVC) 85–7
- left ventricle (LV) 4–5, 7–8,  
13–15, 25, 41–3, 45,  
49–58, 62–5, 89–92,  
105–6, 108–11, 113–16,  
117–23, 147–60, 181–5,  
187–90, 196–8, 200–15,  
221–8, 236–8, 240–2  
*see also* smooth part...;  
trabeculated part...;  
ventricular...
- left ventricular ejection  
fraction (LVEF) 217–29
- left ventricular hypertrophy  
(LVH) 8, 24
- left ventricular outflow tract  
(LVOT) 77, 80, 99–101,  
113–16, 147–60, 170–80,  
184, 187–90  
*see also* supravalvar  
stenosis
- anatomy 113, 147–8
- anesthetic  
management 114–15
- background 77, 80,  
99–101, 113–16, 147–60,  
170–80, 187–90
- catheterization 114–15
- definition 113
- physiology 113–14
- post-CPB  
management 115–16
- surgical therapy/  
management 114
- left ventricular pressure  
waveforms (LVPs) 41–3,  
64–5, 96
- left ventricular systolic  
function, heart  
transplants 211
- left ventricular VAD  
(LVAD) 62–5
- left ventricular volume  
overload 121–2
- left ventriculography  
41–3, 50
- left-atrial–axillary artery VAD,  
historical  
background 62
- left-dominant coronary  
anatomy system 43–5
- left-heart catheterization  
40–1, 50
- left-to-right shunts (L-R  
shunts) 9–11, 13, 46–8,  
49–53, 69–71, 73–5,  
84–5, 86–7, 90–2, 95–6,  
108–11, 132–40, 149–60,  
181–5, 187–90  
*see also individual specific  
lesions*; shunts
- definition 9–10
- left-ventricular end-diastolic  
pressure (LVEDP) 41–3,  
113–16, 211
- left-ventricular end-diastolic  
volume (LVEDV) 41–3,  
105–6, 115–16, 122–3,  
208–11, 224–5
- Leopard syndrome 24
- lethargy 63
- leukocytes 64
- leukotrienes 7
- levo transposition of the great  
arteries (L-TGA) 163–6  
*see also* transposition of the  
great arteries
- levocardia, definition 233,  
237
- lidocaine 28
- ligamentum arteriosum 6,  
191–4  
*see also* ductus arteriosus;  
vascular rings
- ligamentum teres 6  
*see also* umbilical vein
- ligamentum venosum 6  
*see also* ductus venosus
- light-emitting diodes 33–4
- limited preload reserve,  
neonatal/adult  
comparisons in  
myocardial  
performance 7–8
- lipophilicity 20
- liver 5, 62–3, 236–8
- living donor lobar lung  
transplants (LDLLTs) 218
- LMCA *see* left main coronary  
artery
- location methods,  
shunts 46–7
- long QT syndromes 24, 28
- LPA *see* left pulmonary artery
- LSVC *see* left superior vena  
cava
- lung volumes  
heart–lung transplants  
(HLTs) 228
- pulmonary vascular  
resistance (PVR) 19, 20
- lungs 3–5, 19–20, 59–62,  
95–6, 134, 167, 179,  
217–29, 236–8  
*see also* double-lung  
transplants; heart–lung  
transplants; single-lung  
transplants
- LV *see* left ventricle
- LVAD *see* left ventricular VAD
- LVEDP *see* left-ventricular  
end-diastolic pressure
- LVEDV *see* left-ventricular  
end-diastolic volume
- LVEF *see* left ventricular  
ejection fraction
- LVH *see* left ventricular  
hypertrophy
- LVOT *see* left ventricular  
outflow tract
- LVPs *see* left ventricular  
pressure waveforms
- lymphocytes 199–203, 208,  
212, 214, 228–9
- lysine analog  
antifibrinolytics 65,  
202–5, 225–9
- m**
- magnesium 28
- main stem bronchus  
background 108–11,  
222
- malnutrition 25

- MAPCAs *see* multiple  
 aortopulmonary collateral arteries
- Marfan syndrome 24
- Masimo O3 NIRS 33
- masks 27, 35–8  
*see also* airway management
- MCA *see* middle cerebral artery
- mean arterial blood pressure (MAP) 48, 54–5
- mechanical support devices 23–4, 27, 31–6, 51–4, 59–65, 202–5, 209, 242  
 background 51–4, 59–65, 202–5, 242  
 extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62, 65, 134  
 heart transplants 202–5, 209  
 ventricular assist devices (VADs) 62–5
- mechanical ventilation 27, 35–6, 65
- meconium aspiration syndrome 59
- medial umbilical ligaments 6  
*see also* umbilical arteries
- medications 27–30, 36–8, 62, 70–1, 81–2, 86, 95–6, 106, 110, 115, 119–20, 122–3, 134, 137–8, 155, 179–80, 190, 202–15, 221, 242  
*see also* anesthetic...; drugs; *individual specific lesions*
- administration 27–9, 36, 57–8, 70–1, 95–6, 134, 155
- doses 27–9, 36–7, 57–8, 62, 105, 110, 115, 203–5, 226–7
- preoperative evaluations 27–30
- respiratory depression problems 30, 36
- types 27–9, 36–8, 70–1, 81–2, 86, 95–6, 115, 119–20, 122–3, 137–8, 155, 179–80, 190, 202–15, 221, 242
- MEDOSA HIA VAD (pneumatic) 63
- Melody valve 136
- membrane lungs, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62, 65, 134, 151–60, 227–9
- membranes, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62, 65, 134, 151–60, 227–9
- membranous VSDs 89–92
- mesocardia, definition 233
- metoclopramide 221
- methemoglobin 20
- methylprednisolone 209
- MicroMed DeBakey VAD (axial) 63
- midazolam 30, 36–8, 155, 167, 202–5, 221  
*see also* benzodiazepines
- middle cerebral artery (MCA) 34–5
- milrinone 20, 29, 65, 86–7, 95–6, 119–20, 138, 156, 172–3, 177, 190, 226–7, 242
- mitochondria 7–8
- mitral valve 93–6, 99, 117–23, 147–60, 181–5, 205–15, 236–8
- mitral valve hypoplasia 117
- mitral valve regurgitation (MR) 121–3, 205–7  
 anatomy 121  
 anesthetic management 122–3  
 background 121–3, 205–7  
 catheterization development shortfalls 122  
 definition 121  
 physiology 121–2  
 post-CPB management 123  
 surgical therapy/management 122
- mitral valve stenosis (MS) 117–21, 123  
 anatomy 117–18  
 anesthetic management 118–19  
 background 117–21, 123  
 catheterization 118  
 definition 117–18  
 physiology 118  
 post-CPB management 120–1, 123  
 surgical therapy/management 118–19
- mixed arterial/venous blood 4–5, 12–18, 47, 65, 104, 125–6, 181–5  
 fetal circulation 4–5
- modes of support, extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62
- modified Blalock–Taussig shunt (mBTS) 16, 127–9, 135–6, 142–3, 160–8, 181–3, 185, 197–8, 242  
*see also* Norwood procedure
- modified ultrafiltration (MUF) 55
- monitoring  
*see also individual specific lesions*  
 blood pressure cuffs 31, 54–5, 81, 190  
 cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) 54–5, 57, 209–10  
 central venous pressure (CVP) 32–3, 36, 54–5, 65, 209, 215, 226  
 extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) 59–62  
 heart transplants 202–5, 209–10, 212–15, 221–2, 225–7

- monitoring (*cont'd*)  
 intraoperative management 31–5, 54–5, 57  
 near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS) 33–4, 54–5, 57, 81–2, 190  
 non-invasive blood pressure (NIBP) 81, 190  
 temperatures 33, 53–5, 225–6  
 transesophageal  
 echocardiography (TEE) 35, 36, 65, 82, 85–6, 96, 101, 110, 114–16, 120–1, 123, 126–8, 139, 156, 162–6, 171–3, 185, 190, 203, 209, 222, 225–7, 242  
 urine output 54–5, 63  
 ventricular assist devices (VADs) 63–5  
 monoclonal antibodies 213–14  
 monocusp valves 146  
 morbidity rates 9, 74, 191  
 morphine 86, 134  
 mortality rates 9, 74, 140, 191, 212, 229  
 MR *see* mitral valve regurgitation  
 MRI scans 25, 26, 50, 100, 141, 184–5, 191–2  
 MS *see* mitral valve stenosis  
 mucopolysaccharidosis 24  
 MUF *see* modified ultrafiltration  
 multiple aortopulmonary collateral arteries (MAPCAs) 12–13, 41, 51–3, 140–3, 163–6, 195–8  
 muscarinic antagonists 213–15  
 muscular VSDs 89–92, 131–40  
 Mustard procedure 153–4, 159, 237  
 Mustard-Rastelli procedure 159  
*see also* Rastelli...
- myocardial contusions, heart transplants 208–9  
 myocardial hypertrophy 82  
 myocardial ischemia 9, 21–22, 36, 113–16, 129, 156, 167–80, 181–5, 204–5, 207–15  
*see also individual specific lesions*  
 anatomic coronary artery lesions 22  
 aortic diastolic pressure 21  
 background 9, 21–22, 36, 113–16, 129, 156, 181–5, 204–5, 207–15  
 etiology 9, 21, 129  
 heart rates 21, 22  
 subendocardial pressure 21  
 myocardial performance in the neonate 7–8  
 myocardial rhabdomyoma 24  
 myocarditis 59, 62
- n**  
 nasopharyngeal temperatures, monitoring 33, 54–5  
 near-infra-red spectroscopy (NIRS)  
 background 33–4, 54–5, 57, 81–2, 190  
 monitoring 33–4, 54–5, 57, 81–2, 190  
 neostigmine 214  
 nervous system 7–8, 20–1  
*see also* autonomic...; parasympathetic...; sympathetic...  
 neonatal/adult comparisons in myocardial performance 7–8  
 NIBP *see* non-invasive blood pressure  
 nicardipine 115  
 nifedipine 215  
 Nikaidoh procedure 154–5
- nil-per-os (NPO) 27, 29, 137–8, 203–5, 221, 224  
 NIRS *see* near-infra-red spectroscopy  
 nitric oxide (NO) 20, 26, 30, 48–50, 65, 109, 120–1, 167–8, 203, 208–9, 224, 242  
*see also* vasodilator agents  
 nitroglycerin 20, 29, 120–1, 226–7  
 nitroprusside 29, 82, 91–2, 115, 215  
 nitrosylhemoglobin 20  
 nodal vesicular parcel (NVP) 234  
 non-cardiac surgery 9, 71, 75, 82, 87, 92, 96, 139–40, 157, 180, 185, 210–15, 227–9  
*see also individual specific lesions*  
 heart transplants 210–15, 227–9  
 non-invasive blood pressure (NIBP) 81, 190  
 non-restrictive simple anatomic shunts 15–17, 89–92, 103–6, 150, 163–6, 170–80  
 Noonan syndrome 24  
 norepinephrine 6, 8, 28, 121, 210–15, 226–7  
 normally related great arteries (NRGAs) 13, 163–6, 197–8  
 normocarbia 19, 105–6, 171–3  
 Norwood procedure 181–3, 189  
*see also* modified Blalock–Taussig shunt  
 NPO *see* nil-per-os  
 NRGAs *see* normally related great arteries
- O**  
 obesity 201  
 oblique vein of left atrium 4–5  
*see also* sinus venosus...

- OKT3 213–14, 228–9
- one-lung ventilation (OLV)  
219–20, 222–4, 225–9
- opioids 36–8, 75, 86, 91, 110,  
115, 120, 122–3, 134, 167,  
171, 202–5  
*see also* fentanyl; morphine;  
sufentanil
- oropharyngeal temperatures,  
monitoring 54–5
- orthotopic heart transplantation  
(OHT) 199–215  
*see also* heart transplants
- osteoporosis 201
- ostium primum ASD 83–5,  
86–7, 93–6  
*see also* atrial...
- ostium secundum ASD 83–5,  
125, 239  
*see also* atrial...
- outflow tract  
obstruction 97–8
- oxidative phosphorylation 6
- oxygen 3–8, 10–15, 19–21,  
23–30, 32–8, 45–6, 51–8,  
59–65, 121–2, 132–40,  
151, 162, 164–80, 221–9
- oxygenators 52–8, 59–62
- oxyhemoglobin 20
- p**
- PA *see* pulmonary artery
- PA/IVS *see* pulmonary atresia  
with intact ventricular  
septum
- PAB 159–60
- pacemakers 63–4
- packed red blood cells  
(PRBCs) 55
- PaCO<sub>2</sub> 19, 20, 32, 34–6,  
53–5, 56–7, 61, 82, 95–6,  
105–6, 166–80, 185, 209  
background 19, 20, 32,  
34–6, 53–5, 56–7, 61, 82,  
95–6, 105–6, 166–80,  
185, 209  
pulmonary vascular resistance  
(PVR) 19, 20, 35–6, 82,  
95–6, 166–80, 209
- PACs *see* pulmonary artery  
catheters
- PADP *see* pulmonary artery  
diastolic pressure
- PAH *see* pulmonary arterial  
hypertension
- pain management 64–5, 71  
*see also* analgesics
- palliative shunts 23–4,  
134–6, 142–3, 200,  
202–5, 238
- palpitations 25, 28
- pancreatitis 213
- pancuronium 36, 215
- panel reactive antibody screen  
(PRA)  
*see also* human lymphocyte  
antigen
- heart transplants 199–203,  
208
- PaO<sub>2</sub> 19, 20, 35–6, 47–8, 61,  
166–80, 225
- PAP *see* pulmonary artery  
pressure
- PAPVR *see* partially  
anomalous pulmonary  
venous return
- parachute mitral  
valve 117–21
- paraplegia 81
- parasympathetic nerves  
heart transplants 210, 214  
neonatal/adult comparisons  
in myocardial  
performance 7–8
- partial AVC 93–6
- partial thromboplastin time  
(PTT) 25–6
- partial-obstruction complex  
anatomic shunts 16–17
- partially anomalous  
pulmonary venous return  
(PAPVR) 84–5, 103–4,  
107–11  
*see also* totally...
- patent ductus arteriosus  
(PDA) 5–6, 11–12, 16,  
18, 24, 41, 51–3, 69–71,  
73, 77–80, 113–16, 128,  
129, 134–6, 141–3,  
147–60, 161–6, 181–5,  
187–90, 195–8  
*see also* ductus arteriosus
- anatomy 5–6, 11–12, 69,  
70, 77, 79
- anesthetic  
management 70–1
- catheterization 70
- definition 69, 70, 73
- non-cardiac surgery 71
- physiology 69, 77–80,  
187–8
- statistics 69
- surgical therapy/  
management 69–70,  
134–6
- patent foramen ovale  
(PFO) 13, 40–1, 83–5,  
108–9, 125–9, 139,  
147–60, 181–5, 195–8,  
239–42  
*see also* foramen ovale
- pathophysiology 3–22, 26  
*see also* physiology
- PAWP *see* pulmonary artery  
wedge pressure
- PCWP 115
- PDA *see* patent ductus  
arteriosus
- pediatric circle systems 27
- PediMag 62
- PEEP *see* positive end-  
expiratory pressure
- peptic ulcers 201
- perfusion pressure 21,  
53–5, 82, 115, 164–80,  
182–5, 226
- pericardium patches  
85–6, 167
- perimembranous  
VSDs 89–92
- perioperative  
management 3, 9
- peripheral arterial  
catheter 31, 62, 185
- peripheral cannulas 62–3
- peripherally inserted central  
catheter (PICC) 185

- persistence of the fetal circulation (PFC) 4–5  
 PFC *see* persistence of the fetal circulation  
 PFO *see* patent foramen ovale  
 PGs *see* prostaglandins  
 pH 6, 19, 20, 35–6, 56–7, 134  
 phentolamine 29  
 phenylephrine 28, 115, 134, 138, 205, 210–15  
 phrenic nerve 78–80  
 physical examination  
   heart transplants 202–3  
   preoperative  
     evaluations 23–4, 25, 202–3  
 physiologic shunts 9–10, 14–15, 46–8, 99–101, 187–90  
   *see also individual specific lesions*; recirculated flow; shunts; transposition  
   physiology  
     background 9–10, 46–8, 99–101, 187–90  
     definition 9–10  
   physiology 3–21, 26, 69, 77–80, 85, 89–90, 94–5, 99–100, 104, 108–9, 113–14, 118, 121–2, 131–2, 141, 145, 148–51, 158, 161–6, 172–6, 181–2, 187–9, 191, 195–7, 204, 210–12, 231, 239–40  
   *see also individual specific lesions*; pathophysiology  
 PICC *see* peripherally inserted central catheter  
 ‘pink Tet’ patients 18  
 placenta 3–5  
 plasma 26, 201  
 platelets 151, 201  
 pneumothorax 33  
 portal venous system 3–5, 107–11  
 positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) 19, 20, 61–2, 166–80, 209, 221–9  
 post-capillary PH,  
   definition 18  
   *See also pulmonary arterial hypertension*  
 post-cardiotomy  
   support 59–62  
 post-CPB hyperventilation 19, 29  
 post-transplant therapy, heart transplants 201  
 post-VAD placement  
   management 65  
 posterior leaflets 117–23, 234–6, 239–42  
 posterior tibial arteries 31–5  
 postoperative periods 26–7, 31, 39, 58–62, 71, 82, 86–7, 91–2, 95, 96, 101, 110–11, 115–16, 120–1, 123, 129, 138–40, 143, 146, 155–7, 167–8, 171–3, 176–9, 183–5, 190, 202–5, 207–9, 220, 227, 242  
   *see also individual specific lesions*  
   heart transplants 201–5, 207–9, 227  
   psychological  
     considerations 26–7  
 PRA *see* panel reactive antibody screen  
 PRBCs *see* packed red blood cells  
 pre-capillary PH *see* pulmonary arterial hypertension  
 prednisone 214  
 pregnancy tests, congenital heart disease (CHD) 26  
 preoperative evaluations 23–30, 39, 63–4, 119–20, 139–40, 202, 221–2  
   *see also catheterization associated abnormalities* 23–5  
   background 23–30, 39, 63–4, 119–20, 139–40, 202, 221–2  
   clinical history 23, 25, 27, 30  
   fluid therapy 27, 29  
   heart transplants 202, 221–2  
   laboratory data 25–6, 28  
   medications 27–30  
   overview 25  
   physical examinations 23–4, 25, 202–3  
   pregnancy tests 26  
   psychological  
     considerations 26–7  
   ventricular assist devices (VADs) 63–4  
 pressure data, interpretation of catheterization data 25, 26, 39–50  
 pressure gradients 25, 26, 48, 50, 90–2, 114–15, 173–80, 182–5  
 priming solutions 54–5  
 primitive atrium 4–5  
 primitive ventricle 4–5  
   *see also ventricles*  
 prior surgical interventions, interpretation of catheterization data 25, 26  
 procainamide 28  
 propofol 37, 86, 115, 122–3  
 propranolol 134  
 prostaglandins (PGs) 5–7, 20, 30, 80, 81, 109–11, 120–1, 126, 141–3, 150–1, 155, 161–8, 182, 188–90, 209, 241–2  
 protamine reversal 58  
   *see also heparin*  
 protein kinase A 20  
 prothrombin time (PT) 25–6  
 PS *see* pulmonary stenosis  
 pseudo truncus 103  
   *see also truncus arteriosus*  
 psychological considerations, preoperative evaluation 26–7  
 pulmonary arterial hypertension (PAH)

- background 18, 49–50, 59, 90–2, 94–6, 104–6, 109–11, 135–40, 143, 148–60, 161, 197–8, 202–5, 217
- definition 18, 49
- pulmonary artery catheters (PACs)
- background 32–3, 202–5, 209
- heart transplants 202–3, 209
- pulmonary artery diastolic pressure (PADP) 50, 111
- pulmonary artery medial hypertrophy 20
- pulmonary artery occlusion pressure (PAOP) 48–50, 111, 137
- pulmonary artery (PA) 4–5, 9–11, 14–15, 18, 20, 22, 24, 32–3, 35, 39–41, 46–50, 73–5, 84–7, 92, 100–1, 103–6, 107–11, 119–23, 125–9, 141–3, 150–60, 163–80, 187–90, 194, 204–15, 219–29, 231–2, 236–8
- pulmonary artery pressure (PAP) 32, 37, 40–1, 48–9, 50, 111, 118–23, 138–9, 157, 161–80, 204–15, 231–2
- pulmonary artery wedge pressure (PAWP) 18, 48–9
- pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum (PA/IVS) 11, 13, 22, 125–9, 141, 157–8, 161, 195–7, 200–15, 237–8, 240–1
- anatomy 125
- anesthetic management 129
- catheterization 126–8
- definition 125–6, 240
- physiology 125–6
- post-CPB management 129
- surgical therapy/management 126–8, 240
- pulmonary capillary (PC) 119
- pulmonary edema 25, 28, 65, 79–80, 167–80, 190, 218–19, 226
- see also individual specific lesions*
- pulmonary fibrosis 218
- pulmonary hypertension (PH) 18–20, 26, 28, 38, 49–50, 59, 62, 71, 73, 82, 87, 96, 110–11, 115–16, 120, 143, 172–, 179, 182–5, 197–8, 201–15, 217, 221–9
- see also individual specific lesions; post-capillary...; pre-capillary...;*
- pulmonary vascular resistance
- definition 18, 49
- etiology 18, 49–50, 110–11
- vasodilator agents 20
- pulmonary regurgitation (PR) 240–2
- pulmonary stenosis (PS) 16, 24, 44, 75, 99, 109, 111–13, 131–40, 148–60, 163–80, 200–15, 237–8
- see also Tetralogy of Fallot...;*
- pulmonary trunk 4–5, 73–5, 103–6
- see also truncus arteriosus*
- pulmonary valve (PV) 125–9, 131–40, 141–3, 145–6, 205–15
- pulmonary vascular anatomy
- assessments 48–50
- pulmonary vascular changes 6–7, 48–50
- pulmonary vascular disease 49–50, 75
- see also individual specific lesions*
- pulmonary vascular obstructions 49–50, 109–11
- pulmonary vascular resistance index (PVRI)
- background 18, 48
- definition 48
- pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) 7, 9, 15–21, 35–7, 46–8, 49–50, 64–5, 69–71, 73–5, 80–2, 85–7, 90, 91, 94–6, 99–101, 104–6, 109–11, 118–19, 120–1, 137–40, 148–60, 161–80, 188–90, 200–15, 221–8, 231–2, 240–2
- see also individual specific lesions; pulmonary hypertension*
- control 19–21, 35–7, 64–5, 172, 177, 221
- definition 48–50
- lung volume variations 19–20
- PaCO<sub>2</sub> 19, 20, 35–6, 82, 95–6, 166–80, 209
- PaO<sub>2</sub> 19, 20, 35–6, 47–8, 166–80, 225
- pH 19, 20, 35–6
- sympathetic nervous system stimulation 20–1
- vasodilator agents 15–17, 20, 37, 64–5, 82, 91–2, 109–10, 115, 156, 167–8, 209
- pulmonary vascular system 9, 18–22
- pulmonary vasodilators
- see also milrinone; nitric oxide*
- background 15–17, 20, 37, 64–5, 82, 91–2, 109–10, 115, 167–8, 209
- types 19, 65
- pulmonary vein wedge angiograms 49
- pulmonary veins 13–15, 37, 39–40, 45–8, 49, 84–7, 90–2, 107–11, 118–21, 153–60, 205–15, 234–8
- pulmonary venous plexus 107–11

- pulmonary venous saturation  
 background 12–15, 37,  
 39–40, 45–8, 164–80,  
 200–15  
 definition 12, 47  
 pulsatile/axial device  
 comparisons, ventricular  
 assist devices  
 (VADs) 62, 63, 65  
 pulse oximetry 23–4, 31–2,  
 33, 54–5, 190, 202–5,  
 225–9  
 pulse rates, congestive heart  
 failure 23  
 pumps 52–3, 58–62, 65  
 PV *see* pulmonary valve  
 PVR *see* pulmonary vascular  
 resistance  
 PVRI *see* pulmonary vascular  
 resistance index  
 pyrexia 150–1
- q**  
 q11.23 deletion syndrome  
 113  
 quantification methods,  
 shunts 46–8
- r**  
 R-L shunts *see* right-to-left  
 shunts  
 RA *see* right atrium  
 radial arteries 31–5, 202–5,  
 221–9  
 radial artery catheters  
 202–5, 221–2  
 radiographic contrast  
 materials 39–50,  
 219, 233  
 RAI *see* right atrial isomerism  
 rates, congestive heart  
 failure 23, 25  
 ranitidine 221  
 RAO *see* right anterior  
 oblique  
 RAPs *see* right atrial pressure  
 waveforms  
 Rashkind–Miller balloon atrial  
 septostomy 163
- Rastelli procedure 93–5,  
 100, 154–5, 158–60, 189  
*see also* Mustard...;  
 Senning...  
 RATG 214  
 RBCs *see* red blood cells  
 RCM *see* restrictive  
 cardiomyopathy  
 RCP *see* regional cerebral  
 perfusion  
 re-implanted coronary  
 arteries 155–7  
 re-innervation issues, heart  
 transplants 210  
 recirculated flow 9–11,  
 14–15  
*see also* physiologic shunts  
 rectal temperatures,  
 monitoring 33, 54–5  
 red blood cells (RBCs) 53–5,  
 201  
 reduced contractile capacity,  
 neonatal/adult  
 comparisons in  
 myocardial performance  
 7–8, 241–2  
 reduced ventricular  
 compliance, neonatal/  
 adult comparisons in  
 myocardial  
 performance 7–8  
 regional cerebral perfusion  
 (RCP) 57  
 regurgitant fraction,  
 definition 50, 122  
 regurgitant lesions 50, 86,  
 95–6, 136, 140, 159–60,  
 175, 183, 239–42  
 regurgitant stroke volume,  
 definition 50  
 rejections  
 heart transplants 213–14  
 lung transplants 228  
 remifentanyl 70  
 renal anomalies 25  
 renal arteries 5  
 renal dysfunction 62–3, 201  
 renal transplants 201  
 renal veins 5
- renin-angiotensin-aldosterone  
 system 82  
 reservoirs 52–8, 59–62  
 resistances 7, 9, 15–20,  
 35–7, 46–8  
*see also* pulmonary...;  
 systemic...  
 respiratory depression  
 problems,  
 medications 30, 36  
 respiratory distress  
 syndrome 59, 70–1  
 respiratory failure 59, 62,  
 237  
 respiratory tract infections,  
 diagnosis 23, 26  
 restenosis 110–11  
 resting heart rates 209–11  
 restrictive cardiomyopathy  
 (RCM) 199, 203–5  
 restrictive simple anatomic  
 shunts 15–18, 89–92  
 REV procedure 100, 154–5  
*see also* LeCompte  
 maneuver  
 rhDNase 221–2  
 right anterior oblique (RAO)  
 42–5  
 right aortic arch 192–4  
 right atrial isomerism (RAI)  
 233–8  
 right atrial pressure waveforms  
 (RAPs) 39–41, 120–1  
 right atrium (RA) 4–5, 9–10,  
 19, 32–3, 35, 39–40,  
 51–8, 83–7, 107–11,  
 147–60, 166–80, 181–5,  
 195–8, 200–15, 234–8,  
 240–2  
*see also* atrial...; smooth  
 part...; trabeculated...  
 right bundle branch block 92  
 right common carotid artery  
 (RCCA) 187–90  
 right coronary artery  
 (RCA) 45, 149–60  
 right lung 5  
 right pulmonary artery  
 (RPA) 169–80, 187–90



- right subclavian artery  
(RSCA) 135,  
187–90, 194
- right upper lobe (RUL) 224
- right ventricle (RV) 4–5,  
7–8, 13–15, 25, 39–40,  
62–5, 85–7, 89–92,  
97–101, 105–6, 110–11,  
118–23, 125–9, 131–40,  
141–3, 145–6, 147–60,  
167–80, 181–5, 195–8,  
200–15, 221–9, 234–8,  
239–42  
*see also* double-outlet...;  
smooth part...;  
trabeculated part...;  
ventricular...
- right ventricle-dependent  
coronary circulation  
(RVDCC) 126–9
- right ventricular afterload  
mismatch, heart  
transplants 208–9
- right ventricular ejection  
fraction (RVEF) 217–29
- right ventricular end-systolic  
volume (RVESV) 224–5
- right ventricular outflow tract  
(RVOT) 99–100,  
114–16, 128, 131–40,  
236–8, 239–42
- right ventricular pressure  
waveforms  
(RVPs) 39–40
- right ventricular systolic  
function, heart  
transplants 211
- right ventricular VAD  
(RVAD) 62–5
- right ventricular volume  
overload (RVVO) 85,  
105–6, 121–2
- right ventricular-to-  
pulmonary artery  
conduit 105, 136, 185
- right-dominant coronary  
anatomy system 43–5
- right-heart catheterization  
39–40, 50
- right-to-left shunts (R-L  
shunts) 10–11, 15–17,  
19, 32, 46–8, 50, 70–1,  
85–7, 91, 94–6, 109–11,  
113–16, 125–6, 128–9,  
132–40, 141–3, 149–60,  
179, 187–90, 195–8,  
241–2  
*see also* shunts  
definition 10
- right-ventricular end-diastolic  
volume (RVEDV) 211,  
224–5
- rocuronium 36–7, 70–1, 86,  
167, 203–5, 224
- Romano–Ward long QT  
syndrome 24
- Ross procedure 114, 189
- Ross/Konno procedure 189
- Rotaflo 62
- RPA *see* right pulmonary  
artery
- tube ruptures 60–1
- RUL *see* right upper lobe
- RV *see* right ventricle
- RVDCC *see* right ventricle-  
dependent coronary  
circulation
- RVEF *see* right ventricular  
ejection fraction
- RVOT *see* right ventricular  
outflow tract
- RVPs *see* right ventricular  
pressure waveforms
- RVVO *see* right ventricular  
volume overload
- S**
- saline 137–8
- Sano shunt 181–3
- SaO<sub>2</sub> *see* arterial saturation
- sarcoidosis 201
- sarcoplasmic reticulum  
(SR) 7–8
- saturation 12–15, 25–6,  
33–4, 37–8, 39–40, 45–8,  
65, 86, 109–11, 113–16,  
132–40, 151, 164–80, 189,  
197, 198, 200–15
- interpretation of  
catheterization data  
25–6, 33–4, 39–40, 45–8
- SBE *see* subacute bacterial  
endocarditis
- Scimitar syndrome 84
- scopolamine 213–14
- sedatives 64–5, 122–3, 151,  
168  
*see also* anesthetic  
management
- Senning procedure 153–4, 159
- Senning-Rastelli procedure 159  
*see also* Rastelli...
- sepsis 4, 59
- septal hypertrophy 24
- septal leaflets 239–42
- septation, embryology 3
- seropositivity 212
- severe neonatal aortic  
stenosis 12
- sevoflurane 36, 37, 70–1, 86,  
138, 203–5
- Shone's syndrome 117–21, 184  
*see also* mitral valve stenosis
- Shprintzen syndrome 24
- shunts 4–5, 9–11, 13–18,  
23–4, 25–6, 35–7, 41,  
46–8, 51–8, 62, 69–71,  
85, 89–92, 125–6, 127–8,  
132–40, 141–3, 149–60,  
161–2, 169–80, 182–3,  
195–8, 240–2  
*see also* anatomic...;  
Blalock–Taussig...;  
complex...; *individual  
specific lesions*;  
palliative...;  
physiologic...; simple...  
cardiac shunts'  
evaluations 46–8  
definition 9–10  
location methods 46–7  
quantification methods  
46–8  
types 9–11, 14–18, 41, 46,  
51–3, 85, 89, 134–6,  
142–3, 161–2, 169–80,  
182–3, 195–8, 240–2

- sildenafil 20
- simple anatomic  
shunts 15–18, 89–92,  
104–6, 108–11  
*see also* anatomic shunts;  
truncus arteriosus;  
ventricular septal defects  
definition 15–18
- single-lumen endotracheal  
tubes 222–3
- single-lung transplants  
(SLTs) 217–29  
*see also* double-lung  
transplants; heart–lung  
transplants  
aesthetic management  
221–9  
definition 217  
donors 218–20  
immune system 219,  
227–9  
indications 217–18  
non-cardiac  
surgery 227–9  
operating procedures  
219–20  
patient positioning  
219–20, 224  
post-CPB management  
227–9  
postoperative care 227–9  
preoperative evaluations  
221–2  
rejections 228–9  
size issues 219  
statistics 217–18, 228, 229
- single-ventricle lesions 9–13,  
17–18, 21, 100–1, 125–9,  
141–3, 161–80, 181–5,  
187, 197, 238  
*see also individual specific  
lesions*  
anatomy 161–3  
anesthetic management  
101, 143, 166–7, 171,  
176–7, 180, 197  
definition 10–13, 161  
Fontan procedure 161,  
172–9, 181
- initial physiology 161–7,  
197  
management 164–6  
non-cardiac surgery 1780  
phases 11  
physiology 161–6, 172–6,  
178  
post-CPB  
management 129,  
167–8, 171–2, 177–9  
superior cavopulmonary  
shunt 161–2, 169–73,  
176, 179  
surgical therapy/  
management 161–2,  
169–73, 238  
total cavopulmonary  
connection (TCPC)  
127–8, 161, 172–9
- sinus and atrioventricular  
node dysfunction, heart  
transplants 208
- sinus of Valsalva 73–5,  
114, 210
- sinus venosus defects 4–5,  
83–5, 96  
*see also* atrial...
- sirolimus 214
- sizes, catheterization 31–2
- SLTs *see* single-lung  
transplants
- smooth part of the left  
ventricle (aortic  
vestibule) 4–5  
*see also* bulbus cordis
- smooth part of right atrium  
(sinus venarum) 4–5  
*see also* sinus venosus...
- smooth part of the right  
ventricle (conus  
arteriosus) 4–5  
*see also* bulbus cordis
- Snoopy's ear, heterotaxy  
syndrome 233–8
- Snoopy's nose, heterotaxy  
syndrome 233–8
- sodium bicarbonate 134, 227
- sodium nitroprusside 20, 82,  
91–2, 115, 215
- spinal cord ischemia 81–2
- spleen 236
- SpvO<sub>2</sub> 109, 164–80, 226–8
- staged left ventricular  
recruitment 184–5
- stenotic lesions 50
- sterility needs,  
transplants 202–5, 221
- sternotomies 73–5, 86, 91,  
189–90, 205–15, 219–29
- stomach 35–6
- 'stranger anxiety' 27
- stroke volume (SV) 41–3, 50,  
114–15, 119, 123, 166,  
204–15, 224–9
- strokes 62
- subacute bacterial  
endocarditis (SBE), heart  
transplants 213
- subaortic stenosis 113–16
- subclavian artery 4–5, 23–4,  
31, 57, 69–71, 81–2,  
187–90, 194
- subendocardial perfusion 21,  
115, 204–15  
*see also* myocardial  
ischemia
- subendocardial pressure 21,  
52–3
- subpulmonary VSDs 89–92,  
99–101, 132, 155
- succinylcholine 37, 203–5,  
224
- suction pumps 52–3, 58–62
- sufentanil 37–8, 91, 110, 138,  
214–15, 224
- superior cavopulmonary  
shunt 161–2, 169–73,  
175–80, 181, 197  
*see also* bidirectional Glenn  
shunt
- superior vena cava  
(SVC) 4–5, 12, 32–3,  
46–8, 51–8, 84–7, 103–4,  
107–11, 119, 128–9,  
166–80, 205–15, 219–29,  
234–8  
background 4–5, 32–3,  
46–8, 51–3, 84–7, 103–4,

- 107–11, 119, 128–9,  
166–80, 205–15, 219–29,  
234–8
- thrombosis 32–3
- superior vesicular artery 6  
*see also* umbilical arteries
- supracristal VSDs 89–92
- supraaortic stenosis  
(SVAS) 24, 113–16  
*see also* left ventricular  
outflow tract
- supraaortic mitral stenosis  
117–21, 182, 184
- surfactant B deficiency 217
- surgical therapy/  
management 3, 9, 23–4,  
25–6, 51–8, 69–71, 82,  
85–6, 91, 95, 100–1,  
104–5, 109–10, 114,  
118–19, 122, 126–8,  
134–6, 141–3, 146,  
151–60, 161–2, 169–73,  
181, 189, 191–2, 197,  
205–7, 219–20, 231–2,  
238, 240–1  
*see also individual specific  
lesions*
- suture lines, heart  
transplants 206–7, 210
- SV *see* stroke volume
- SVAS *see* supraaortic stenosis
- SVC *see* superior vena cava
- SVP *see* single-ventricle...
- SVR *see* systemic vascular  
resistance
- SVRI *see* systemic vascular  
resistance index
- sweating 23, 25
- sympathetic nervous system  
heart transplants 210  
neonatal/adult comparisons  
in myocardial  
performance 7–8  
pulmonary vascular  
resistance (PVR) 20
- systemic vascular resistance  
index (SVRI)  
background 48  
definition 48
- systemic vascular resistance  
(SVR) 15–17, 37, 48,  
64–5, 69–71, 75, 81, 85–7,  
90, 91, 94–6, 104–6,  
109–11, 132–40, 148–60,  
161–80, 182–5, 188–90,  
203–15, 221–8, 242  
*see also individual specific  
lesions*  
definition 48
- systemic venous saturation  
background 12–15, 37,  
39–40, 45–8, 156,  
164–80, 200–15  
definition 12
- systemic-to-pulmonary  
shunts 134–6
- systolic dysfunction in the  
donor heart, heart  
transplants 207–8,  
211, 213
- systolic pressure 39–50,  
64–5, 115–16, 123, 140,  
204–15
- t**
- T tubules 7–8
- TA *see* truncus arteriosus
- tachycardia 28, 114–15,  
138–40, 178–9, 204, 215
- tachypnea, congestive heart  
failure 23, 25, 73
- tacrolimus 212, 214
- TandemHeart 62
- TAPVR *see* totally anomalous  
pulmonary venous return
- target heparin concentration  
(THC) 57–8
- Taussig–Bing anomaly 99
- TCD *see* transcranial Doppler
- TCPC *see* total cavopulmonary  
connection
- TEE *see* transesophageal  
echocardiography
- temperatures 4, 29, 31, 33,  
53–5, 56–7, 81–2, 225–6  
*see also* hypothermia  
adult/pediatric  
differences 53–5
- cooling and rewarming  
37–8  
monitoring 33, 53–5,  
225–6
- ‘Tet spells’, Tetralogy of Fallot  
(TOF) 132–4
- Tetralogy of Fallot with absent  
pulmonary valve (TOF/  
APV) 131, 145–6
- Tetralogy of Fallot with  
pulmonary atresia (TOF/  
PA) 131, 141–3  
anatomy 141–2  
definition 131, 141  
groups 141–3  
physiology 141  
post-CPB  
management 143  
surgical therapy/  
management 141–3
- Tetralogy of Fallot with  
pulmonary stenosis  
(TOF/PS) 131–40, 143
- Tetralogy of Fallot (TOF) 11,  
13, 16, 17, 24, 73, 93, 95,  
99–101, 103, 131–40,  
141–3, 161  
*see also* complex anatomic  
shunts; double-outlet  
right ventricle; *individual  
specific lesions*  
anatomy 131–4, 141–2,  
145–6  
anesthetic management  
101, 137–8, 146  
catheterization 136, 143  
definition 17, 95, 131–2  
etiology 131  
hypercyanotic episodes  
(‘Tet spells’) 132–4, 137  
hypoxic episodes 132–4  
non-cardiac surgery 139–40  
physiology 131–2, 145  
post-CPB  
management 101,  
138–40, 143, 146  
surgical therapy/  
management 134–6,  
141–3, 146

- TGAs *see* transposition of the great arteries
- THC *see* target heparin concentration
- Thebesian vein blood 51–3
- thermodilution technique for cardiac output  
determination 45–6
- thiopental 37
- thoracotomy 69–71, 135–6, 191–4, 219–29  
*see also individual specific lesions*
- Thoratec HeartMate II LVAD (axial) 62–3, 64
- Thoratec HeartMate XVE LVAD 63
- Thoratec PVAD (pneumatic) 63
- thrombocytopenia 25–6, 58
- thromboembolic phenomena, heart transplants 202
- thrombosis 25–6, 32–3, 58, 60–1, 62, 205–7
- time-velocity integral (TVI) 34–5
- titrate vasodilators 64–5
- TOF *see* Tetralogy of Fallot
- TOF/APV *see* Tetralogy of Fallot with absent pulmonary valve
- TOF/PA *see* Tetralogy of Fallot with pulmonary atresia
- tolazoline 20
- total cavopulmonary connection (TCPC) 127–8, 161, 172–9
- total heart transplant technique 205–7
- total pulmonary blood flow (Qp) 10–15, 21, 26, 32–3, 35, 46–8, 49–50, 53, 57, 75, 90–2, 101, 104–6, 109–11, 129, 138, 141–3, 161–80, 183–5, 195–8  
definition 10, 12, 46–7
- total pulmonary venous blood flow 12–15, 90–2, 161–80
- total systemic blood flow (Qs) 10–15, 21, 26, 32–3, 35, 45–8, 49–50, 53, 90–2, 101, 104–6, 109–11, 129, 138, 141, 151–60, 162–80, 183–5, 195–8  
definition 10, 12, 46–7
- total systemic venous blood flow 12–15, 45–8, 53, 90–2, 161–80
- totally anomalous pulmonary venous return (TAPVR) 12, 107–11, 237–8  
*see also partially...*
- anatomy 107–8
- anesthetic management 109–10
- catheterization 110–11
- definition 107–8
- drainage patterns 107–8
- long-term outcomes 110–11
- physiology 108–9
- post-CBP management 110–11
- surgical therapy/management 109–10
- tourniquets 189
- Toyoba VAD 63
- TPGs *see* transpulmonary gradients
- trabeculated part of left atrium 4–5  
*see also primitive atrium*
- trabeculated part of left ventricle 4–5  
*see also primitive ventricle*
- trabeculated part of right atrium 4–5  
*see also primitive atrium*
- trabeculated part of right ventricle 4–5  
*see also primitive ventricle*
- trachea  
lung transplants 219
- vascular rings 191–4
- tracheal extubation 38, 82, 179, 185
- tracheal intubation 64–5, 203–15
- tracheal stenosis 25, 44
- tracheobronchomalacia 146
- tranexamic acid 65
- transcatheter radiofrequency perforation 127–8
- transcellular hydrogen ion gradient 55–6
- transcranial Doppler (TCD)  
background 34–5, 54–5, 57, 117–18, 120  
monitoring 34–5, 54–5, 57
- transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) 35, 36, 65, 82, 86, 96, 101, 105, 110, 114–16, 120–1, 123, 126–8, 139, 156, 162–6, 172, 185, 190, 203, 209, 222, 225–7, 242
- transfusions 63–4
- transitional AVC 93–6
- transposition of the great arteries (TGAs) 11, 13–15, 73, 99, 101, 147–60, 163–6, 195–8  
*see also congenitally corrected...; double-outlet right ventricle; individual specific lesions; intercirculatory mixing*
- anatomy 147–8, 157–8
- anesthetic management 101, 155
- arterial (Jatene) switch operation (ASO) 151–3, 156
- catheterization 151
- clinical subsets 148–51
- definition 13, 147–8
- LeCompte procedure 154–5, 157
- Mustard procedure 153–4, 159, 237
- Nikaidoh procedure 154–5
- non-cardiac surgery 157
- physiology 148–51, 158
- post-CPB management 101, 155–7

- Rastelli procedure 154–5, 158–60
- Senning procedure 153–4, 159
- surgical therapy/  
management 151–60
- transposition physiology  
10, 14  
*see also* physiologic shunts  
background 10, 14  
definition 10
- transpulmonary gradients  
(TPGs) 48, 50, 167, 172, 177–80
- transthoracic  
echocardiography  
(TTE) 35, 127–8, 221–2
- transthoracic intracardiac  
lines 32–3, 221–2
- transthoracic pulmonary  
artery catheter 32–3, 202–3  
*see also* pulmonary artery  
catheters
- tricuspid atresia 11, 13–17, 161–6, 175, 195–8  
anatomy 195, 196  
anesthetic management 197  
background 11–13, 15–17, 161–6, 175, 195–8  
definition 195  
physiology 195–7, 198  
surgical therapy/  
management 197  
types 195–8
- tricuspid regurgitation (TR)  
159–60, 205–15, 226–8, 239–42
- tricuspid valve (TV) 4–5, 39–40, 65, 94–6, 97–101, 103–6, 125–9, 152–60, 195–8, 234–8, 239–42  
*see also* Ebstein anomaly
- Trisomy 13, 18 and 21 89, 97, 131
- truncus arteriosus (TA) 4–5, 11, 13, 24, 32, 73–5, 103–6, 161  
*see also* aorta; *individual specific lesions*;  
pulmonary trunk  
anatomy 103–4  
anesthetic management 105–6  
background 4–5, 11, 13, 24, 32, 73–5, 103–6, 161  
catheterization 105  
Collett and Edwards  
classifications 103–4  
definition 103, 104  
physiology 104  
surgical therapy/  
management 104–5  
types 103–5  
Van Praagh and Van Praagh  
classifications 103–4
- TTE *see* transthoracic  
echocardiography
- tuberous sclerosis 24
- tubing 52–8, 59–62
- Turner syndrome 77
- TV *see* tricuspid valve
- two-ventricle (biventricular)  
repairs 11, 65, 101, 128, 161, 184–5, 238
- U**
- UFH *see* unfractionated heparin
- ultrafiltration 55
- umbilical arteries 5–6, 31, 40–1  
*see also* medial umbilical  
ligaments; superior  
vesicular artery
- umbilical cord 5
- umbilical vein 3–6, 39–40, 107–11  
*see also* ligamentum teres
- umbilicovitelline drainage  
system 107–11
- umbilicus 5
- unbalanced AVC 94–6, 100
- unfractionated heparin  
(UFH) 57–8
- unifocalization, definition  
142–3
- univent tubes 222–4
- urine output, monitoring  
54–5, 63
- uterus 108–11
- V**
- VA-ECMO *see* veno-arterial  
ECMO
- VACTERL association  
24–5
- vacuum-assisted venous  
drainage 51–3
- VADs *see* ventricular assist  
devices
- vagolytic and vagotonic  
agents 214–15
- vagus nerve 78–80, 213–15
- valve lesions' assessments 50
- valvular stenosis 16–17, 44, 77, 111, 113–16
- Van Praagh and Van Praagh  
classifications, truncus  
arteriosus (TA) 103–4
- VAS *see* ventriculoatrial  
septum
- vascular rings 191–4  
anatomy 191, 192  
anesthetic management  
192–4  
catheterization 192  
definition 191  
physiology 191  
surgical therapy/  
management 191–2
- vascular smooth muscle  
(VSM) 20
- vasodilator agents  
*see also* nitric oxide  
pulmonary vascular  
resistance (PVR) 15–21, 37, 64–5, 82, 91–2, 109–10, 115, 156, 167–8, 209
- vasopressin 28, 64–5, 123
- VATER association 25, 73
- vecuronium 36–7
- veno-arterial ECMO  
(VA-ECMO) 59–62
- veno-venous ECMO  
(VV-ECMO) 59–62

- venoatrial connections,
    - heterotaxy syndrome 233–4
  - venodilation 64–5
  - venous blood 4–5, 9–21, 24, 45–6, 51–8, 59–65, 161–80
  - venous filters 52–8
  - venous reservoirs 52–8, 59–62
  - ventricles 3–5, 62–5, 199–215, 234–8
  - ventricular anatomy,
    - heterotaxy syndrome 235–6
  - ventricular arrhythmias 28, 92, 96, 139, 157, 202–5, 212–13
  - ventricular assist devices (VADs) 62–5
    - see also* mechanical support devices
    - anesthetic considerations 62–5
    - anesthetic induction 64–5
    - BiVAD insertion problems 65
    - bridge aspects 62
    - complications 62, 65
    - currently available devices 62–3, 64
    - definition 62
    - end-organ dysfunction 62–3
    - indications 62
    - monitoring 63–5
    - post-VAD placement management 65
    - preoperative evaluations 63–4
    - pulsatile/axial device comparisons 62, 63, 65
    - relative contraindications 62
  - ventricular end-diastolic pressure 21, 41–3
  - ventricular failure 105–6
  - ventricular fibrillation 105, 166
  - ventricular hypertrophy (VH) 8, 21, 24, 25, 96, 131–40
  - ventricular output 10–15, 64–5, 165–80, 239–42
  - ventricular pacing 116
  - ventricular septal defects (VSDs) 11, 12, 14–16, 24, 35, 36, 38, 73, 77–83, 89–92, 94–6, 97–101, 103–6, 113–16, 131–40, 141–3, 145–6, 147–60, 163–80, 187–90, 195–8
    - see also individual specific lesions; simple anatomic shunts*
  - anatomy 89, 90, 97–8
  - anesthetic management 91, 95
  - catheterization 91
  - definition 89, 97
  - non-cardiac surgery 92
  - physiology 89–90, 99, 100
  - post-CPB management 91–2
  - surgical therapy/management 91
- ventricular
    - tachyarrhythmia 24, 28
  - ventriculoarterial connections,
    - heterotaxy syndrome 236–7
  - ventriculoatrial septum (VAS) 83–5, 95–6, 97–101, 239–42
  - ventriculography 41–3, 50
  - ventriculotomies 91, 138–9, 158–60
  - verapamil 215
  - video-assisted thorascopic surgery (VATS) 69–71
    - see also individual specific lesions*
  - viruses, environmental factors causing CHD 3
  - VSDs *see* ventricular septal defects
  - VSM *see* vascular smooth muscle
  - VV-ECMO *see* veno-venous ECMO
- W**
- Waterston and Potts shunts 135–6, 137
  - weight inhibitions, congestive heart failure 23
  - wheezing 23
  - Williams–Beurin syndrome 22, 113–16
  - Wolff–Parkinson–White syndrome (WPW) 239
    - see also* Ebstein anomaly
  - Wood units 18, 50, 175, 201
    - see also* pulmonary hypertension
- Y**
- Yasui procedure 101, 189
    - see also* Norwood...; Rastelli...
- Z**
- Zellweger syndrome 24